

## COLLOQUIAL JAPANESE

COLLOQUIAL JAPANESE

---

with Important Construction  
and  
Grammar Notes

by NOBORU INAMOTO

Charles E. Tuttle Company  
Rutland, Vermont

Tokyo, Japan

Published by the Charles E. Tuttle Company, Inc.  
of Rutland, Vermont & Tokyo, Japan  
with editorial offices at  
Osaki Shinagawa-ku, Tokyo 141-0032

Copyright in Japan, 1972  
by Charles E. Tuttle Co., Inc.

All rights reserved

Library of Congress Catalog Card No. 71-133865  
International Standard Book No. 978-1-4629-0233-0

First printing, 1972  
First Tuttle paperback edition  
Seventh printing, 1996

PRINTED IN SINGAPORE

To my wife  
Barbara





# TABLE OF CONTENTS

PREFACE	11
ABBREVIATIONS	14
<b>Chapter 1—PRONUNCIATION</b>	<b>17</b>
Exercise	20
Japanese Romanized Alphabet	21
<b>Chapter 2—BASIC SENTENCES (SUBJECT WA. PREDICATE DESU)</b>	<b>23</b>
Substitution Drill	30
Exercises	31
Useful Expressions—Greetings	33
<b>Chapter 3—BASIC SENTENCES—continued (NOUN+NO+NOUN)</b>	<b>34</b>
Substitution Drill	40
Exercises	40
Useful Expressions—Greetings	43
SUPPLEMENT I —Numerals	44
<b>Chapter 4—KYOOSHITSU—Classroom (1) ("TE" VERB+KUDASAI; "TE" VERB+IMASU)</b>	<b>46</b>
Substitution Drill	53
Exercises	54
Useful Expressions—The Weather	56
<b>Chapter 5—ARIMASU—There is (... NI GA ARIMASU)</b>	<b>57</b>
Substitution Drill	64
Exercises	65
Useful Expressions—Introducing People	67
SUPPLEMENT II—Numeral Classifiers	69

SUPPLEMENT III—Counting and Designating the Number of Various Time Units	71
SUPPLEMENT IV—Counting and Designating the Number of Various Time Units	72
SUPPLEMENT V—Various Names of Time Units	73
Chapter 6—KYOOSHITSU—Classroom (2) (On NUMERAL CLASSIFIER+VERB)	74
Fluency Drill	83
Substitution Drill	84
Exercises	84
Useful Expressions—At the Dinner Table	87
Chapter 7—RYOKOO—Travel (YORI OOKII; ICHIBAN OOKII)	88
Fluency Drill	97
Substitution Drill	98
Exercises	98
Useful Expressions—Telephone	101
SUPPLEMENT VI —In Reference to Various Time Units	103
SUPPLEMENT VII —Designating an Indefinite Number of Units with "Suu"	104
Chapter 8—KEMBUTSU—Sightseeing (... TAI; ... NASAI)	105
Fluency Drill	117
Substitution Drill	118
Exercises	119
Useful Expressions—Leaving and Returning Home	122
SUPPLEMENT VIII —Telling Time	123
Exercises	125
Useful Expressions—Questions Concerning Time	125
Chapter 9—HOTERU—Hotel (... TSUMORI; ... KARA)	127

Fluency Drill	141
Substitution Drill	142
Exercises	142
Useful Expressions—Degrees of Frequency	146
Chapter 10—KAIMONO—Shopping (YASUI NO; DE. .)	147
Fluency Drill	159
Substitution Drill	160
Exercises	161
Useful Expressions—Apologies	164
Chapter 11—GORAKU—Entertainment (. KOTO GA DEKIRU;. KOTO GA ARU;. NI IKU)	166
Fluency Drill	180
Substitution Drill	180
Exercises	181
Useful Expressions—Temperature	184
Chapter 12—YUUBINKYOKU—Post Office (. NARA;. NAKEREBA NARIMASEN; Relative Clause)	185
Fluency Drill	205
Substitution Drill	206
Exercises	206
Useful Expressions—Feelings	211
Chapter 13—SUKIYAKI O TABE NI IKU—Going out for Sukiyaki (. KOTO NI SURU;. KARA;. WA IKEMASEN)	212
Substitution Drill	229
Exercises	230
Useful Expressions—Taste	235

Chapter 14—NIHON—Japan (. NI NARU;. NARU;. NO NI)	236
Fluency Drill	250
Substitution Drill	251
Exercises	251
SUPPLEMENT IX—Shinrui—(Family Relations)	257
Chapter 15—ABRAHAM LINCOLN (. RERU;. RARERU;. . ERU)	261
Fluency Drill	276
Substitution Drill	276
Exercises	277
Chapter 16—TEISHAJOO—Station ("TE" ARIMASU; "TE" IMASU)	282
Fluency Drill	295
Substitution Drill	296
Exercises	296
Useful Expressions—Feelings	300
Chapter 17—MOMOTARO ("TE" AGERU; "TE" MORAU; "TE" KURERU;. TO SURU)	302
Fluency Drill	314
Substitution Drill	316
Exercises	316
Miscellaneous Useful Expressions	320
Chapter 18—MOMOTARO—continued (. BA)	321
Fluency Drill	335
Substitution Drill	336
Exercises	337
Chapter 19—SUPERPOLITE AND HUMBLE FORMS	344
Exercises	361
Useful Expressions—At the Dinner Table	365

SUPPLEMENT X —Use of KA and DEMO	366
Chart on the "Use of KA and DEMO with Interrogative Pronouns"	368
Exercises	368
Chapter 20—DENWA NO KAIWA—Telephone Conversation (. NAI DE. . ZU NI. SHI)	370
Fluency Drill	394
Substitution Drill	394
Exercises	395
APPENDIX I —Verb Bases and Suffixes	403
Chart on the "Five Bases and Suffixes"	410
APPENDIX II —Postpositions	411
APPENDIX III —Connectives.	413
VOCABULARY	417
VOCABULARY —Verbs	429
INDEX	433

## PREFACE

The methods and ideas presented in this book were conceived during the dark days of 1942 when several instructors from different relocation camps gathered at the University of Minnesota to organize and conduct an intensive course of study in the Army Specialized Training Program. The only materials available to us were several Kenkyusha dictionaries and a few copies of old Japanese high school textbooks. Our job was to train soldiers to be interrogators, and time was not on our side.

After much trial and error, both during World War II and since, the basic system used here has been refined. Admittedly, it was a difficult task trying to find a middle road between the listing of simple sentence patterns to be committed to memory, and, on the other hand, a detailed expository on Japanese grammar. In this work, both approaches have been adopted. In studying any language, varying amounts of unquestioning memorization of pattern, syntax, etc., are called for. These are clearly indicated herein.

At the same time, because Japanese is a highly logical language, it is possible to explain grammatically most of the basic constructions. Grammar, when used in this manner, can act as a crutch, a tool to further one's understanding. To know the "why?" and the "how?" will enable one to construct sentences more easily and correctly. Be that as it may, REPETITION is strongly urged. The importance of REPETITION cannot be emphasized enough. The basic sentences given at the beginning of the chapter should be repeated so often that they will be committed to memory. The

layout used in this book of contrasting translations of Japanese and English, and the method of breaking the sentences down into its component parts, will facilitate memorization.

Vocabulary has been carefully screened, and sentence patterns organized for clear, quick understanding. Useful phrases and expressions for everyday situations have been included. Easy beginning chapters become more complicated as you progress through the book, and each chapter is constructed around two or three basic patterns. Hence, it is necessary to master one lesson thoroughly before proceeding to the next. Covering ground without sufficient understanding would be equivalent to building a house on a weak foundation.

Each chapter is divided into six parts—the main text, a section on new vocabulary from the chapter, additional vocabulary, important construction and grammar notes, exercises, and useful expressions. The additional vocabularies are given to aid in extending the scope of conversation. Important constructions and grammar are made easily understandable by giving adequate examples and comparing them with English. Attempts have been made in this section to avoid theoretical discussions of grammar, and to make the grammar readily usable. Throughout the book, Japanese and English versions have been placed side by side. The reader may use this to his own advantage by covering one portion and translating into English, or vice versa. From Chapter 1 to Chapter 15 more detailed word-for-word translation is given so that one can clearly grasp the pattern of sentence "build-up," the word order, and the exact function of postpositions; in other words, the "structural analysis." Since



Japanese word order is so unlike that of English, and yet falls into definite patterns, this unique presentation will be helpful. Also, wherever thought to be of assistance, the formula type introduction is given in bold print for emphasis. The reader should memorize each formula and be able to use it freely. It might be added here that if the reader studies the vocabulary list first and then begins work on the main text for each chapter, progress will be faster. Exercises at the conclusion of each chapter are designed to give practice in usage of the principal construction, words, and grammar discussed in the chapter. Lastly, listed under "Useful Expressions," are popular idioms which should be memorized for everyday use.

At the risk of being criticized as "too stilted" or "too formal," the ordinary polite form is emphasized throughout this book. This form of expression is polite enough to be acceptable in most social situations. A sound knowledge of this will help the reader to make the transition to superpolite or step down to informal expression. Chapter 19 is devoted to the study of the superpolite (or honorific) way of speaking, the usage of which is not uncommon. In order to feel comfortable in more sophisticated surroundings, cognizance of this form, at least a hearing comprehension, is strongly recommended. It is also possible to go down the scale to more familiar (or abrupt) speech. Examples of this have been introduced in this book, not with the purpose of encouraging this style of expression, but merely to illustrate and to expose the reader to it. The writer feels that it is not necessary to belabor oneself to master informal expressions when this can be offensive if used improperly; in other words, why LEARN to be informal? With this limitation in mind, Chapter 20, which stresses familiar expression, is presented. This chapter gives a contrastive study of male and female speech in a familiar

situation, but the author is the first to admit that this is insufficient because the speech pattern differs with the principals involved; viz., between male and male, female and female, male and female, etc.

Chapter 15 on "Abraham Lincoln" is presented here with some modifications with the permission of Mr. Naganuma. Acknowledgment is also given to Dr. E. O. Reischauer for his permission to use portions of Chapter 26 of his *Elementary Japanese for College Students*, with extensive modification. Chapter 19, "Super Polite and Humble Forms," uses Dr. Reischauer's presentation with much addition of this writer's ideas.

This volume, a systematic study of colloquial Japanese, is the crystallization of many years' experience in teaching Japanese to American students. Many independent conclusions have been reached based upon this experience. I feel certain, however, that further study may lead to a more understandable presentation. Therefore, any suggestions or comments by the reader will be deeply appreciated.

I am indeed grateful to the following: Dr. S. Kimizuka, my colleague at the University of Southern California; and to Mrs. Yasuko Mitamura, who, while a tutor of Japanese in the Department of Asian Studies at the University of Southern California, read the manuscript and gave me invaluable suggestions; Miss Sadako Hashimoto, instructor at Tokushima University, who helped with the vocabulary list; Mr. Kitazumi, who worked with me in 1943 and helped develop this approach; Miss H. Kurosu and Miss K. Suzuki of the Tokyo School of Japanese Language, for reading the

Japanese sentence examples; George Isted, a graduate student in linguistics, for making the final check; and to my wife, Barbara, who did the typing and patiently edited for me. All have been most helpful, but I alone am responsible for any errors or misinterpretations.

NOBORU INAMOTO

Los Angeles, California

## ABBREVIATIONS AND NOTES

Following are some of the abbreviations used in this book:

adj.—adjective

adj. pro.—adjectival

pronoun adv.—adverb

c.v.—conjugating

verb Chi. v.—Chinese verb

conj.—conjunction

I.C. & G.N.—Important Construction and Grammar Notes

idio.—idiomatic expression

inter, adj.—interrogative adjective

inter, pro.—interrogative pronoun

inter, adj. pro.—interrogative adjectival pronoun

interj.—interjection

n.—noun

n.c.v.—non-conjugating verb

nom. case—nominative case

obj. case—objective case

pol. past—polite past

p.p.—postposition

pro.—pronoun

prog, form—progressive form

rel. cl.—relative clause

suf.—suffix

v.—verb

v.i.—verb intransitive

v.t.—verb transitive

**Note:** 1. The italics in the text are used to indicate new constructions requiring special attention as they appear in each lesson.

2. Hyphens are used in this book merely to indicate the combination of words, suffixes, prefixes, etc., for better analysis and understanding, and to clarify word structure.

3. Capital letters are used at the beginning of the sentence and for proper nouns.

4. English words now commonly accepted as Japanese have been used in this book in their Romanized forms, e.g.,

takushii (taxi)

basu (bus)

hoteru (hotel)

bataa (butter)

robii (lobby)

5. English proper nouns have been left unchanged—the reader must, however, take care to pronounce these English names like Japanese words, e.g., Nyuu Yoo-ku.

Harvard (Haa-baa-do)

Brown (Bu-ra-un)

San Francisco (San Fu-ran-shi-su-ko)

6. The italicized words in the main text are the new constructions for the chapter, which require special attention.

7. An attempt has been made throughout this book to demonstrate the sentence buildup in the textual section of each chapter. The asterisks are used here to show that the phrase with the asterisk is the composite of the word groups that precede it. This usage begins with Chapter 7.

## CHAPTER 1

### PRONUNCIATION

Japanese pronunciation is relatively simple to master. Ask a native speaker to pronounce the basic sounds listed on page 21 and repeat after him. Watch the movements of the mouth and enunciate clearly. Then practice the pronunciation of words and sentences. Listen carefully to the pauses, pitch, intonation, etc. After concluding the practice of the basic sounds on the chart, the following points should be noted.

The first line of the chart on page 21 gives the five fundamental vowel sounds, followed by the consonant+short vowel sounds.

<i>a</i> —	approximately the sound of	<i>a</i>	in "father."
<i>i</i> —		<i>i</i>	in "ink."
<i>u</i> —		<i>u</i>	in "put."
<i>e</i> —		<i>e</i>	in "pet."
<i>o</i> —		<i>o</i>	in "horse."

The second line is:

<i>ka</i> —	consonant <i>k</i> + vowel <i>a</i> .
<i>ki</i> —	<i>k</i> + <i>i</i> .
<i>ku</i> —	<i>k</i> + <i>u</i> .
etc.	

Japanese words are made up of syllables. Syllables are composed of the following elements:

- vowel (*a*, *i*, *u*, *e*, *o*)
- consonant + vowel (*t* + *a*, *n* + *i*, *s* + *o*, etc.)
- m* (or *n*)
- combined sounds (*kya*, *sha*, *cha*, etc.)

Each syllable is distinctly pronounced with equal duration.

a-ka-i (red)  
ku-da-sa-i (give me)  
e-m-pi-tsu (pencil)  
de-n-sha (street car)  
ko-o-gyo-o (manufacturing industry)  
hap-pyo-o (announce)

**LONG VOWEL SOUNDS:** The long vowels are indicated by the repetition of the vowels, as follows:

aa ii ww ee oo

The pronunciation of these is twice the length of the short vowels; it must be kept in mind when pronouncing that these are the prolongation of the initial vowel sound and not another vowel added on—not a-a (two a's) or i-i (two i's) etc. For this reason some books adopt the ā, ī, ū, ē, ō method of expressing these sounds. (In the text of this book, hyphens are omitted between the double vowels in the pronunciation guides following new words in the vocabulary lists. Hyphens are also not used preceding the syllable m or n.)

The length of sound is very important in Japanese because sometimes the meaning will differ if the long vowel is not prolonged enough.

obasan (aunt) obaasan (grandmother)  
to (door)      too (10)  
futoo (unjust) fuutoo (envelope)

**DOUBLE CONSONANT:** The double consonant is also common. They are kk, pp, ss, tt, and tch. In this expression, there is a slight pause at the first consonant, which is



considered a part of the first syllable; then you continue with the stress on the second consonant.

Bukkyoo (Buddhism) = Buk/kyo-o

gakkoo (school) = gak/ko-o

happyaku (800) = hap/pya-ku

If this rule for double consonants is not followed, not only does the meaning sometimes change, but it may make the word completely unintelligible.

hikaku = comparison hikkaku = to scratch

kite = coming kitte = postage stamp

**G SOUND:** In the Tokyo area, when the g appears in the middle of a word it is produced as a nasal ng, as one finds in "king." Since this is a local phenomenon, it is not necessary for the reader to make a conscious effort to produce this. At the beginning of a word, g has a harsh sound as in "good."

Examples:

*nagai taigi amagura getsu Eigo*

*gakkoo giri guchi geta gogo*

Each syllable is distinctly pronounced with equal emphasis. As one becomes more familiar with the language, the pitch and stress can be acquired. For our purpose here, however, visualize parallel lines. The pronunciation of words is kept flat as if trying to keep your tone within these two lines.

Yokohama = Yo-ko-ha-ma

atarashii = a-ta-ra-shi-i

R SOUND: When ra, ri, ru, re, or ro comes at the beginning of a word it should be pronounced more like la, li, lu, le, or lo; a flat r, and not the English r in which there is a rolling of the tongue. To get this sound, the tip of the tongue lightly drops from the area behind the upper teeth. They are like r when they appear in the middle of a word.

*ran rika rufu reki roba*

*Nara amarisuru are iro*

SOUND COMBINATIONS: The chart on page 22 shows compound sounds. These are really two sounds combined as one.

KYA is a combination of ki + ya.

SHU " " " " shi + ya.

The i is dropped when these combinations are pronounced rapidly.

Other points for consideration in pronunciation will be explained as they appear in subsequent lessons.

INTONATION: As one becomes more familiar with the language, the pitch and stress can be acquired. However, this book will use the system described below to show intonation. When following the intonation line, the rise and drop in pitch are slight.

**PITCH ACCENT:** There is no stress accent in Japanese, but it has pitch accent, the accented syllable being said at a slightly higher pitch than the other syllables in a word. On occasion, the place where the pitch is required is indicated in this book by a mark (') over the vowel. Since pitch accent is not easily learned by the student, and because it is possible to understand the meaning even if a different accent is used, the student should make no great effort to remember or to follow the accent marks too closely.

### Exercise

Try dividing the following words into their component parts and pronouncing them.

1. mannenhitsu (fountain pen)
2. atarashii (new)
3. kashikomarimashita (certainly)
4. natsu yasumi (summer vacation)
5. arigatoo gozaimashita (thank you)
6. nakereba narimasen (must)
7. seishin seikatsu (spiritual life)
8. juuichinin (11 persons)

9. irasshaimashita (came)

10. gochisoosama deshita (It was a good meal.)

## Japanese Romanized Alphabet (Hepburn System)

**Note:** The following Japanese alphabet chart is not only used for pronunciation purpose, but it is also used for verb conjugation, so it should be well memorized. (A, I, U, E, O, etc.)

1st BASE	2nd BASE	3rd BASE	4th BASE	5th BASE
A	I	U	E	O
KA	KI	KU	KE	KO
SA	SHI	SU	SE	SO
TA	CHI	TSU	TE	TO
NA	NI	NU	NE	NO
HA	HI	FU	HE	HO
MA	MI	MU	ME	MO
YA	I	YU	E	YO
RA	RI	RU	RE	RO
WA	I	U	E	O
M (the only true consonant which stands by itself) N				

### VOICED

GA	GI	GU	GE	GO
ZA	JI	ZU	ZE	ZO
DA	JI	ZU	DE	DO
BA	BI	BU	BE	BO
PA	PI	PU	PE	PO

# SOUND COMBINATIONS

Note: Words in which the sound combinations appear are given in parentheses.

## VOICED

KYA—( <i>kyaku</i> )	KYU—( <i>kyūjin</i> )	KYO—( <i>Tookyoo</i> )
SHA—( <i>shashin</i> )	SHU—( <i>shūjin</i> )	SHO—( <i>shoobai</i> )
CHA—( <i>chawan</i> )	CHU—( <i>chūamon</i> )	CHO—( <i>choochoo</i> )
NYA—( <i>konnyaku</i> )	NYU—( <i>nyūsin</i> )	NYO—( <i>nyoetsu</i> )
HYA—( <i>hyaku</i> )	HYU—( <i>hyūga</i> )	HYO—( <i>hyooban</i> )
MYA—( <i>sanshūkyaku</i> )	MYU*	MYO—( <i>myōsenichi</i> )
RYA—( <i>ryakugo</i> )	RYU—( <i>ryūgusu</i> )	RYO—( <i>ryōkoo</i> )

## VOICED

GYA—( <i>gyakutsu</i> )	GYU—( <i>gyūmyū</i> )	GYO—( <i>gyōetsu</i> )
JA—( <i>jama</i> )	JU—( <i>jūshin</i> )	JO—( <i>jōsu</i> )
BYA—( <i>sanshūkyaku</i> )	BYU—( <i>byūmon</i> )	BYO—( <i>byōeki</i> )
PYA—( <i>happyaku</i> )	PYU*	PYO—( <i>happyō</i> )

\* Appropriate Japanese words are not available for these. They are used to represent English used as Japanese (e.g., *myōgikara*—musical) or Japanese onomatopoeic words (e.g., the wind blows *gyū-gyū*).

## CHAPTER 2

### BASIC SENTENCES

The reader should become so thoroughly familiar with the sentence construction in the main text that he will be able to respond automatically. Commit the following sentences to memory. (Note that in each lesson new constructions requiring special attention are italicized.)

<b>SUBJECT (what)</b> (A)	WA +	<b>PREDICATE DESU.</b> (B) (is)
		= A is B.
<b>SUBJECT (what)</b> (A)	WA +	<b>PREDICATE DEWA ARIMASEN.</b> (B) (is not)
		= A is not B.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| kore wa<br>hon desu                          | as for this (nom. case)<br>(it) is (a) book |
| 1. <u>KORE WA HON DESU.</u>                  | THIS IS A BOOK.                             |
| are wa<br>nan desu ka                        | as for that (nom. case)<br>what is (it)?    |
| 2. <u>ARE WA NAN DESU KA.</u>                | WHAT IS THAT?                               |
| akai<br>akai hon<br>akai hon desu            | red<br>red book<br>(it) is (a) red book     |
| 3. <u>ARE WA AKAI HON DESU.</u>              | THAT IS A RED BOOK.                         |
| 4. <u>SORE WA EMPITSU DESU</u><br><u>KA.</u> | IS THAT A PENCIL?                           |

sore wa empitsu dewa arimasen	as for that (nom. case) (it) is not (a) pencil
5. <u>SORE WA EMPITSU DEWA</u> <u>ARIMASEN.</u>	THAT IS NOT A PENCIL.
6. <u>KORE WA KUROI EM-</u> <u>PITSU DESU KA.</u>	IS THIS A BLACK PENCIL?
kono kono empitsu wa kuroi desu ka	this as for this pencil (nom. case) is (it) black?
7. <u>KONO EMPITSU WA KU-</u> <u>ROI DESU KA.</u>	IS THIS PENCIL BLACK?
hai kuroi desu	yes (it) is black
8. <u>HAI, KUROI DESU.</u>	YES, IT IS BLACK.
9. <u>SONO HAKO WA AKAI</u> <u>HAKO DESU KA.</u>	IS THAT BOX A RED BOX?
ie soo dewa arimasen	no (it) is not
10. <u>IE, SOO DEWA ARIMASEN.</u>	NO, IT IS NOT.
11. <u>IE, AKAI HAKO DEWA</u> <u>ARIMASEN.</u>	NO, IT IS NOT A RED BOX.
kono kono kuroi kono kuroi hon wa	this this black as for this black book (nom. case)
12. <u>KONO KUROI HON WA</u> <u>JIBIKI DESU KA.</u>	IS THIS BLACK BOOK A DIC- TIONARY?
13. <u>HAI, SOO DESU.</u>	YES, IT IS.
14. <u>SORE WA JIBIKI DESU.</u>	THAT IS A DICTIONARY.

## Vocabulary List from the Lesson

kore  
(ko-re)\* (pron.) this

wa (p.p.) a postposition used in nominative case. It has no meaning, but its significance is explained further below, under "Important Construction & Grammar Notes." (This will be referred to in the future as I.C. & G.N.)

nan (nani)	(interrog. pron.) what (?)
desu	(v.) to be, (it) is. (Pronounce this word with a (dé-su) silent u, closer to des.)
ka	Japanese equivalent to a question mark. (See I.C. & G.N.)
sore (so-re)	(pron.) that
hon	(n.) book
are (a-re)	(pron.) that (over there, pointing to something removed from the speaker and the listener).
akai (a-ka-t)	(adj.) red (pronounce as a-kai)
kuroi (ku-ro-i)	(adj.) black
empitsu (em-pi-tsu)	(n.) pencil
kono (ko-tio)	(adj.) this (requires a noun)
sono (so-no)	(adj.) that (requires a noun)
hako (ha-ko)	(n.) box
hai (há-t)	yes
soo	"Is that so?" (as in English), or, affirmation of what has been stated: "That is so."
iie (ii-é)	no
hon dewa arimasen	(It) is not (a) book. (See I.C. & G.N.)
jibiki (ji-bi-ki)	(n.) dictionary



\* The pronunciation guide is given for those words which might prove difficult on first encounter. A guide for words easy to pronounce has been omitted. Note the pitch mark (') provided for some words.

### Additional Vocabulary

This vocabulary is to be used to extend the scope of conversation. Substitute the words for their grammatical equivalents in the text or in the substitution drill at the end of the chapter.

shiroi (shi-ró-i)	(adj.) white
aoi (a-ó-i)	(adj.) blue
gakkoo (gak-koo)	(n.) school
daigaku	(n.) university
kotoogakkoo (koo-too-gak-koo)	(n.) senior high school
chuugakkoo (chuu-gak-koo)	(n.) junior high school
shoogakkoo (shoo-gak-koo)	(n.) grade school
ano	(adj.) that (over there)
tegami (te-ga-mi)	(n.) letter
mado (má-do)	(n.) window
ookii (oo-kii)	(adj.) large, big
chiisai (chii-sá-i)	(adj.) small
tsukue (tsu-ku-e)	(n.) desk
isu	(n.) chair
furui (fu-ru-i)	(adj.) old
atarashii (a-ta-ra-shii)	(adj.) new

### Important Construction and Grammar Notes

**JAPANESE NOUNS:** Except in a few cases, no distinction is made between singular and plural nouns. Hence, hon may mean "a book" or "books" as the case may be. Judging by context is important.

**KORE, SORE AND ARE:** These are demonstrative pronouns. Kore is equivalent to the English "this." Sore (that) refers to something comparatively near, and are (that) refers to something rather far in the sense of "that over there." Note the following examples:

1. Kore wa "This," in the hand of or near the hon desu. speaker, "is a book."
2. Sore wa "That," near the person spoken to, "is hon desu. a book."
3. Are wa hon "That," over there, "is a book." desu.

**WA:** Wa is a postposition. Postpositions are used in Japanese after a noun to indicate the case (nominative, objective, possessive, etc.) of the preceding noun. Wa denotes the nominative case. This postposition is used to show what one is talking about, or the subject of the sentence. One may translate wa as "as for" or "with regard to."

Kono hon wa akai "This book," or "As for this  
desu. book,"  
"(it) is red."

**KONO, SONO, AND ANO:** Meaning "this," "that" and "that" (over there), they are used as adjectives, and therefore cannot

stand alone, but must modify nouns. Do not confuse them with kore, sore and are, which can be used alone.

1. Kono hon ... This book ...
2. Sono hon ... That book ...
3. Ano hon ... That book (over there)...

**SUBJECT OF A SENTENCE:** In Japanese the subject is often left out when it is understood by the context of the sentence. See sentences 8, 10, and 13 in the text. In these three examples, the subjects are the same as those in the preceding statements, so they are not repeated. The omission of the subject in Japanese is somewhat like the usage of "it" in English to replace the subject. (See page 39, for more explanation.)

**TRUE ADJECTIVES:** There are two types of adjectives in Japanese, viz., true adjective and quasi adjective. The latter is a noun used as an adjective and is explained in Chapter 3. True adjectives are easily identifiable because they have the following endings: ai, oi, ui, and ii. (Ei ending words are not adjectives, but nouns.)

akai red  
kuroi black  
furui old  
ookii large

A true adjective modifies a noun directly, and is placed before the word it modifies.

DESU: Desu is called a verb at times, but it is actually an auxiliary verb of designation. Desu is attached only to substantives (noun or noun equivalent) and adjectives. (See further explanation on page 39.) It fulfills the function of making the substantive to which it is attached the predicate of the sentence. Desu is used in making the statement "A is B" or "It is...." For example, "That (A) is a school (B)" is expressed as:

Sore (A) wa gakkoo (B) desu.

"Kore wa hon desu" means "This is (a) book."

Desu may also follow a true adjective:

Kore wa ookii desu. — This is big.

Are wa shiroi desu. — That is white.

Sono gakkoo wa chiisai desu.—That school is small.

NEGATIVE OF DESU:

(a) The following formula, as explained above, is used to express statements when the:

**SUBJECT = (is equal to)  
(the same as) PREDICATE**

**A WA B DESU**

For example:

I am a student. (I=student)

This is a school. (This=school)

Harvard is a university. (Harvard=university)

(b) The negative of these:

I am not a student. (I≠student)

This is not a school. (This≠school)

Harvard is not a high school. (Harvard≠high school)

When the SUBJECT ≠ (is not equal to / not the same as) PREDICATE

(A)	WA	(B)	DEWA	ARIMASEN
(subject)		(predicate)	(is not)	

or

(A)	WA	(B)	JA	ARIMASEN
-----	----	-----	----	----------

Ja is the contraction of dewa. The dewa expression is preferable to ja. Therefore, the following translations are possible for:

"Harvard is not a high school."

Harvard WA kotoogakkoo

DEWA ARIMASEN. (JA ARIMASEN.)
----------------------------------

Affirmative

Negative

Kore wa hon desu.

Kore wa hon dewa arimasen.

Sore wa tsukue desu.

Sore wa tsukue dewa arimasen.

Kore wa  
empitsu desu.

kuroi Kore wa kuroi empitsu dewa arimasen.

Harvard wa  
gakkoo desu.

chiisai Harvard wa chiisai gakkoo dewa arimasen.

## SENTENCE WORD ORDER AND MODIFIERS:

(a) The usual word order of a Japanese sentence is as follows:

SUBJECT	WA	PREDICATE	+	DESU
Kore (This	WA	hon book		DESU is)
Columbia (Columbia	WA	daigaku university		DESU is)

(b) Adjectival modifiers come before the words they modify

SUBJECT	WA	MODIFIER + NOUN	+	VERB
Kore (This	WA	furui old	hon book	DESU is)
Columbia (Columbia	WA	ookii large	daigaku university	DESU is)

Remember that the verb always comes at the end of a sentence in Japanese. "I go to school by bus," when translated into Japanese, will have the following word order:

"I (wa)—to school—by bus—go."

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE: A question in Japanese is asked by the addition of *ka* at the end of a declarative sentence. In English the word order changes when an interrogative sentence is formed but in Japanese it remains the same.

1. Kono daigaku wa furui desu. This university is old.  
Kono daigaku wa furui desu ka. Is this university old?
2. Kore wa shoogakkoo desu. This is a grade school.  
Kore wa shoogakkoo desu ka. Is this a grade school?

Substitution Drill

- I. KORE WA  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{(Noun)} \\ \text{GAKKOO} \\ \text{SHOOGAKKOO} \\ \text{CHUUGAKKOO} \\ \text{DAIGAKU} \\ \text{etc.} \end{array} \right\} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{DESU} \\ \text{DEWA ARIMASEN} \end{array} \right.$
- II.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{KORE} \\ \text{SORE} \\ \text{ARE} \end{array} \right\}$  WA  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{(Adj.)} \\ \text{AKAI} \\ \text{KUROI} \\ \text{AOI} \\ \text{etc.} \end{array} \right\} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{EMPITSU} \\ \text{DESU} \end{array} \right.$
- III.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{KONO} \\ \text{SONO} \\ \text{ANO} \end{array} \right\}$  GAKKOO WA  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{(Adj.)} \\ \text{OOKII} \\ \text{CHIISAI} \\ \text{FURUI} \\ \text{ATARASHII} \\ \text{etc.} \end{array} \right\} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{DESU} \end{array} \right.$

## How to Use the Exercise

In order to get the most out of this exercise, the student should first become thoroughly familiar with the basic sentence patterns and substitution drills. Next, go on to the translation exercise, English to Japanese, which, with slight variation, is based on the sentence patterns. Repetition until one can respond almost automatically is the purpose. The next step is the expansion of these basic sentences by "substitution" (instead of Kore wa hon desu, now say Kore wa tsukue, empitsu, isu, etc. desu) and then by "expansion." This last step is accomplished by changing the sentence Kore wa hon desu to Kore wa atarashii hon desu, etc.

If this book is used in a classroom situation, the instructor should first read a sentence at a time with the group. The instructor should vary the presentation by the above mentioned "substitution" and "expansion" methods. Also a change of pace can be had by switching from a group recitation to an individual one or by a change to making questions from these sentences.

## Exercises

This section of the exercise would be most helpful if the student would cover the right column and translate into Japanese. Next cover the left column and translate into English.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. This is a book.                         | Kore wa hon desu.                       |
| 2. This is a dictionary.                   | Kore wa jibiki desu.                    |
| 3. That is a desk.                         | Sore wa tsukue desu.                    |
| 4. That is a chair.                        | Sore wa isu desu.                       |
| 5. That (over there) is a school.          | Are wa gakkoo desu.                     |
| 6. That (over there) is a college.         | Are wa daigaku desu.                    |
| 7. This is not a dictionary.               | Kore wa jibiki dewa arimasen.           |
| 8. That is not a chair.                    | Sore wa isu dewa arimasen.              |
| 9. That (over there) is not a college.     | Are wa daigaku dewa arimasen.           |
| 10. This is a big book.                    | Kore wa ookii hon desu.                 |
| 11. This is a new dictionary.              | Kore wa atarashii jibiki desu.          |
| 12. That is an old desk.                   | Sore wa furui tsukue desu.              |
| 13. That (over there) is a large chair.    | Are wa ookii isu desu.                  |
| 14. This is not a large school.            | Kore wa ookii gakkoo dewa arimasen,     |
| 15. That is not a new dictionary.          | Sore wa atarashii jibiki dewa arimasen. |
| 16. That (over there) is not an old chair. | Are wa furui isu dewa arimasen.         |
| 17. This school is old.                    | Kono gakkoo wa furui desu.              |
| 18. That pencil is black.                  | Sono empitsu wa kuroi desu.             |



19. That dictionary is new.      Sono jibiki wa atarashii desu.  
20. That college (over there) is big.      Ano daigaku wa ookii desu.

Translate into Japanese:

Note: (a) In translating English into Japanese, determine, first of all, the subject of the sentence, and follow it with WA.

(b) "IT" is not translatable into Japanese. Instead, determine the true subject, or treat the subject as understood. (See I.C. & G.N. above.)

1. What is this?
2. This is a chair.
3. What is that?
4. That is a small pencil.
5. Is this black pencil new?
6. No, this black pencil is old.
7. What is that (over there)?
8. That is an old desk.
9. Is that a school?
10. Yes, it is. It is a big school.
11. That big school is a grade school.

12. Is that grade school old?

13. Yes, it is an old school.

14. Is that school a high school?

15. No, it is a college.

Answer in Japanese. Give affirmative answers.

1. Kore wa hon desu ka.

2. Kore wa tsukue desu ka.

3. Kore wa akai hon desu ka.

4. Sore wa kuroi hako desu ka.

5. Kono empitsu wa akai desu ka.

6. Sono isu wa furui desu ka.

7. Harvard daigaku wa chiisai gakkoo desu ka.

8. Kono ookii gakkoo wa chuugakkoo desu ka.

9. Kono atarashii hon wa jibiki desu ka.

10. Columbia wa ookii daigaku desu ka.

Useful Expressions

Greetings (Aisatsu)

The following expressions should be memorized and used frequently.

- a. OHAYOO "Good morning." It should not be used after (GOZAIMASU) about 10:00 a.m. OHAYOO alone is used when speaking to a friend informally. GOZAIMASU is added for politeness.
- b. KONNICHI "Good morning" or "Good afternoon." Used WA in greeting and not in parting. It is used between 10:00 a.m. and evening.
- c. "Good evening." It is used when greeting KOMBANWA someone.
- d. SAYONARA "Good-bye."
- e. OYASUMI "Goodnight." An expression used when one NASAI departs to retire for the night.

## CHAPTER 3

### BASIC SENTENCES

**NOUN + NO + NOUN** = Formation of Quasi Adjective

**NOUN + NO** = Possessive indicating ownership

Eigo  
Eigo no  
Eigo no hon desu

English  
of English language  
English language book is

1. KORE WA EIGO NO HON  
DESU.

THIS IS AN ENGLISH LAN-  
GUAGE BOOK.

dare  
dare no  
dare no hon

who  
whose  
whose book

2. DARE NO HON DESU KA.

WHOSE BOOK IS IT?

anata  
anata no  
anata no hon

you  
your  
your book

3. KORE WA ANATA NO  
HON DESU KA.

IS THIS YOUR BOOK?

watakushi  
watakushi no  
watakushi no dewa arimasen

I  
mine  
mine is not

4. IE, SONO HON WA

WATAKUSHI NO DEWA  
ARIMASEN.

sono  
Eigo no hon  
sensei no  
sensei no desu

NO, THAT BOOK IS NOT  
MINE.

that  
English language book  
teacher's  
(it) is the teacher's

5. SONO EIGO NO HON WA

SENSEI NO DESU.

watakushi no  
sensei no  
Eigo no hon

THAT ENGLISH BOOK IS (MY)  
TEACHER'S.

my  
teacher's  
English language book

6. SORE WA WATAKUSHI

NO SENSEI NO EIGO NO  
HON DESU.

anata  
anata no  
anata no hon wa  
jibiki desu ka

THAT IS MY TEACHER'S ENG-  
LISH BOOK.

you  
your  
as for your book (nom. case)  
is (it) a dictionary?

7. ANATA NO HON WA JIBI-

KI DESU KA.

IS YOUR BOOK A DICTIO-  
NARY?

(As for your book, is it a dictionary?)

8. IE, JIBIKI DEWA ARIMA-

SEN. KYOOKASHO DESU.

NO, IT IS NOT A DICTIONARY.  
IT IS A TEXTBOOK.

donna  
iro  
donna iro

what kind of  
color  
what color

9. DONNA IRO DESU KA.

WHAT COLOR IS IT?

watakushi  
watakushi no  
watakushi no hon wa

I  
my  
as for my book (nom. case)

10. WATAKUSHI NO HON WA

MY BOOK IS BLACK.

KUROI NO DESU.

(As for my book, it is black.)

11. KONO KUROI HON WA

THIS BLACK BOOK IS A  
READER.

KYOOKASHO DESU.

sensei  
sensei wa  
anata no sensei wa  
donata desu ka

teacher  
as for (the) teacher  
as for your teacher  
who is (it)?

12. ANATA NO SENSEI WA

WHO IS YOUR TEACHER?

DONATA DESU KA.

(As for your teacher, who is it?)

watakushi  
watakushi no  
watakushi no sensei wa

I  
my  
as for my teacher

13. WATAKUSHI NO SENSEI

MY TEACHER IS MR. ITO.

WA ITOO-SAN DESU.

Nihongo no  
Nihongo no sensei

of Japanese language (quasi adj.)  
Japanese language teacher (or  
teacher of Japanese language)

14. ITOO-SAN WA WATA-

MR. ITO IS MY JAPANESE

KUSHI NO NIHONGO NO

LANGUAGE TEACHER.

SENSEI DESU.

Vocabulary List from the Lesson

Eigo (e-i-go) (n.) English (language)

Eigo no (quasi adj.) of English

Eigo no hon (n.) English book

Nihongo (n.) Japanese (language)

(Ni-hon-go)

Nihongo no (n.) Japanese book

hon

dare (da-re) (inter, pro.) who?

dare no	(inter, pro.) whose?
dare no hon	whose book?
watakushi	(pro.) I
(wa-ta-ku-shi)	
watakushi wa	I, or, as for me (in the nominative case)
watakushi no	my (possessive case)
watakushi no	my book
hon	
anta (a-ná-ta)	(pro.) you
donna	(inter, adj.) what kind of .?
(dón-na)	
iro (i-ró)	(n.) color
donna iro	what color .?
kyookasho	(n.) textbook, reader, primer
senseei	(n.) teacher (i after another vowel e is
(sen-sé-i)	unstressed and is close to ay in "say.")
-san	(suf.) honorific suffix comparable to Mr., Mrs. or Miss. Not used when referring to one's own family or self and always used after the name.
no	(p.p.) "of"—used to join two substantives. It also denotes possession. (See I.C. & G.N.)
donata	(pro.) who? polite form of dare.
(dó-na-ta)	

### Additional Vocabulary

boku	(pro.) I (used by men only)
kimi	(pro.) you (used by men only)
zasshi (zas-shi)	(n.) magazine
shimbun (shim-bun)	(n.) newspaper
seito (se-i-to)	(n.) student

namae (na-ma-e)	(n.) name
tekisuto	(n.) textbook

## Important Construction and Grammar Notes

**POSTPOSITION "NO":** No is a postposition used to join two nouns. When this is done, the first noun is made to modify the second noun, and it becomes an adjective.

Adjectives thus formed are called Quasi Adjectives. When analyzed in this manner, the distinction between so-called True Adjectives and Quasi Adjectives becomes apparent. A true adjective, as the name implies, performs its function of adjectival modifier by itself, but a quasi adjective is a noun converted into an adjective by the addition of no.

### TRUE ADJECTIVE

- |                 |                   |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. shiroi hon   | a white book      |
| 2. furui jibiki | an old dictionary |

### QUASI ADJECTIVE

1. Eigo no hon            an English book
2. Nihongo no sensei a Japanese (language) teacher

**Note:** In general, when used to form a quasi adjective, no is the English equivalent of "of." Eigo no hon="book of English" (English book).

**POSSESSIVE "NO":** The postposition no is also used to denote possession. It is equivalent to "'s" in English. For example:



1. sensei no hon            a teacher's book
2. watakushi no gakkoo my school
3. Tanaka-san no seito   Tanaka's student

Affirmative      Negative

Sensei no hon Sensei no hon dewa arimasen. (It is  
desu.                      not a teacher's book.)

Watakushi no Watakushi no gakkoo dewa  
gakkoo desu.      arimasen. (It is not my school.)

Tanaka-san no Tanaka-san no seito dewa arimasen.  
seito desu.      (He is not Tanaka's student.)

Sore            wa Sore wa watakushi no dewa  
watakushi      no arimasen. (That is not mine.)  
desu.

SUFFIX "GO." Go means "language" and it is affixed to the names of the countries to indicate the language of that country.

1. Supein-go Spanish language
  2. Furansu-go French language
  3. Doitsu-go German language
- etc.

Similarly, jin which has the meaning "people," can be attached to the names of the countries to indicate the people of that country.

1. Itaria-jin Italian
2. Roshia-jin Russian
3. Chuugoku-jin Chinese

OMISSION OF SUBJECT: While in English a sentence is incomplete without a subject, in Japanese when the subject of a sentence is understood from the context, it is often left out. For example, in the text, sentence 2 shows that the subject Kore is understood from the preceding sentence, so this sentence should actually read:

(Kore wa) dare no hon desu ka.

Also in sentences 8 and 9 the subjects are omitted for the same reason.

KUROI NO DESU, KUROI N' DESU, KUROI DESU: Desu is normally used with substantives. Hence,

Watakushi wa Eigo no sensei desu.

Kore wa furui tsukue desu.

When this rule is applied to adjectives and the sentences "The chair is black" and "My school is big" are translated:

Isu wa kuroi no desu.

Watakushi no gakkoo wa ookii no desu.

No, as used here after true adjectives, gives a nominal meaning. In the former sentence, it stands for isu, while in the latter it stands for gakkoo.

However, in actual usage no is often contracted to n and it becomes as follows:

Isu wa kuroi n' desu.

Watakushi no gakkoo wa ookii n' desu.

Finally, even this n contraction may be left out entirely so that in colloquial usage ADJECTIVE+DESU is now acceptable.

Isu wa kuroi desu.

Watakushi no gakkoo wa ookii desu.

### Substitution Drill

$$\text{KORE WA } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{(Noun)} \\ \text{ANATA} \\ \text{WATAKUSHI} \\ \text{GAKKOO} \\ \text{SENSEI} \\ \text{BROWN-SAN} \end{array} \right\} \text{NO ZASSHI } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{DESU} \\ \text{DEWA} \end{array} \right\} \text{ARIMASEN}$$

### Exercises

- |                            |                                     |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. This is my magazine.    | Kore wa watakushi no zasshi desu,   |
| 2. This is your newspaper. | Kore wa anata no shimbun desu.      |
| 3. That is Jiro's school.  | Sore wa Jiroo no gakkoo desu.       |
| 4. This is mine.           | Kore wa watakushi no desu.          |
| 5. That is yours.          | Sore wa anata no desu.              |
| 6. That is Jiro's.         | Are wa Jiroo no desu.               |
| 7. This is not mine.       | Kore wa watakushi no dewa arimasen. |
| 8. That is not yours.      | Sore wa anata no dewa arimasen.     |
| 9. That is not Jiro's.     | Are wa Jiroo no dewa arimasen.      |

10. This is not my book.      Kore wa watakushi no hon  
dewa arimasen.
11. That is not your pencil.      Sore wa anata no empitsu  
dewa arimasen.
12. That is not Jiro's Japanese dictionary.      Are wa Jiroo no Nihongo no  
jibiki dewa arimasen.
13. What kind of book is this?\*      Kore wa donna hon desu ka.
14. What kind of newspaper is the New York Times?\*      New York Times wa donna  
shimbun desu ka.
15. What (kind of) color is your pencil?\*      Anata no empitsu wa donna  
iro desu ka.
16. My college is big.      Watakushi no daigaku wa  
ookii desu.
17. Your magazine is old.      Anata no zasshi wa furui desu.
18. Jiro's teacher is Japanese.      Jiroo no sensei wa Nihonjin  
desu.
19. Jiro's English teacher is Japanese.      Jiroo no Eigo no sensei wa  
Nihonjin desu.
20. Jiro's English teacher is Mr. Tanaka.      Jiroo no Eigo no sensei wa  
Tanaka-san desu.
21. My Japanese teacher is Mr. Tanaka.      Watakushi no Nihongo no  
sensei wa Tanaka-san desu.
22. That English school is new.      Ano Eigo no gakkoo wa  
atarashii desu.
23. My English name is Bob.      Watakushi no Eigo no namae  
wa Bob desu.

\* In these sentences (#13, 14, 15), note that the subjects are reversed as follows: This is what kind of book? The New

York Times is what kind of newspaper? Your pencil is what (kind of) color?

Translate into Japanese:

1. Is Life a Japanese language newspaper?
2. No, it is not a Japanese language newspaper.
3. It is an American magazine.
4. Are these Japanese magazines yours?
5. No, they are not mine. They are my teacher's.
6. This is Miss Ito's newspaper.
7. This new English dictionary is John's.
8. What kind of Japanese dictionary is that?
9. This is an old Japanese dictionary.
10. Mr. Brown is a college German teacher.
11. What is the color of your English teacher's reader?
12. My teacher's reader is red.
13. This Japanese book is old.
14. Mr. Ito is your teacher.
15. My Spanish language teacher's name is Mr. Sanchez.

16. Are you a Japanese language student?

17. No, I am not. I am an English language student.

Answer in Japanese:

(As explained above and on page 54, the subject is often omitted. Therefore, in answering question #1 below, one can simply say, Watakushi no desu. However, it is advisable that the reader, in order to become acquainted with the construction, make a complete sentence by saying Kono ookii hon wa watakushi no desu. Use a complete sentence with subject and predicate in answering the following. Also use both negative and positive answers wherever possible.)

1. Kono ookii hon wa dare no hon desu ka.
2. Kono ookii hon wa donna iro desu ka.
3. Kono ookii hon wa Eigo no hon desu ka.
4. Kono zasshi wa dare no desu ka.
5. Are wa furui shimbun desu ka.
6. Sono chiisai hon wa jibiki desu ka.
7. Kono Nihongo no hon wa donata no desu ka.
8. Sono jibiki wa kimi no desu ka.
9. Sono jibiki wa kuroi desu ka.

10. Sore wa Eigo no jibiki desu ka.
11. Sensei no hon wa akai desu ka.
12. Sensei no chiisai hon wa donna iro desu ka.
13. Ano shiroi hon wa sensei no desu ka.
14. Life wa Nihongo no zasshi desu ka.
15. Anata no sensei wa Ito-san desu ka.

Fill in the blanks:

1. Watakushi \_\_\_\_\_ sensei \_\_\_\_\_ Ito-san desu.
2. Kore \_\_\_\_\_ donata \_\_\_\_\_ shimbun desu ka.
3. Kono \_\_\_\_\_ wa ookii desu.
4. Sono \_\_\_\_\_ wa donata \_\_\_\_\_ desu ka.
5. Kono empitsu \_\_\_\_\_ akai \_\_\_\_\_ ka.
6. Ano kyookasho \_\_\_\_\_ dare \_\_\_\_\_ desu ka.
7. Ito-san \_\_\_\_\_ Nihongo \_\_\_\_\_ sensei desu.
8. Brown-san \_\_\_\_\_ kono gakkoo \_\_\_\_\_ sensei \_\_\_\_\_ arimasen.
9. Anata \_\_\_\_\_ kono gakkoo \_\_\_\_\_ seito desu ka.
10. Watakushi \_\_\_\_\_ Eigo \_\_\_\_\_ sensei wa Brown-san \_\_\_\_\_.

## Useful Expressions

### Greetings (Aisatsu)

Ito: IKAGA DESU KA. How are you?

Brown: ARIGATOO GOZAI Thank you.

MASU. GENKI (I'm) quite well.  
DESU.

Ito: OTOOSAN How is your father (mother)?  
(OKAASAN) WA  
IKAGA DESU KA.

Brown: OKAGESAMA DE Thanks to (your) kind thought,  
GENKI DESU. he (she) is fine.  
(This is a more complete form  
of answering the question  
Ikaga desu ka.)

Ito: DEWA MATA. I'll see you again.

Brown: SAYONARA. Goodbye.

## SUPPLEMENT I

### Numerals

#### JAPANESE NUMERALS

1 hitotsu  
2 futatsu  
3 mittsu  
4 yottsu  
5 itsutsu  
6 muttsu  
7 nanatsu  
8 yattsu  
9 kokonotsu

#### CHINESE NUMERALS

ichi  
ni  
san  
shi (yon)  
go  
roku  
shichi (nana)  
hachi  
ku (kyuu)



10 too

juu

**Note (a):** Japanese numerals end at 10, and beyond 10 the numerals are read, in general, the same as the Chinese numerals. Japanese numerals are used in counting inanimate objects, or when there is no classifier. (This is explained in Supplement II, p. 69.)

11 juu-ichi	90 kyuu-juu
12 juu-ni	100 hyaku
13 juu-san	200 ni-hyaku
14 juu-shi, juu-yon	300 sam-byaku*
15 juu-go	400 shi-hyaku, yon-hyaku
16 juu-roku	500 go-hyaku
17 juu-shichi	600 roppyaku*
18 juu-hachi	700 shichi-hyaku, nana-hyaku
19 juu-ku, juu-kyuu	800 happyaku*
20 ni-juu	900 ku-hyaku, kyuu-hyaku
30 san-juu	1,000 sen**
40 shi-juu, yon-juu	10,000 ichi-man, man
50 go-juu	100,000 juu-man
60 roku-juu	1,000,000 hyaku-man
70 shichi-juu, nana-juu	100,000,000 ichi-oku
80 hachi-juu	

Eleven is 10+1, or juu+ichi.

Twelve is 10+2, or juu+ni.

Thirty is 3x10, or san juu.

Sixty is 6x10, or roku juu.

275 is two (100) seven (10) + 5 or m-hyaku shichi-juu go.

591 is five (100) nine (10)+1 or go-hyaku fcyu-juu ichi.

909 is nine (100) + 9 or kyu-hyaka ku.

Note (b): \* A phonetic change occurs for these numbers.

\*\* Note the phonetic change for 3,000 (sanaren).

Keep the following digit terms clearly in mind, and practice reading numerals in Japanese.

1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
sen man	hyaku man	juu man	man	sen	hyaku	juu	ichi
					6 ropppaku	7 shichi juu	5 go
				1 sen	9 kyuu hyaku	6 roku juu	6 roku
		2 ni man	5 go sen	4 yon hyaku	1 juu	8 hachi	
	7 shichi juu (nana juu)	4 yon man	1 sen (isaen)	0	2 ni juu	4 shi (yon)	

**Note:** In reading figures exceeding 10,000 (which is in the *MAN* category) first determine how many *MAN*'S there are. Then read the remainder.  
For example, in the number 5,843,000 there are 584 *MAN*'S 3,000, or *gohyaku hachijuu yon MAN*. Therefore, this figure is read:  
gohyaku hachijuu yon MAN san ZEN.

As a result of inflation in post-war Japan, when a copy of The Japan Times cost sanjuu-go en (35 yen) and a pack of cigarettes cost hachijuu en, it is necessary to be able to use large figures when counting.

Try saying the following figures in Japanese:

75 235 1,968 9,360 95,406

86 678 2,305 28,469 187,529

116 989 7,586 86,340 468,023

# CHAPTER 4

## KYOOSHITSU—CLASSROOM (1)

**"TE" FORM OF VERB + KUDASAI = "Please"**  
(*Polite request*)

**"TE" FORM OF VERB** { + **IMASU** = "...ing"  
(*Progressive form*)  
+ **IMASEN** = "Not...ing."

tatte kudasai

please stand up

1. TAKAHASHI-SAN, TATTE  
KUDASAI.  
KOSHIKAKETE KUDASAI.

MR. TAKAHASHI, PLEASE  
STAND UP.  
PLEASE SIT DOWN.

hon o  
yonde kudasai

book (obj. case)  
please read

2. HON O YONDE KUDASAI.  
3. TO O AKETE KUDASAI.  
TO O SHIMETE KUDASAI.

PLEASE READ THE BOOK.  
PLEASE OPEN THE DOOR.  
PLEASE CLOSE THE DOOR.

anata wa  
nani o  
shite imasu ka

as for you (nom. case)  
what (obj. case)  
(are you) doing

4. ANATA WA NANI O SHITE  
IMASU KA.

WHAT ARE YOU DOING?

watakushi wa Nihongo o kaite imasu	as for me (nom. case) Japanese (obj. case) (am) writing
5. <u>WATAKUSHI WA NIHON-</u> <u>GO O KAITE IMASU.</u>	I AM WRITING JAPANESE.
Kishi-san ga to o shimete imasu	(it is) Mr. Kishi the door (obj. case) is closing
6. <u>KISHI-SAN GA TO O SHI-</u> <u>METE IMASU.</u>	MR. KISHI IS CLOSING THE DOOR.
7. <u>WATAKUSHI WA TO O</u> <u>SHIMETE IMASEN.</u>	I AM NOT CLOSING THE DOOR.
minasan anata no hon o mite kudasai	everybody your book (obj. case) please look
8. <u>MINASAN, ANATA NO</u> <u>HON O MITE KUDASAI.</u>	EVERYBODY, PLEASE LOOK AT YOUR BOOK.
issho ni yonde kudasai	together please read
9. <u>ISSHO NI YONDE KUDA-</u> <u>SAI.</u>	PLEASE READ TOGETHER.
moo ichido itte kudasai	once more please say (it)
10. <u>MOO ICHIDO ITTE KUDA-</u> <u>SAI.</u>	PLEASE SAY (IT) ONCE MORE.
moo sukoshi yukkuri hanashite kudasai	a little more slowly please speak
11. <u>MOO SUKOSHI YUKKURI</u> <u>HANASHITE KUDASAI.</u>	PLEASE SPEAK A LITTLE MORE SLOWLY.
Eigo de hanashite kudasai	in English please speak
12. <u>EIGO DE HANASHITE KU-</u> <u>DASAI.</u>	PLEASE SPEAK IN ENGLISH.

## Vocabulary List from the Lesson

tatsu (tá-isu)	(v.i.) to stand, to stand up
tatte (tát-te)	("te" verb form of tatsu. See I.C. & G.N.)

tatte	kudasai please stand up
(ku-da-sa-i)	
tatte imasu	(is) standing
koshikakeru	(v.i.) to sit, to sit down
(ko-shi-ka-ke-ru)	
koshikakete	please sit down (See I.C. & G.N.)
kudasai	
koshikakete	(is) sitting (See I.C. & G.N.)
imasu	
o	(p.p.) postposition denoting objective case; indicates that the pre ceding noun is the object of a verb. (See I.C. & G.N.)
yomu	(v.t.) to read
yonde (yón-de)	("te" verb form of yomu. See I.C. & G.N.)
yonde kudasai	please read
yonde imasu	(is) reading
akeru	(v.t.) to open
akete (a-ke-te)	("te" verb form of akeru. See I.C. & G.N.)
akete kudasai	please open
suru	(v.t.) to do
shite	kudasai please do
(shi-te)	
shite imasu	(is) doing
kaku	(v.t.) to write
kaite (ká-i-te)	("te" verb form of kaku. Henceforth "te" form of the verb will be called "te" verb.)
kaite imasu	(is) writing
to	(n.) door
shimeru	(v.t.) to close
(shi-me-ru)	

shimete	("te" form of shimeru)
imasen	(v.) negative of imasu
shimete imasen	(is) not closing
ga	(p.p.) a postposition used in the nominative case. It has no meaning, but it emphasizes the subject. (See I.C. & G.N.)
mina-san (mi-ná-san)	(n.) everybody
miru	(v.t.) to see, to look, to look at
mite	("te" form of miru)
mite kudasai	please look
issho ni (is-sho)	together
moo	more, additional
ichido	once (one time)
moo ichido	once more
iu	(v.t.) to say, to tell
itte kudasai	please say
moo sukoshi	a little more
yukkuri (yuk-ku-rt)	(adv.) slowly, leisurely
hanasu	(v.t.) to talk, to speak, to relate
(ha-nd-su)	
hanashite	("te" form of hanasu)
hanashite	please speak
kudasai	
Eigo de	in English

### Additional Vocabulary

dore	(inter, pro.) which?
dono	(inter, adj. pro.) which?

asobu	(v.t.) to play, to while away time, to visit
kau	(v.t.) to buy, to purchase
aruku	(v.i.) to walk
ima	(n.) now
nugu	(v.t.) to take off (shoes, hat, coat, etc.)
tomodachi (to-mo-da-chi)	(n.) friend

### Important Construction and Grammar Notes

"TE" VERB+KUDASAI: The te form of a verb plus kudasai is the polite request form, and it means:

1. Please write.
2. Please read,  
etc.

"TE" VERB+IMASU: The te form of a verb plus imasu (or imasen for the negative) signifies progressive action in Japanese, and it is translated:

1. He is reading (or, he is not reading.)
2. I am playing (or, I am not playing.)  
etc.

Tatte, koshikakete, and yonde are "te" (and "de") forms of the verbs tatsu, koshikakeru, and yomu, meaning "to stand up," "to sit down," and "to read" respectively. Some verbs end in "te" and others "de," as explained on the next page.



In studying verbs, it is necessary to know the dictionary forms, sometimes called the abrupt present, or the root forms, of the Japanese verbs since all conjugations and voices are derived from this basic form. Tatsu, koshikakeru, and yomu are the dictionary forms of the verb. This form of the verb is a complete verb. It indicates the present tense and it is less formal (more abrupt) than the masu ending. It has the following meanings:

Hon o yomu—I read a book, (a statement of fact)

I will read a book, (intention)

I shall read a book, (simple future)

**HOW "TE" VERBS ARE FORMED:** From the endings of the root form of the verbs, one can obtain a rule for formulating "te" forms of the various verbs.

For instance, the verb kaku has a ku ending. The "te" form of the verb is formed by changing ku to ite: ka-ite, kaite. Similarly, aruka becomes aruite. For a verb with a mu ending, mu is changed to nde.

Therefore, yomu becomes yonde.

With this thought in mind, the following table should be carefully studied and mastered. This table includes all verb endings. The syllables within the brackets indicate the verb ending.

A(u)	"to meet"	tte	(a/tte)	>	Verbs ending in <i>U, TSU,</i> <i>RU</i> change to <b>TTE</b> .
TA(tsu)	"to stand"	tte	(ta/tte)		
U(ru)	"to sell"	tte	(u/tte)	>	Verbs ending in <i>MU, BU,</i> <i>NU</i> change to <b>NDE</b> .
YO(mu)	"to read"	nde	(yo/nde)		
TO(tu)	"to fly"	nde	(to/nde)	>	
SHI(mi)	"to die"	nde	(shi/nde)		
SA(su)	"to point"	shite	(sa/shite)	—	<i>SU</i> changes to <b>SHITE</b>
KA(ku)	"to write"	ite	(ka/ite)	—	<i>KU</i> changes to <b>ITE</b>
NU(gu)	"to undress"	ide	(nu/ide)	—	<i>GU</i> changes to <b>IDE</b>

For verbs ending in -IRU and -ERU, the ichidan verbs, always drop RU and add TE.

miru—"to see"—mite  
shimeru—"to close"—shimete

Note: The "te" form of the verb in Japanese is an incomplete verb, having no meaning when used alone. It acquires meaning only when it is used with another verb, as explained in this lesson. Nevertheless, this form is used quite frequently with many different meanings, so it should be thoroughly mastered. Other usages will be explained as they appear. For verbs kuru (to come) and suru (to do), which are considered irregular verbs (see page 134) because they do not follow any rule when conjugating, the "te" form should be memorized as:

KURU—kite  
SURU —shite

POSTPOSITION O: This postposition identifies the direct object. Hence, when we say hon o it gives the feeling, "here is a book presented for action to be taken on it." In other words, o indicates that the preceding noun is in the objective case, so it must be used with a transitive verb, a verb which passes its action onto an object. Or, to put this in another way, a transitive verb requires an object. Note the following word order when an object is introduced.

DIRECT OBJECT + O + TRANSITIVE VERB
-------------------------------------

- |            |   |         |
|------------|---|---------|
| 1. hon     | o | yomu.   |
| 2. Nihongo | o | hanasu. |
| 3. saeshi  | o | kau.    |

In this chapter, kaku (write), miru (see), akeru (open), shimeru (close), hanasu (speak), etc., are transitive verbs. An intransitive verb does not require an object. Tatsu (stand), aruku (walk), etc., belong in this group.

**SUBJECT+DIRECT OBJECT+VERB:** This is the usual word order of a Japanese sentence containing a direct object. Place the object close to the verb.

SUBJECT WA + OBJECT O + VERB
------------------------------

- |                 |      |   |                    |
|-----------------|------|---|--------------------|
| 1. Watakushi wa | hon  | o | yonde imasu.       |
| 2. Anata wa     | Eigo | o | hanashite kudasai. |

**ASSOCIATING POSTPOSITIONS WITH VERBS:** It is often helpful to remember postpositions by associating them with particular verbs. Yomu is a transitive verb. Hence, o yomu.

**GA:** This is a nominative postposition similar to wa, and it emphasizes the subject, while wa is used to denote attention to the predicate. In English, such distinction is made by intonation, for example, "John did it!" or "I'm the boss." In these instances, ga is used.

- |                       |                                  |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| (a) Kore wa hon desu. | This is a book.                  |
| (b) Kore ga hon desu. | This (particular one) is a book. |

- (a) Kishi-san wa to o Mr. Kishi is closing the  
shimete imasu. door.
- (b) Kishi-san ga to o (It is) Mr. Kishi (who) is  
shimete imasu. closing the door.

GA is used for a special reason only.

WA is more commonly used to indicate the subject of a sentence. Use ga in the nominative case, after interrogative pronouns:

1. Dare ga hanashite imasu ka.
2. Dore ga hon desu ka.

**POSTPOSITIONS IN GENERAL:** Postpositions are simple words sometimes referred to as "particles." Their simplicity, however, is a bit deceptive.

It is well for all beginning students to remember that there is no exact English equivalent to them. Instead of giving simple English equivalents, which are often misleading, it is much more helpful to have a clear definition of each postposition. Know why you are using a certain postposition. Students should pay special attention in their mastery by constant use, practice, association, and mimicry. Remember that after every noun, with a few exceptions, there must be a postposition.

### Substitution Drill

I. ANATA NO HON O	<div style="text-align: center;"> <i>("TV" verb)</i>            YONDE            MITE            AKETE            KATTE         </div>	KUDASAI.
II. ITOO-SAN WA	<div style="text-align: center;">           TATTE            KOSHIKAKETE            SHITE            KATTE            ASONDE            HANASHITE            ARUITE         </div>	IMASU (or IMASEN).

## Exercises

**Note:** The subjects "I" and "You" are omitted as understood in the Japanese translations.

- |                                 |                               |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Please read.                 | Yonde kudasai.                |
| 2. Please read your book.       | Anata no hon o yonde kudasai. |
| 3. Please close (it).           | Shimete kudasai.              |
| 4. Please close the door.       | To o shimete kudasai.         |
| 5. Please look.                 | Mite kudasai.                 |
| 6. Please look at the book.     | Hon o mite kudasai.           |
| 7. Please write.                | Kaite kudasai.                |
| 8. Please write English.        | Eigo o kaite kudasai.         |
| 9. Please write English slowly. | Eigo o yukkuri kaite kudasai. |
| 10. Please buy.                 | Katte kudasai.                |
| 11. Please buy the magazine.    | Zasshi o katte kudasai.       |
| 12. I will do (it).             | Shimasu.                      |
| 13. I am doing (it).            | Shite imasu.                  |
| 14. I am not doing (it).        | Shite imasen.                 |
| 15. I will play.                | Asobimasu.                    |
| 16. I am playing.               | Asonde imasu.                 |
| 17. I am not playing.           | Asonde imasen.                |
| 18. I am writing.               | Kaite imasu.                  |

19. I am writing Japanese.      Nihongo o kaite imasu.  
20. Please speak.              Hanashite kudasai.  
21. Please speak slowly.      Yukkuri hanashite kudasai.  
22. Please speak slowly in Japanese.      in Yukkuri Nihongo de hanashite kudasai.  
23. Please speak slowly in Japanese once more.      in Moo ichido yukkuri Nihongo de hanashite kudasai.  
24. What are you doing?      Nani o shite imasu ka.  
25. What are you writing?      Nani o kaite imasu ka.  
26. What are you eating?      Nani o tabete imasu ka.  
27. What are you looking (at)?      Nani o mite imasu ka.

Translate into Japanese:

1. Please read your book.
2. Please write in English.
3. Please close the door slowly.
4. Please speak slowly once more.
5. I am not speaking English now. I am speaking Japanese.
6. My teacher is reading the Japanese book slowly.
7. Is Mr. Tanaka opening the window now? No, I am opening (it).
8. Who is looking at the magazine?
9. A student is looking at my magazine.

10. Who is walking slowly? Mr. Ito is walking slowly.
11. The English teacher is writing English slowly.
12. Please read together once more.
13. Please read a little more.
14. What are you doing now? Are you reading a newspaper?
15. No, I am not. I am looking at my high school Japanese reader.

Note: The subject "you" is understood for sentences 1-4. Therefore, the Japanese translation, too, can omit the subject.

Answer in Japanese:

1. Anata wa ima hanashite imasu ka.
2. Sensei wa ima tatte imasu ka.
3. Dare ga ima zasshi o yonde imasu ka.
4. Dare ga Nihongo o hanashite imasu ka.
5. Anata wa ima Eigo o kaite imasu ka.
6. Dore ga anata no isu desu ka.
7. Dono hon ga anata no desu ka.
8. Anata wa ima nani o shite imasu ka. Shimbun o yonde imasu ka.

9. Anata no tomodachi wa ima shimbun o mite imasu ka.
10. Anata wa ima watakushi no tegami o yonde imasu ka.
11. Anata wa Eigo de tegami o kaite imasu ka.
12. Anata no tomodachi wa mado o shimete imasu ka.
13. Anata wa dare no hon o mite imasu ka.
14. Anata wa ima yukkuri aruite imasu ka.
15. Anata wa ima tatte imasu ka, koshikakete imasu ka.

What would you say, when .

1. You want someone to say something once more.
2. You want someone to speak a little more slowly.
3. You want to find out how his father is.
4. You want to answer that he is fine.
5. You want to find out the name of his Spanish language teacher.
6. You want to know whether his Japanese language primer is a new one.
7. You meet Mr. Ito in the afternoon and want to find out how he is.
8. You want someone to write his name.



9. You want someone to write his name in Japanese.

10. You want someone to write his name in Japanese once more.

### Useful Expressions

#### The Weather (Tenki)

- |                             |                             |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| a. II OTENKI DESU NE.       | Nice weather, isn't it?     |
| b. TENKI GA WARUI DESU NE.  | Awful weather, isn't it?    |
| c. ATSUI DESU NE.           | Hot (weather), isn't it?    |
| d. SAMUI DESU NE.           | Cold (weather), isn't it?   |
| e. YOKU AME GA FURIMASU NE. | It rains a lot, doesn't it? |

Note: NE is used at the end of a sentence, asking for a confirmation to a question. It really isn't seeking an answer. It is equivalent to "isn't it so?" "don't you think so too?" or "n'est ce pas?"

# CHAPTER 5

## ARIMASU—THERE IS

(Pertaining to the existence of inanimate things)

<b>LOCATION NI</b> (where)	+	<b>SUBJECT GA</b> (what)	+	ARIMASU (there is)
	or		+	ARIMASEN (there is not)
<b>SUBJECT WA</b> (what)	+	<b>LOCATION NI</b> (where)		

*Reminder:* The basic sentences in the main text should be repeated until memorized. Use the English sentences on the right side of the page to help you understand the sentence structure.

heya no naka  
heya no naka ni  
nani ga  
arimasu ka

room's inside  
in the room  
what  
is there?

1. HEYA NO NAKA NI NANI  
GA ARIMASU KA.

WHAT IS IN THE ROOM?

tsukue ga  
arimasu

a desk (nom. case)  
there is

2. TSUKUE GA ARIMASU.

THERE IS A DESK.

tsukue no ue  
tsukue no ue ni  
nani ga  
arimasu ka

desk's top  
on top of the desk (desk's top)  
what  
is there?

3. TSUKUE NO UE NI NANI  
GA ARIMASU KA.

WHAT IS (THERE) ON TOP OF  
THE DESK?

booshi  
to  
kaban

hat  
and  
bag

4. BOOSHI TO KABAN GA  
ARIMASU.

THERE ARE A HAT AND A  
BAG.

anata no  
anata no hon wa  
doko ni  
arimasu ka

your  
as for your book (nom. case)  
where  
is it?

5. ANATA NO HON WA  
DOKO NI ARIMASU KA.

WHERE IS YOUR BOOK?

tsukue no ue ni  
arimasu

on top of the desk  
there is

6. WATAKUSHI NO HON WA  
TSUKUE NO UE NI ARI-  
MASU.

MY BOOK IS ON TOP OF THE  
DESK.

7. NOOTO-BUKKU TO HON  
WA DOKO NI ARIMASU  
KA.

WHERE ARE (YOUR) NOTE-  
BOOK AND BOOK?

8. WATAKUSHI NO HON TO  
NOOTO-BUKKU WA TSU-  
KUE NO UE NI ARIMASU.  
KABAN WA TSUKUE NO  
SHITA NI ARIMASU.

MY BOOK AND NOTEBOOK  
ARE ON THE DESK.

(MY) BAG IS UNDER THE  
DESK.

anata  
anata no

you  
your

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| anata no heya<br>anata no heya no naka ni<br><br>isu ga<br>arimasu ka.   | your room<br>inside your room (your room's<br>inside)<br>chair (nom. case)<br>is there?                              |
| 9. <u>ANATA NO HEYA NO</u><br><u>NAKA NI ISU GA ARI-</u><br><u>MASU KA.</u>  | IS THERE A CHAIR IN YOUR<br>ROOM?  |
| 10. <u>IE, ARIMASEN.</u><br><br>koko<br>koko ni  | NO, THERE ISN'T.<br><br>here<br>at this place  |
| 11. <u>KOKO NI TEREBI GA ARI-</u><br><u>MASU KA.</u>   | IS THERE A TELEVISION<br>HERE?   |
| 12. <u>IE, KONO HEYA NO NA-</u><br><u>KA NI TEREBI GA ARI-</u><br><u>MASEN.</u><br><br>anata no mae<br>anata no mae ni<br>tomodachi ga<br>tatte imasu ka | NO, THERE IS NO TELEVISION<br>IN THIS ROOM.<br><br>your front<br>in your front<br>friend (nom. case)<br>is standing? |
| 13. <u>ANATA NO MAE NI TO-</u><br><u>MODACHI GA TATTE</u><br><u>IMASU KA.</u>  | IS A FRIEND STANDING IN<br>FRONT OF YOU?   |
| 14. <u>IE, TATTE IMASEN.</u><br><u>KOSHIAKETE IMASU.</u>   | NO, (HE IS) NOT STANDING.<br>HE IS SITTING.  |

## Vocabulary List from the Lesson

Note: These translations are not in the best English. The primary purpose is to convey the *kimochi* or "feeling" of the words or phrases described in the most concise manner. In rendering translations of sentences, however, the reader is expected to use the best English or Japanese of which he is capable.

heya (he-yá) (n.) room

naka (ná-ka)	(n.) the inside
ni	(p.p.) postposition indicating location: in, at (See I.C. & G.N.)
heya	no the inside of a room, room's in side
naka	
heya	no in the room
naka ni	
aru	(v.) there is (abrupt form of arimasu)
arimasu	(v.) there is (used to show existence of inanimate object only)
arimasen	negative of arimasu
tsukue	(n.) desk
(tsu-ku-e)	
ue (ti-é)	(n.) the top part, or, the top; the above part
tsukue no ue	on the desk
ni	
booshi	(n.) hat, cap
(boo-shi)	
to	(conj.) and (See I.C. & G.N.)
kaban	(n.) bag (lady's handbag, brief case, suitcase, school bag)
doko	(inter, pro) where? what place?
(do-ko)	
doko ni	where? (at what place?)
nooto-bukku	(n.) notebook
shita (shi-tá)	(n.) down, the down place, that place which is directly below some thing
tsukue	no under the desk
shita ni	
koko	here, this place

koko ni	here, at this place
terebi	(n.) T. V., television
mae (má-e)	(n.) the front, the fore, in front place, the before (time), ago (time), past
mae ni	in the front, before (time)

### Additional Vocabulary

soko	there, that place
soko ni	there, at that place
aida (a-i-da)	(n.) between (in space, or time)
hon no aida ni	between the books
soba	(n.) near, the near place, immediate vicinity
chikaku (chi-ká-ku)	(n.) near, includes wider area than soba
mannaka (man-na-ka)	(n.) dead center, center (also, when loosely used: approximate center)
manmilni ni	in the center
ushiro (u-shi-ro)	(n.) rear, back, the behind place
boku no ushiro ni	behind me
uchi (u-chi)	(n.) home
hidari (hi-da-ri)	(n.) the left side
migi	(n.) the right side
kooen (koo-en)	(n.) park
hito (hi-to)	(n.) person
sono (ano) kata	that person; this expression is used for the
(so-no ka-ta)	pronouns "he" and "she"
sono (ano) hito	same as above but less polite
teeburu	(n.) table

## Important Construction and Grammar Notes

ARIMASU: Arimasu is the verb of existence. It is used to show existence of inanimate objects. It cannot be used with animate things. Arimasu can be translated into English as "there is," or "there are."

Desu states the substance. Arimasu states existence. Ni points and shows existence where (see next page).

- |                                    |                              |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Hon desu.                       | (It) is a book.              |
| 2. Hon ga arimasu.                 | There is a book.             |
| 3. Tsukue no ue ni hon ga arimasu. | There is a book on the desk. |

The difference between desu and arimasu is "it is ." and "there is ." in English.

NEGATIVE OF DESU AND ARIMASU: The negative of desu is dewa arimasen. The negative of arimasu is arimasen. This negates existence of the subject.

- |                       |                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. Hon dewa arimasen. | It is not a book.    |
| 2. Hon wa arimasen.   | There is not a book. |
|                       | There is no book.    |

NI: Ni has many uses, but here it will be understood as the postposition indicating location. The formula is LOCATION+NI ARIMASU. It indicates the exact place of location of something or somebody, and is used with arimasu (or imasu—explained below). It is translated "in," "at," "on," in itself:

1. Koko ni hon ga Here is a book, (or) At this place, there arimasu. is a book.
2. Uchi ni arimasu. (It) is at home, (or) At home, there is.
3. Heya ni arimasu. (It) is in the room.

When ni is used after these nouns of location, the construction becomes ADVERBIAL with equivalent adverbs in English:

1. tsukue—noun "desk"
2. tsukue no ue—substantive "top of the desk (desk's top)"
3. tsukue no ue ni— adverbial phrase, translated: "on top of the desk"

Similarly:

1. hon no aida ni—"between the books (or, books' between)"
2. tsukue no shita ni—"under the desk (or, desks' underneath)"
3. gakkoo no soba ni—"near the school (or, schools' near)"

**WORD ORDER:** The word order showing location is as follows:

NOUN + NO + LOCATION (where?) + NI
------------------------------------



The word order here is the reverse of English; for example, "in front of the school" in English will be school's front in Japanese; "in back of the house" is house's back.

1. watakushi no hidari ni (my left)
2. uchi            nou shiro ni (house's back)
3. gakkoo        noma e ni (school's front)
4. kooen         nonaka ni (park's inside)

SENTENCE WORD ORDER WHEN LOCATION IS INCLUDED: The sentence word order is as follows:

**LOCATION (where) NI + SUBJECT (what) GA + VERB**

1. Tsukue no ue ni      hon ga      arimasu
2. Heya no naka ni    isu ga      arimasu
3. Teeburu no soba ni Itoo-san ga tatte imasu

(In this section, note the usage of the nominative postposition *ga* before the verb.)

— 9 —

**SUBJECT (what) WA + LOCATION (where) NI + VERB**

1. Isu wa        heyā no mannaka arimasu.  
                    ni
2. Gakkoo      kooen no soba ni    arimasu.  
   wa
3. Itoo-san     sensei no ushiro ni koshikakete  
   wa                                    imasu.

GA AND WA: As indicated above, the student has noticed that in relation to existence construction, ga is the postposition associated with the subject and used with a form of arimasu verb when the subject comes just before the verb.

1. Hon no aida ni tegami ga arimasu.
2. Daigaku no soba ni kooen ga arimasu.

TO: To is a conjunction. Among other uses, it is used to connect two nouns or noun equivalents only, and it means "and." To, however, is never used to connect sentences.

1. Anata to watakushi                      you and I
2. Eigo no hon to Nihongo no English book and Japanese  
hon    book

When combining sentences, use soshite:

1. Kore wa hon desu. Soshite are wa empitsu desu.

### Substitution Drill

- |                            |   |                        |
|----------------------------|---|------------------------|
| I. KOOEN                   | <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <i>(Location)</i><br/>           NO NAKA<br/>           NO MAE<br/>           NO USHIRO<br/>           NO MANNAKA<br/>           NO CHIKAKU<br/>           etc.         </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em;">}</div> | NI GAKKOO GA ARI-MASU. |
| II. BROWN-SAN WA<br>SENSEI | <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <i>(Location)</i><br/>           NO MAE<br/>           NO USHIRO<br/>           NO MIGI<br/>           NO HIDARI<br/>           NO SOBA<br/>           etc.         </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em;">}</div>     | NI TATTE IMASU.        |

## Exercises

(Beginning with sentence 6, use two patterns given in the text in translating.)

1. in front of me                      watakushi no mae ni
2. behind me (in back of me)      watakushi no ushiro ni
3. to his right                        ano kata no migi ni
4. to my left                         watakushi no hidari ni
5. on top of him                      ano kata no ue ni
6. There is a chair in front of me.      Watakushi no mae ni isu ga arimasu.
7. There is a bag under the table.      Teeburu no shita ni kaban ga arimasu.
8. There is a piano in the room.        Heya no naka ni piano ga arimasu.
9. There is a dictionary on top of the desk.      Tsukue no ue ni jibiki ga arimasu.
10. There is a park near my school.      Watakushi no gakkoo no chikaku ni kooen ga arimasu.
11. Where is the park?                Kooen wa doko ni arimasu ka.
12. Where is your television?        Anata no terebi wa doko ni arimasu ka.
13. Where is my room?                Watakushi no heya wa doko ni arimasu ka.
14. Where is Jiro's letter?            Jiroo no tegami wa doko ni arimasu ka.
15. The park is in front of the school.      Gakkoo no mae ni kooen ga arimasu.

16. Your television is in my Watakushi no heya ni anata no  
room. terebi ga arimasu.
17. Your room is not in this Kono hoteru ni anata no heya ga  
hotel. arimasen.
18. Jiro's letter is between Hon no aida ni Jiroo no tegami  
the books. ga arimasu.
19. There isn't a television Kono heya no naka ni terebi ga  
in this room. arimasen.
20. There isn't a letter in the Kaban no naka ni tegami ga  
bag. arimasen.
21. There isn't a pencil on Tsukue no ue ni empitsu ga  
the desk. arimasen.
22. There isn't a school near Kooen no chikaku ni gakkoo ga  
the park. arimasen.
23. Jiro is sitting in front of Jiroo wa watakushi no mae ni  
me. koshikakete imasu.
24. The friend is standing Tomodachi wa watakushi no  
behind me. ushiro ni tatte imasu.
25. He is standing on the Ano kata wa isu no ue ni tatte  
chair. imasu.

Translate into Japanese:

1. What is in the small desk?
2. What is under this table?

on top of  
in front of  
in the back of  
in the middle of

on the left side of  
on the right side of

Note: It might be helpful to think of the word order of this construction as the opposite of English. "In front of ..." is: NO MAE NI. (of front in)

3. Your dictionary and notebook are in my briefcase.
4. Where is the teacher's book? It is in the desk.
5. Is Mr. Tanaka sitting in front of you? No, he is standing.
6. There is no TV in the room.
7. Your Japanese letter is in the big box.
8. My school is in front of a large park.
9. My teacher is standing in front of me.
10. The old magazine is under the newspaper.

Answer in Japanese:

1. Kono heya no naka ni nani ga arimasu ka.
2. Anata no tsukue no ue ni nani to nani ga arimasu ka.
3. Anata no uchi wa Tookyoo ni arimasu ka.
4. Anata no shoogakkoo wa New York ni arimasu ka.
5. Kimi no Eigo no hon wa doko ni arimasu ka.

6. Kono gakkoo no mae ni kooen ga arimasu ka.
7. Kono heya no naka ni terebi ga arimasu ka.
8. Anata no empitsu wa tsukue no shita ni arimasu ka. Doko ni arimasu ka.
9. Kono tsukue no naka ni pen ga arimasu ka.
10. Anata no hidari ni dare ga koshikakete imasu ka.
11. Anata no soba ni to ga arimasu ka. To wa anata no ushiro ni arimasu ka.
12. Anata no pen wa poketto (pocket) no naka ni arimasu ka. Doko ni arimasu ka.
13. Kono hon no aida ni Nihongo no tegami ga arimasu ka.
14. Anata no mae ni tomodachi ga tatte imasu ka.
15. Isu to tsukue wa doko ni arimasu ka. Anata no migi ni arimasu ka.

Fill in the blanks with proper postpositions:

1. Soko \_\_\_\_\_ nani \_\_\_\_\_ arimasu ka.
2. Watakushi \_\_\_\_\_ ushiro \_\_\_\_\_ isu \_\_\_\_\_ arimasu.
3. Anata \_\_\_\_\_ uchi wa Nihon \_\_\_\_\_ arimasu ka.
4. Ie, watakushi no uchi \_\_\_\_\_ Nihon \_\_\_\_\_ arimasen.

5. Tsukue \_\_\_\_\_ ue \_\_\_\_\_ hon \_\_\_\_\_ zasshi \_\_\_\_\_ arimasen.
6. Dare \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_ shimete imasu ka.
7. Tomodachi \_\_\_\_\_ ima hon \_\_\_\_\_ yonde imasu.
8. Eigo \_\_\_\_\_ moo ichido itte kudasai.
9. Anata \_\_\_\_\_ Nihongo \_\_\_\_\_ sensei \_\_\_\_\_ donata desu ka.
10. Anata \_\_\_\_\_ Nihongo \_\_\_\_\_ hon \_\_\_\_\_ yonde kudasai.

### Useful Expressions

#### Introducing People (Shookai)

You (John Brown) are being introduced to Mr. Tanaka by Taroo.

TAROO: TANAKA-SAN, BROWN-SAN O SHOOKAI SHIMASU. Mr. Tanaka, I shall introduce Mr. Brown.

KONO KATA WA BROWN-SAN DESU. This is Mr. Brown.

KONO KATA WA TANAKA-SAN DESU. This is Mr. Tanaka.

YOU: WATAKUSHI WA JOHN BROWN DESU. I am John Brown.

HAJIMEMASHITE. I'm happy to meet you.  
(and/or)

DOOZO YOROSHIKU. Pleased to meet you.

TANAKA: WATAKUSHI WA TANAKA DESU. I am Tanaka.

DOOZO YOROSHIKU. Pleased to meet you.

## SUPPLEMENT II

### Numeral Classifiers

The following is the system of counting or designating the number of people or things with proper "numerators" or "numeral classifiers."

This is equivalent to the English expression of "two pairs of shoes" or "ten heads of lettuce," etc. In Japanese there are many more classifiers and they are carefully designated. Some objects, however, do not fall into any specific category, or when you have forgotten the classifier, the Japanese numerals (page 44), can often be used for inanimate objects.

hitotsu no kurasu one class  
mittsu no hako three boxes  
futatsu no isu two chairs

Hyphens are used here to show the combination (or compound) and they are not normally used.



	PEOPLE -nin	ANIMALS -hiki*	BOOKS -setsu
1.	hitori	ip-piki*	is-setsu*
2.	futari	ni-hiki	ni-setsu
3.	sam-nin	sam-hiki*	sam-setsu
4.	yo-nin	shi-hiki yon-hiki	shi-setsu yon-setsu
5.	go-nin	go-hiki	go-setsu
6.	roku-nin	rop-piki*	roku-setsu
7.	shichi-nin	shichi-hiki nana-hiki	nana-setsu
8.	hachi-nin	hachi-hiki hap-piki*	hachi-setsu has-setsu*
9.	ku-nin kyuu-nin	kyuu-hiki	kyuu-setsu
10.	juu-nin	jip-piki*	ju-setsu* juu-setsu*
11.	juuichi-nin	juuip-piki*	juuin-setsu
12.	etc.		

\* See note on following page.

	LONG SLENDER OBJECTS -hon	FLAT OBJECTS -mai	NUMBER OF TIMES -do
1.	ip-pon*	ichi-mai	ichi-do
2.	ni-hon	ni-mai	ni-do
3.	sam-bon*	sam-mai	sam-do
4.	yon-hon shi-hon	yom-mai yo-mai	yo-do yon-do
5.	go-hon	go-mai	go-do
6.	rop-pon*	roku-mai	roku-do
7.	shichi-hon nana-hon	shichi-mai nana-mai	shichi-do nana-do
8.	hachi-hon hap-pon*	hachi-mai	hachi-do
9.	kyuu-hon	kyuu-mai	kyuu-do
10.	jip-pon* jup-pon*	juu-mai	juu-do

Note: \* represents phonetic changes which sometimes occur for 1, 3, 6, 8, and 10. *Hiki* changes to *sambiki*, *roppiki*, etc. *Hiki* is used in counting animals, fish, insects, etc.

*MAI* is used in counting flat objects, such as blankets, paper, sheets, bills (paper money), etc.

*HON* is the classifier used in counting round, slender objects, viz., sticks, pencils, chopsticks, etc.

Other commonly used classifiers are as follows:

*DAI* is used in counting vehicles, e.g., automobiles (*jidosha*), bicycles (*jitensha*), motorcycles (*otobai*), etc. *Ichidai*, *nidai*, *sanbai* no *jidosha*.

*HAI* is the classifier which is similar to English "\_\_\_\_ful" in "cup-ful." Note the following phonetic changes:

ippai	(1 cupful)
sambai	(3 cupfuls)
roppai	(6 cupfuls)
jippai	(10 cupfuls)
juppai	( " )

*SOKU* is the numeral classifier in counting any footwear, such as shoes (*kutsu*), socks (*kutsushita*), *geta*, etc. *Sanzoku* (3 pairs) is the only phonetic change.

# SUPPLEMENT III

## Counting and Designating the Number of Various Time Units

The following table shows how to count or designate the number of various time units: "one year . . .," "one month . . .," "one week . . .," "one day.

	TOSEI (YEAR) -nen	TSUKI (MONTH) -getsu	SHUU (WEEK) -shuukan	HI (DAY) -nichi, -ka
1.	ichi-nen	ikka-getsu hito-tsuki	isshuukan	ichi-nichi
2.	ni-nen	nika-getsu futa-tsuki	ni-shuukan	futsu-ka
3.	san-nen	sanka-getsu mi-tsuki	san-shuukan	mik-ka
4.	yo-nen	yonka-getsu shika-getsu	yon-shuukan	yok-ka
5.	go-nen	goka-getsu	go-shuukan	itsu-ka
6.	roku-nen	roka-getsu	roku-shuukan	mui-ka
7.	shichi-nen nana-nen	shichika-getsu nanaka-getsu	shichi-shuukan nana-shuukan	nano-ka nana-ka
8.	hachi-nen	hachika-getsu hakka-getsu	has-shuukan hachi-shuukan	yoo-ka
9.	ku-nen kyuu-nen	kuka-getsu kyuuka-getsu	kyuu-shuukan	kokono-ka
10.	juu-nen	jikka-getsu jukka-getsu	jio-shuukan juu-shuukan	too-ka
11.	juu-ichi-nen	juu-ikka-getsu	juu-isshuukan	juu-ichi-nichi
12.	etc.			

Note: The term used to designate the number of days is the same as that of the days of the month. (See Supplement V, p. 73.)  
 Watakushi wa Tookyoo ni itsuka imasu—I will be in Tokyo five days.  
 Watakushi wa Tookyoo ni itsuka ni tsukimasu—I will arrive in Tokyo on the 5th.  
 In the latter example, postposition *NI* is used to indicate specific date or time (see page 124) but none is needed for the former.

# SUPPLEMENT IV

## Counting and Designating the Number of Various Time Units

	HOURS -jikan	MINUTES -fun	SECONDS -byoo
1.	ichi-jikan	ip-pun*	ichi-byoo
2.	ni-jikan	ni-fun	ni-byoo
3.	san-jikan	sam-pun*	sam-byoo
4.	yo-jikan	yom-pun*	yom-byoo
5.	go-jikan	go-fun	go-byoo
6.	roku-jikan	rop-pun*	roku-byoo
7.	shichi-jikan nana-jikan	shichi-fun nana-fun	shichi-byoo nana-byoo
8.	hachi-jikan	hachi-fun hap-pun*	hachi-byoo
9.	ku-jikan	kyuu-fun	kyuu-byoo
10.	juu-jikan	jip-pun* jup-pun*	juu-byoo
11.	juu-ichi-jikan	juu-ip-pun*	juu-ichi-byoo
12.	etc.		

Note: \* represents phonetic change. Hyphens are used in all the charts to clarify word structure.

## SUPPLEMENT V

### Various Names of Time Units

	MONTH -gatsu	DAYS OF THE MONTH -ke (up to the 10th) -nichi (from the 11th)	DAYS OF THE WEEK -youbi	TIME OF DAY -ji
1.	Shoo-gatsu Ichi-gatsu (January)	suitachi	Nichi-youbi (Sunday)	ichi-ji (1 o'clock)
2.	Ni-gatsu (February)	futsu-ka	Getsu-youbi (Monday)	ni-ji (2 o'clock)
3.	San-gatsu (March)	mik-ka	Ka-youbi (Tuesday)	san-ji (3 o'clock)
4.	Shi-gatsu (April)	yok-ka	Sui-youbi (Wednesday)	yo-ji (4 o'clock)
5.	Go-gatsu (May)	itsu-ka	Moku-youbi (Thursday)	go-ji (5 o'clock)
6.	Roku-gatsu (June)	mui-ka	Kin-youbi (Friday)	roku-ji (6 o'clock)
7.	Shichi-gatsu (July)	nani-ka nani-ka	Do-youbi (Saturday)	nani-ji shichi-ji (7 o'clock)
8.	Hachi-gatsu (August)	yoo-ka		hachi-ji (8 o'clock)
9.	Ku-gatsu (September)	kokono-ka		ku-ji (9 o'clock)
10.	Juu-gatsu (October)	too-ka		juu-ji (10 o'clock)
11.	Juu-ichi-gatsu (November)	juu-ichi-nichi		juu-ichi-ji (11 o'clock)
12.	Juu-ni-gatsu (December)	juu-ni-nichi		juu-ni-ji (12 o'clock)
13.		juu-san-nichi		
14.		juu-yok-ka		
20.		hatu-ka		
21.		nijuu-ichi-nichi		

## CHAPTER 6

### KYOOSHITSU—CLASSROOM (2)

(Pertaining to the Counting of Things, both Animate and Inanimate)

NOUN GA + NUMERAL CLASSIFIER + VERB

or

NUMERAL CLASSIFIER NO + NOUN GA + VERB

1. KORE WA KYOOSHITSU  
DESU.

kono  
kono kyooshitsu  
kono kyooshitsu ni (wa)  
nani ga  
arimasu ka

THIS IS A CLASSROOM.

this  
this classroom  
in this classroom (location)  
what (nom. case)  
are there?

2. KONO KYOOSHITSU NIWA  
NANI GA ARIMASU KA.

WHAT IS IN THIS CLASS-  
ROOM?

3. KOKUBAN TO ISU TO  
TSUKUE GA ARIMASU.

tsukue ga  
ikutsu

THERE ARE A BLACKBOARD,  
A CHAIR AND A DESK.

as for the desks (nom. case)  
how many

tsukue ga ikutsu  
arimasu ka

4. TSUKUE GA IKUTSU  
ARIMASU KA.  
KAZOETE KUDASAI.

5. HITOTSU, FUTATSU,  
MITTSU—TSUKUE GA  
MITTSU ARIMASU.

kono heya  
kono heya no naka  
kono heya no naka ni  
nan-nin no gakusei ga  
imasu ka

6. KONO HEYA NO NAKA NI  
NAN-NIN NO GAKUSEI  
GA IMASU KA.

roku-nin  
roku-nin no  
roku-nin no gakusei  
roku-nin no gakusei ga  
imasu

7. ROKU-NIN NO GAKUSEI  
GA IMASU.

Nihongo no sensei ga  
hitori  
imasu

8. NIHONGO NO SENSEI GA  
HITORI IMASU.

how many desks  
are there?

HOW MANY DESKS ARE  
THERE?  
PLEASE COUNT.

ONE, TWO, THREE—  
THERE ARE THREE DESKS.

this room  
in this room  
in this room (location)  
how many students (nom. case)  
are there

HOW MANY STUDENTS ARE  
THERE IN THIS ROOM?

six (persons)  
six persons (quasi adj.)  
six students  
six students (nom. case)  
there are

THERE ARE SIX STUDENTS.

as for Japanese teacher (nom. case)  
one (person)  
there is

THERE IS ONE JAPANESE  
TEACHER.

9. KEREDOMO EIGO NO  
SENSEI WA IMASEN.

watakushi no  
watakushi no tsukue  
watakushi no tsukue no ue ni  
nani ga  
miemasu ka

HOWEVER, THERE ISN'T AN  
ENGLISH TEACHER.

mine  
my desk  
on top of my desk (location)  
what (nom. case)  
can be seen?

10. WATAKUSHI NO TSUKUE  
NO UE NI NANI GA  
MIEMASU KA.

ippon no empitsu  
to  
nisatsu no hon ga  
miemasu

WHAT CAN YOU SEE ON MY  
DESK?

(What is visible on my desk?)

one pencil  
and  
two books (nom. case)  
can be seen

11. IPPON NO EMPITSU TO  
NI-SATSU NO HON GA  
MIEMASU.

or

EMPITSU GA IPPON (TO)  
HON GA NI-SATSU  
MIEMASU.

I CAN SEE ONE PENCIL AND  
TWO VOLUMES OF BOOKS.

(One pencil and two volumes of  
books can be seen.)

kore wa  
atsukute  
atsukute kuroi  
atsukute kuroi hon  
desu

as for this (nom. case)  
thick and  
thick and black  
thick and black book  
(it) is

12. KORE WA ATSUKUTE  
KUROI HON DESU.

THIS IS A THICK AND BLACK  
BOOK.

issatsu no hon wa  
atsukute kuroi jibiki  
desu

as for one book  
a thick and black dictionary  
(it) is

13. ISSATSU NO HON WA  
ATSUKUTE KUROI JIBIKI  
DESU.

ONE BOOK IS A THICK AND  
BLACK DICTIONARY.

issatsu no hon wa  
usukute akai kyookasho  
desu

as for one book  
a thin and red textbook  
(it) is

14. ISSATSU NO HON WA  
USUKUTE AKAI KYOOKA-  
SHO DESU.

ONE BOOK IS A THIN AND RED  
TEXTBOOK.

ano hon wa  
kuroku wa arimasen

as for that book  
(it) is not black

15. ANO HON WA KUROKU  
WA ARIMASEN.

THAT BOOK IS NOT BLACK.

sono  
jibiki to kyookasho no iro wa  
soku wa arimasen

that  
dictionary and textbook's color  
is not blue

16. SONO JIBIKI TO KYOO-  
KASHO NO IRO WA AOKU  
WA ARIMASEN.

THE COLOR OF THE DIC-  
TIONARY AND TEXTBOOK IS  
NOT BLUE.

anata wa  
kono tsukue no ue ni  
gozatsu no hon ga  
miemasu ka

as for you  
on this desk (location)  
five volumes of books (nom. case)  
can you see

17. ANATA WA KONO TSU-  
KUE NO UE NI GO-SATSU  
NO HON GA MIEMASU KA.

CAN YOU SEE FIVE VOLUMES  
OF BOOKS ON THIS DESK?

ni-satsu  
shika miemasen

two volumes  
only can see

18. NI-SATSU SHIKA MI-  
MASEN.

(I) CAN SEE ONLY TWO VOL-  
UMES.  
(Only two volumes are visible)

19. HON GA NI-SATSU SHIKA  
ARIMASEN.

THERE ARE ONLY TWO  
BOOKS.

## Vocabulary List from the Lesson



kyooshitsu (kyoo-shi-tsu)	(n.) a classroom
ikutsu	(inter, pro.) how many?
kazoeru (ka-zó-e-ru)	(v.t.) to count (non-conjugating verb, henceforth referred to as n.c.v.)
kazoete	("te" form of kazoeru)
hitotsu (hi-tó-tsu)	(n.) one (used only when counting things, or designating the num ber of things)
futatsu (fu-ta-tsu)	(n.) two (used only when counting things, or designating the num ber of things)
mittsu (mit-tsu)	(n.) three (used only when counting things, or designating the num ber of things)
nan-nin (nán-tiin)	(inter, pro.) how many persons?
-nin	(suf.) numeral classifier for human beings. Used only in compounds.
iru	(v.) there is (used only with animate things or beings)
imasu (i-má-su)	(polite form of iru)
roku-nin (ro-kú-nin)	(n.) six (persons). Used to count people, or to designate the num ber of persons.
hitori (hi-tó-ri)	(n.) one (person). Used to count people, or to designate the num ber of persons.
keredomo (ké-re-do-mo)	however
mieru (mi-é-ru)	(v.) (can see), can be seen, (is) visi ble (n.c.v.)
miemasu	(polite form of mieru)
ippon (ip-pón)	(n.) one (long, slender object), pho netic change of ichi-hon.

. hon	numeral classifier for long, slender objects (see Supplement II, p. 70)
ippon	no one pencil
empitsu	
ni-satsu	(n.) two volumes (See Supplement II, p. 69)
... satsu	the numeral classifier for books
ni-satsu	no two volumes of books
hon	
atsui (a-tsu-i)	(adj.) thick
atsukute	("te" form of atsui used connectively, See I.C. & G.N.) thick and .
issatsu (is-sa-tsu)	(n.) one volume, phonetic change of ichi-satsu
usui (u-su-i)	(adj.) thin
usukute	("te" form of usui) translated "thin and .
kuroku (ku-ró-ku)	(adverbial form of kuroi)
kuroku arimasen	(wa)(negative of kuroi desu) not black

### Important Construction and Grammar Notes

NIWA: This is the combination of two postpositions, ni and wa. Wa in this usage does not have the original function of acting as the nominative postposition. It is used to emphasize the location as if to say, "Here, in this room, there is. ." The use of wa in combination with ni is optional.

NI: On page 62, ni was explained as the postposition indicating location. We understood it to be translated "in" or "at" in itself. Ni can also mean "on" or "to" in the sense of "belonging to .," showing attachment to. This is usually

translated as "have." When expressing this it follows the following pattern. Wa is optional.

NOUN + <u>NI</u> (WA)   NOUN + <u>GA</u> <u>ARIMASU</u> (or <u>IMASU</u> for animate)
To a (noun)                      there is a (noun)                      = ... has ...

1. Inu niwa ashi ga yon-honTo a dog, there are four feet.  
ari-masu. (Dogs have four feet.)
2. Kono uchi niwa puuruTo this house, there is no pool.  
(pool) ga arimasen. (This house has no pool.)
3. Watakushi niwa kodomo gaTo me, there are two children.  
futari arimasu. (or imasu) (I have two children.)
4. Watakushi no heya niwaTo my room, there is no TV.  
terebe ga arimasen. (My room doesn't have a TV.)

Note: The use of "have" in the examples given above does NOT show ownership, or possession. This is expressed by motte imasu. For example:

1. Watakushi wa Nihongo noI have a Japanese dictionary.  
jibiki o motte imasu.
2. Watakushi wa kaban oI do not have a brief case.  
motte imasen.

KAZOETE KUDASAI: The "te" verb "kazoete" is from the verb kazoeru (to count). This verb has an eru ending as the verb akeru in the table, under HOW "TE" VERBS ARE FORMED (p. 51). Since this is an eruending verb, ru is changed to te

NUMERALS: Japanese has two sets of numerals in equally common use. One is purely of Japanese origin, and the other is of Chinese origin. Memorize the table given in SUPPLEMENT I (p. 44).

Notice that the Japanese way of counting only goes up to ten. Beyond ten, use the Chinese numerals.

**JAPANESE NUMERALS:** The Japanese numerals are the cardinal numbers used in counting **INANIMATE THINGS**. Never use this form when counting human beings or other animate things.

We use *hitori*, *futari*, *san-nin*, etc., in counting people; *ippiki*, *ni-hiki*, *san-biki*, etc., in counting animals; *hitotsu*, *futatsu*, *mittsu*, etc., in counting inanimate things in general, or when proper **NUMERAL CLASSIFIERS** are not known to us; *issatsu*, *ni-satsu*, *san-satsu*, etc., in counting books. Memorize the table in **SUPPLEMENT II** (p. 69).

**"THERE ARE TWO CHAIRS":** Commonly, this is translated two ways:

SUBJECT GA + NUMBER + VERB		
1. ISU GA chairs	FUTATSU two	ARIMASU. there are

NUMBER + NO + SUBJECT GA + VERB		
2. FUTATSU NO two	ISU GA chairs	ARIMASU. there are

Generally, all modifiers (adverbs, adjectives, or relative clauses) precede the word they modify. However, example 1 above is the only instance in which a modifier (numeral classifier) follows the word it modifies.

In the above example 2, *futatsu*, a noun, is made into an adjective modifier by the use of *no* between *futatsu* and *isu*

(both nouns).

IMASU: Imasu as opposed to arimasu denotes existence of ANIMATE (living) OBJECTS ONLY. Other rules pertaining to arimasu apply to imasu as well (refer to p. 61).

MIEMASU: Miemasu, a polite form for mieru, means "can be seen," "can see," or "be visible." Bear in mind that miemasu always takes the postposition ga and not o for the object "seen."

1. Gakkoo ga miemasu. A school is visible.
2. Fujisan ga mieru. Mt. Fuji is visible.

ATSUKUTE KUROI HON: When two true adjectives modify the same noun (big black dog, large expensive car, etc.), the first adjective is changed to the "kute" form.

This form of adjectives is made by adding te, after first converting the true adjectives into adverbial form:

True Adjective Adverbial Form "Te" Form

1. akai	akaku	akaku—te
2. shiroi	shiroku	shiroku—te
3. furui	furuku	furuku—te
4. ookii	ookiku	ookiku—te

"Kute" adjectives are translated ". and." Hence, furukute ookii is "old AND large. ."

**NEGATIVE OF AN ADJECTIVE:** In Chapter 1 we learned to negate a statement concerning nouns:

Hon desu. Hon dewa arimasen.

To make a negative of a true adjective:

Akai desu. Akaku (wa) arimasen.

Ookii desu. Ookiku (wa) arimasen.

**Rule:** Use the adverbial form (see above) of a true adjective plus wa arimasen (wa is optional).

**Affirmative**

**Negative**

Kore wa kooen desu.

Kore wa kooen dewa arimasen.

Kooen ga arimasu.

Kooen ga arimasen.

Kono kooen wa ookii desu.

Kono kooen wa ookiku (wa) arimasen.

Kono gakkoo wa chiisai desu.

Kono gakkoo wa chiisaku (wa) arimasen.

Sore wa shiroi desu.

Sore wa shiroku (wa) arimasen.

**SHIKA PLUS NEGATIVE VERB:** Shika meaning "only" is always used with the negative verb, and the negative verb becomes positive in meaning. Shika is used directly after the word it limits, and replaces the postposition.

1. Issatsu no hon shika arimasen.

one book only there is

(There is only one book.)

2. Issatsu no hon shika miemasen.

one book only can see

(I can see only one book.)

3. Ano kata wa Nihongo shika  
hanasihimasen.

he Japanese only speak

ss (He speaks only Japanese.)

### Fluency Drill

Empitsu ga arimasu.

Nagai empitsu ga arimasu.

Nagai empitsu ga ippon arimasu.

Koko ni nagakute kuroi empitsu ga ippon arimasu.

Tsukue no ue ni nagakute kuroi empitsu ga ippon arimasu.

Tsukue no ue ni akai empitsu to kuroi pen ga arimasu.

Tsukue no ue ni akai empitsu to nagakute kuroi pen ga arimasu.

There is a pencil.

There is a long pencil.

There is one long pencil.

There is one long black pencil here.

There is one long black pencil on the desk.

There are a red pencil and a black pen on the desk.

There are a red pencil and a long black pen on the desk.

### Substitution Drill

I. KONO HON WA  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{(Adverb)} \\ \text{OOKIKU} \\ \text{TAKAKU} \\ \text{ATSUKU} \\ \text{etc.} \end{array} \right\}$  WA ARIMASEN

II.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{(Noun)} \\ \text{HON GA} \\ \text{ISU GA} \\ \text{EMPITSU GA} \\ \text{KAMI (paper) GA} \end{array} \right\} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{(Numeral Classifier)} \\ \text{ISSATSU} \\ \text{FUTATSU} \\ \text{SAMBON} \\ \text{GO-MAI} \end{array} \right\} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ARIMASU} \\ \text{SHIKA ARIMASEN.} \end{array} \right\}$

## Exercises

1. There is a book. Hon ga arimasu.
2. There is a Japanese book. Nihongo no hon ga arimasu.
3. There is one Japanese book. Nihongo no hon ga issatsu arimasu.
4. There are 3 chairs. Isu ga mittsu arimasu.
5. There are 6 sheets of paper. Kami ga roku-mai arimasu.
6. There are 2 students. Gakusei ga futari imasu.
7. There are 4 motorcycles. Ootobai ga yon-dai arimasu.
8. There is one Japanese book. Tsukue no ue ni Nihongo no hon ga issatsu arimasu.
9. There are 3 chairs in the room. Heya no naka ni isu ga mittsu arimasu.
10. There are 6 sheets of paper in the bag. Kaban no naka ni kami ga roku-mai arimasu.
11. There are 2 students in the car. Jidoosha no naka ni gakusei ga futari imasu.
12. There are 4 motorcycles in front of the high school. Kootoogakkoo no mae ni ootobai ga yon-dai arimasu.
13. This book is new. Kono hon wa atarashii desu.
14. This book is not new. Kono hon wa atarashiku arimasen.



- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 15. That dictionary is thick.                  | Sono jibiki wa atsui desu.                           |
| 16. That dictionary is not thick.              | Sono jibiki wa atsuku arimasen.                      |
| 17. My pen is new.                             | Watakushi no pen wa atarashii desu.                  |
| 18. My pen is not new.                         | Watakushi no pen wa atarashiku arimasen.             |
| 19. I can see only one car.                    | Jidoosha ga ichi-dai shika miemasen.                 |
| 20. There is only one pair of shoes.           | Kutsu ga issoku shika arimasen.                      |
| 21. There are only 2 dictionaries on the desk. | 2 Tsukue no ue ni jibiki ga ni-satsu shika arimasen. |
| 22. Only 2 students are standing.              | Gakusei ga futari shika tatte imasen.                |
| 23. He reads only magazines.                   | Ano kata wa zasshi shika yomimasen.                  |
| 24. I have only five dollars.                  | Go doru shika motte imasen.                          |
| 25. I have only one car.                       | Jidoosha wa ichi-dai shika motte imasen.             |

Translate into Japanese:

1. There are three chairs and one desk in this classroom.
2. There are six letters and two pencils in the desk.
3. There are three pencils and six papers in the box.

Note: Hitotsu, futatsu, etc. (Japanese numerals), can be used in counting objects that have no specific shapes or forms, and also when the classifier is unknown or forgotten. However,

this is never used to count time, money, distance, weight, or living things.

4. What can you see on the desk? I can see one pencil and one pen on the desk.

Note: A sentence with a "can see" construction should be interpreted as "What is visible?" Therefore, this sentence must be rephrased as: "As for you (wa), what (ga) on the desk (ni) is visible?"

5. What kind of book can you see?

6. I can see only one English book.

7. He can see only four teachers in the classroom.

8. One book is a thick, black dictionary.

9. His pen is old and black.

10. Two magazines are thin and old.

11. This thick book is not blue.

12. This magazine is not old.

13. There is only one desk in this room.

14. There are only five students in my Japanese language class.

15. An English teacher is sitting in front of the room.

Answer in Japanese:

1. Kono kyooshitsu ni nani to nani ga arimasu ka.
2. Koko ni gakusei ga nan-nin imasu ka.
3. Kono kyooshitsu ni seito ga imasu ka. Nan-nin imasu ka.
4. Kono heya no naka ni ookikute kuroi jibiki ga arimasu ka.
5. Kono kyooshitsu no mae ni gakusei ga hitori tatte imasu ka.
6. Anata wa tsukue no ue ni issatsu no hon ga miemasu ka.
7. Anata no futatsu no kaban wa furui desu ka.
8. Kono heya ni Nihongo no seito ga san-nin imasu ka.
9. Koko ni mittsu no mado ga arimasu ka.
10. Kono heya no naka ni Nihongo no seito ga imasu ka.
11. Anata no migi ni sensei ga koshikakete imasu ka.
12. Webster no jibiki wa chiisakute usui desu ka.
13. Anata no pen wa shatsu (shirt) no poketto no naka ni arimasu ka. Doko ni arimasu ka.
14. Anata wa Fujisan ga miemasu ka.
15. Anata no saifu no naka ni Nihon no okane (money) ga arimasu ka. Saifu wa doko ni arimasu ka.

Give the negative of the following and translate:

1. Kono daigaku wa ookii desu.
2. Kore wa gakkoo desu.
3. Anata no kaban wa atarashii desu.
4. Kono hon wa watakushi no desu.
5. Hai, soo desu.
6. Brown-san wa shimbun o katte imasu.
7. Ano kata wa Nihongo o hanashite imasu.
8. Soko ni isu ga futatsu arimasu.
9. Gakusei ga hitori imasu.
10. Kono chuugakkoo wa chiisai desu.
11. Watakushi wa Fujisan ga miemasu.

#### Useful Expressions

##### At the Dinner Table (Shokutaku de)

1. Host DOOZO TAKUSAN MESHIAGATTE KUDASAI.  
would In persuading the guest to begin the meal, it means  
say: "Please eat a lot."
2. Guest ITADAKIMASU. This is a term used when  
would beginning the meal. It has the meaning of "I am  
say: most grateful to receive this food."

3. Host: MOO SUKOSHIKAGA DESU KA. Host, upon seeing that his guest is about ready for a refill on rice, saké, etc., would ask, "How about a refill (or a little more)?"
4. Guest: MOO KEKKOO DESU. When the host offers you another bowl of rice, saké, etc., and you wish to decline, it means, "I have had sufficient."
5. Guest: TAIHEN OISHIKATTA DESU. "(The meal) was certainly good."  
and/or  
GO-CHISOOSAMA DESHITA. "It certainly was a sumptuous (delicious) meal!" An expression used when you finish eating, or when you are about to depart from a host's place after a meal.
6. Host: O-SOMATSUSAMA DESHITA. When the guest says GO-CHISOOSAMA DESHITA, the host replies, "It wasn't much."

# CHAPTER 7

## RYOKOO—TRAVEL

"A" WA + "B" YORI + ADJ.	=	larger than smaller " more " etc.	} (comparative degree)
"A" WA + ICHIBAN + ADJ.	=	largest smallest most etc.	

RYUGAKUSEI TO SHASHOO

A FOREIGN STUDENT AND A CONDUCTOR

R: KOKO WA DOKO DESU KA.

WHERE IS THIS?

S: KOKO WA TOKYO O EKI  
DESU.

THIS IS TOKYO STATION.

R: TOKYO WA TAIHEN  
OOKII TOKAI DESU NE.

TOKYO IS A VERY LARGE  
CITY, ISN'T IT?

S: HAI, TOKYO WA TAI-  
HEN OOKII TOKAI DESU.

YES, TOKYO IS A VERY LARGE  
CITY.

Tokyo to Osaka dewa  
dochira ga  
ookii desu ka

between Tokyo and Osaka  
which  
is large(r)

R: TOKYO TO OOSAKA

BETWEEN TOKYO AND

DEWA DOCHIRA GA OOKII  
DESU KA.

Tookeyoo no hoo ga  
ookii desu

S: TOOKYOO NO HOO GA  
OOKII DESU.

ichiban ookii  
ichiban ookii tokai

TOOKYOO WA ICHIBAN  
OOKII TOKAI DESU.

R: YOI HOTERU NO NAMAÉ  
O OSHIETE KUDASAI.

ichiban yoi  
ichiban yoi hoteru

S: TEIKOKU HOTERU WA  
ICHIBAN YOI HOTERU  
DESU.

R: TEIKOKU HOTERU WA  
DOKO NI ARIMASU KA.

S: KOOEN NO MAE NI ARI-  
MASU.

Teikoku hoteru no hoo ga  
chikai desu

TEIKOKU HOTERU NO  
HOO GA CHIKAI DESU.

OSAKA, WHICH IS LARGER?

the side of Tokyo (comparative)  
is large(r)

TOKYO IS LARGER.

largest  
largest city

TOKYO IS THE LARGEST  
CITY.

PLEASE TELL ME THE NAMES  
OF GOOD HOTELS.

best  
best hotel

IMPERIAL HOTEL IS THE  
BEST HOTEL.

WHERE IS THE IMPERIAL  
HOTEL?

IT IS IN FRONT OF THE PARK.

the side of the Imperial Hotel  
(comparative)  
is near(er)

THE IMPERIAL HOTEL IS  
CLOSER.

keredomo  
kono hoteru no  
ryookin wa  
\*kono hoteru no ryookin wa...  
Tokyuu hoteru yori  
takai desu

KEREDOMO KONO HO-  
TERU NO RYOOKIN WA  
TOKYUU HOTERU NO  
YORI TAKAI DESU.

Teikoku hoteru niwa  
yooshiki no heya ga  
arimasu ka

R: TEIKOKU HOTERU NIWA  
YOOSHIKI NO HEYA GA  
ARIMASU KA.  
S: HAI, YOOSHIKI NO HEYA  
MO NIHONSHIKI NO  
HEYA MO ARIMASU.

yooshiki to  
Nihonshiki no heya dewa  
dochira ga  
takai desu ka

R: YOOSHIKI TO NIHON-  
SHIKI NO HEYA DEWA,

however  
this hotel's (poss. case)  
rate (nom. case)  
\*As for this hotel's (room) rate...  
than the Tokyu Hotel  
is (more) expensive

HOWEVER, THIS HOTEL'S  
(ROOM) RATE IS MORE EXPEN-  
SIVE THAN TOKYU HOTEL.

at (the) Imperial Hotel  
as for Western-style rooms  
are there?

ARE THERE WESTERN-STYLE  
ROOMS AT THE IMPERIAL  
HOTEL?

YES, THERE ARE BOTH WEST-  
ERN-STYLE AND JAPANESE-  
STYLE ROOMS.

Western-style and  
Japanese-style rooms (between)  
which  
is (more) expensive

BETWEEN WESTERN-STYLE  
AND JAPANESE-STYLE

\* Note the usage of asterisks here to indicate the composite of phrases which preceded them.



<u>DOCHIRA GA TAKAI DESU</u> KA.	ROOMS, WHICH IS MORE EXPENSIVE?
yooshiki no heya wa Nihonshiki no heya yori takai desu	as for the Western-style room (nom. case) than the Japanese-style room is (more) expensive
8: <u>YOOSHIKI NO HEYA WA</u> <u>NIHONSHIKI NO HEYA</u> <u>YORI TAKAI DESU.</u>	THE WESTERN-STYLE ROOMS ARE MORE EXPENSIVE THAN THE JAPANESE-STYLE ROOMS.
watakushi wa yooshiki no heya ga suki desu	as for me Western-style room is likeable
R: <u>WATAKUSHI WA YOOSHI-</u> <u>KI NO HEYA GA SUKI</u> <u>DESU.</u> ANATA WA DOCHI- <u>RA GA SUKI DESU KA.</u>	I LIKE WESTERN-STYLE ROOMS. WHICH DO YOU LIKE (BET- TER)?
Nihonshiki no heya Nihonshiki no heya no hoo ga suki desu	Japanese-style room the side of the Japanese-style room (comparative) (I) like
8: <u>WATAKUSHI WA NIHON-</u> <u>SHIKI NO HEYA NO HOO</u> <u>GA SUKI DESU.</u>	I LIKE JAPANESE-STYLE ROOMS BETTER.

## Vocabulary List from the Lesson

ryuugakusei	
(ryuu-ga-ku-se-i)	(n.) a student studying abroad
namae (na-ma-e)	(n.) name
eki (é-ki)	(n.) railroad station
taihen (ta-i-hen)	very
tokai	(n.) city, a metropolis
desu ne	isn't it?
dewa	compound postposition. Used in comparison, it means "between" when comparing two, or more, objects.

dochira (dó-chi-ra)	(inter, pro.) which (of two); dore means "which" (of several)
(A) mo.	. both (A) and (B). (See I.C. & G.N.)
(B) mo	
hoo	(n.) the direction, the side
. no hoo ga	When combined with an adjective, it gives the comparative degree of the adjective.
no hoo ga	bigger, larger (See I.C. & G.N.)
ookii	
Oosaka no hoo	Osaka is larger (literally, "the side of Osaka ga ookii desu is large")
kooen	(n.) park
ichiban (i-chi-ban)	(n.) Number one, the first. When this word is combined with an adjective, the superlative degree of the adjective is obtained.
ichiban ookii	(adj.) largest
ichiban ookii	the largest city
tokai	
yoi (yó-i)	(adj.) good
ryookin	(n.) rate, fare
hoteru	(n.) hotel
oshieru (o-shi-e-ru)	(v.t.) to teach (n.c.v.)
oshiete	("te" form of oshieru)
oshiete kudasai	Please teach (me). At times it means "Please tell (me)," in the sense of "Please inform me."
keredomo (ke-re-do-mo)	(conj.) however

Teikoku hoteru	(n.) the Imperial Hotel
yooshiki	(n.) western style; shiki is a suffix which
(yoo-shi-ki)	has a meaning of "style," "model."
Nihonshiki	(n.) Japanese style
takai (ta-ka-i)	(adj.) high (in elevation); or high (in price), expensive
yorì (yo-ri)	"than." When combined with an adjective, it gives the comparative degree of the adjective.
yorì takai	more expensive than .
suki desu	(v.) (I) like. Use the postposition "ga" after the object that is liked: obj. ga suki desu.

### Additional Vocabulary

dotchi	(inter, pro.) same as dochira
(dót-chi)	
ii	(adj.) same as yoi
kirai desu	(v.) (I) dislike, do not like: obj. ga kirai desu. Hoteru ga kirai desu.
motto	more
(mót-to)	
motto yoi	better
dono (dó-no)	(inter, adj. pro.) which? Must be followed by a noun: dono hon—which book?; dono heya—which room?
yorì mo	same as yorì
kono	naka among these, which (of several)?
(uchi)	de
(wa),	dore
ga..	

sono naka among those, which (of several)?  
(uchi) de  
(wa), dore ga.

ano hon no among those books  
naka (uchi) de  
(wa)..

sekai (n.) the world  
sekai de (wa) in the world (when comparing things)

kanemochi (n.) a rich man  
Amerika de (n.) in the U.S.A. (when comparing)  
(wa)  
(A-me-ri-ka)

shuu (n.) state  
tatemono (n.) building (same as biru)  
(ta-té-mo-no)

toshiyori (n.) old, used only when referring to aged  
(to-shi-yo-ri) animals, people: toshiyori no sensei. Furia is  
used for old things: furui zasshi.

### Important Construction and Grammar Notes

COMPARING TWO OBJECTS: Let us say that there are two objects, and we wish to know which of the two is bigger, smaller, older, prettier, etc. How do we ask the question in Japanese? Remember the following patterns:

2 THINGS BEING COMPARED	+ DE(WA) (TO)	+ DOCHIRA GA (DOTCHI)	+ ADJ. NOUN + DESU KA
----------------------------	------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------

- |                          |        |            |         |
|--------------------------|--------|------------|---------|
| 1. Hon to empitsu        | de(wa) | dochira ga | takai   |
| 2. Tookyoo to Oosaka     |        |            | ookii   |
| 3. Kimi to boku          |        |            | chiisai |
| 4. Kono biru to ano biru |        |            | furui   |

After the objects being compared, de(wa) or to is used to give the meaning of "between these things being compared." Note that this usage of to is different from the conjunctive to (and), where two nouns are connected.

ANSWER: How do we answer the questions above? We may wish to say:

1. The book is more expensive.

2. Tokyo is larger.

3. I am smaller. —or—

1. The book is more expensive than the pencil.

2. Tokyo is larger than Osaka.

3. I am smaller than you.

WHEN ONLY ONE OBJECT IS MENTIONED in our answer, we say:

1. Hon no hoo ga takai desu. (lit., "book's side is expensive")

2. Tookyoo no hoo ga ookii desu.

3. Boku no hoo ga chiisai desu.

WHEN BOTH OBJECTS ARE MENTIONED: Yori (more than) is used after the thing being compared. Note the

analysis of the following sentence, especially the word order.  
In answer to the question:

Tookyoo to Oosaka dewa (to) dotchi ga ookii desu  
ka.

Tookyoo wa Oosaka yori ookii desu.

Tookyoo wa—as for Tokyo (the subject)

Oosaka yori—than Osaka (the object being  
compared)

ookii desu—is large

(lit., As for Tokyo/than Osaka/is large; Tokyo is  
larger than Osaka.)

1. Hon wa empitsu yori takai desu.

or:

Hon no hoo ga empitsu yori takai desu. (lit., book's  
side/than pencil/is expensive)

2. Tookyoo wa Oosaka yori ookii desu.

or:

Tookyoo no hoo ga Oosaka yori ookii desu.

3. Boku wa kimi yori chiisai desu.

or:

Boku no hoo ga kimi yori chiisai desu.

WHEN THERE ARE MORE THAN TWO OBJECTS and we wish to know which one is the biggest, smallest, oldest, prettiest, etc., how do we ask the question in Japanese? The Superlative Form is expressed as follows:

1. A to B to C dewa (or to) dore ga ichiban ookii desu ka.

(Among A, B and C, which one is the largest?)

2. Kono hon no naka dewa dono hon ga ichiban furui desu ka.

(Among these books, which book is the oldest?)

3. Sekai dewa dare ga ichiban kanemochi desu ka.

(Who is the richest man in the world?)

4. Amerika dewa dono shuu ga ichiban ookii desu ka.

(In America, which state is the largest?)

Note: In the examples 2, 3, and 4 above, dewa has the meaning of "of all the books being compared. .," "of all the rich men in the world .," "of all the states in America. .." In these instances, to CANNOT be substituted for dewa.

ANSWERS:

1. A to B to C dewa, A ga ichiban ookii desu.

(Among A, B and C, A is the largest.)

2. Kono naka dewa, kono aoi hon ga ichiban furui desu.

(Among these, this blue book is the oldest.)

3. Sekai dewa John D. Vanderbilt ga ichiban kanemochi desu.

(John D. Vanderbilt is the richest man in the world.)

4. America dewa Alaska ga ichiban ookii shuu desu.

(In the United States, Alaska is the largest state.)

SUMMARY: In comparing, when one, two, or more than two objects are mentioned, the following forms are used:

One Object (... NO HOO GA ...)	Two Objects (... WA ... YORI ...)	More than Two Objects (... DE(WA) ... ICHIBAN ...)
1. Ito-san no hoo ga kanemochi desu.	Ito-san wa Brown-san yori kanemochi desu.	Kono machi (town) dewa Ito-san ga ichiban kanemochi desu.
2. Kono biru no hoo ga takai desu.	Kono biru wa ano hoteru yori takai desu.	Tookyoo dewa kono biru ga ichiban takai desu.
3. Kono empitsu no hoo ga nagai desu.	Kono empitsu wa sono pen yori nagai desu.	Sono naka dewa empitsu ga ichiban nagai desu.

(A) MO. (B) MO+POSITIVE VERB: This construction is used to indicate that "both A and B are. .," or "A as well as B .."

1. Doyoobi mo Nichiyooobi mo(I) will work on both  
hatarakimasu. Saturday and Sunday.



2. Ano ryuugakusei wa Nihongo That foreign student speaks  
mo Eigo mo hanashimasu. both Japanese and English.

(A) MO. (B) MO+NEGATIVE VERB: Used with a  
negative verb, this means "neither A nor B."

1. Watakushi no heya niwa rajio There is neither a radio nor a  
mo terebi mo arimasen. television in my room.

2. Watakushi no inu wa niku mo My dog eats neither meat  
sakana mo tabemasen. nor fish.

SUKI DESU AND KIRAI DESU: Associate ga with suki  
desu and kirai desu:

1. Boku wa kono gakkoo ga suki desu.

2. Boku wa kono hon ga kirai desu.

When you "like" or "dislike" something very much, use  
daisuki and daikirai.

1. Aisu kuriimu (ice cream) ga daisuki desu.

2. Watakushi wa ano kata ga daikirai desu.

Fluency Drill

Ookii desu.

Gakkoo wa ookii desu.

Watakushi no gakkoo wa ookii desu.

Watakushi no gakkoo wa anata no gakkoo yori ookii desu.  
 Tanaka-san no gakkoo wa motto ookii desu.  
 Tanaka-san no gakkoo wa ichiban ookii desu.  
 Tanaka-san no gakkoo wa Nihon de ichiban ookii desu.

(It) is large.

The school is large.

My school is large.

My school is larger than your school.

Tanaka's school is larger.

Tanaka's school is largest.

Tanaka's school is the largest in Japan.

### Substitution Drill

- |                            |  |       |
|----------------------------|--|-------|
| I. WATAKUSHI WA ANATA YORI | $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{(Adj. or noun)} \\ \text{OOKII} \\ \text{CHIIISAI} \\ \text{KANEMOCHI} \\ \text{etc.} \end{array} \right\}$ | DESU. |
| II. WATAKUSHI NO HOO GA    | $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{(Adj. or noun)} \\ \text{OOKII} \\ \text{CHIIISAI} \\ \text{KANEMOCHI} \\ \text{etc.} \end{array} \right\}$ | DESU. |
| III. WATAKUSHI WA ICHIBAN  | $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{(Adj. or noun)} \\ \text{OOKII} \\ \text{CHIIISAI} \\ \text{KANEMOCHI} \\ \text{etc.} \end{array} \right\}$ | DESU. |

### Exercises

1. The U.S. is larger than Amerika wa Nihon yori ookii  
Japan. desu.
2. A taxi is faster than a Takushii wa basu yori hayai  
bus. desu.

3. My room is more expensive than yours. Watakushi no heya wa anata no yori takai desu.
4. My pen is newer than John's. Watakushi no pen wa John no yori atarashii desu.
5. Your school is older than mine. Anata no gakkoo wa watakushi no yori furui desu.
6. The U.S. is larger. Amerika no hoo ga ookii desu.
7. A taxi is faster. Takushii no hoo ga hayai desu.
8. My pen is newer. Watakushi no pen no hoo ga atara-shii desu.
9. My room is more expensive. Watakushi no heya no hoo ga takai desu.
10. Your school is older. Anata no gakkoo no hoo ga furui desu.
11. I like the airplane more. Hikooki no hoo ga suki desu.
12. I like hotels better. Hoteru no hoo ga suki desu.
13. I like big schools more. Ookii gakkoo no hoo ga suki desu.
14. I like small dictionaries more. Chiisai jibiki no hoo ga suki desu.
15. This hotel is the cheapest. Kono hoteru wa ichiban yasui desu.
16. That house is the newest. Ano ie wa ichiban atarashii desu.
17. This university is the largest. Kono daigaku wa ichiban ookii desu.
18. The plane is the fastest. Hikooki wa ichiban hayai desu.
19. This room is the most expensive in the hotel. Kono heya wa kono hoteru de ichiban takai desu.
20. This building is the tallest in Tokyo. Kono biru wa Tookyoo de ichiban takai desu.

21. I am the oldest in the Watakushi wa kurasu de ichiban class. toshiue desu.
  22. Both your room and Anata no heya mo watakushi no mine are expensive. heya mo takai desu.
  23. Both this and that are Kore mo sore mo watakushi no mine. desu.
  24. Both Mr. Tanaka and Tanaka-san mo Brown-san mo Mr. Brown are teachers. sensei desu.
  25. I like both Japanese and Nihonshiki no heya mo yooshiki Western style rooms. no heya mo suki desu.
  26. Neither your room nor Anata no heya mo watakushi no mine is expensive. heya mo takaku arimasen.
  27. Neither this nor that is Kore mo sore mo watakushi no mine. dewa arimasen.
  28. Neither Mr. Tanaka nor Tanaka-san mo Brown-san mo Mr. Brown is a teacher. sensei dewa arimasen.
  29. I like neither this nor Kore mo sore mo kirai desu. that.
  30. Neither your room nor Anata no heya nimo watakushi my room has a T.V. no heya nimo terebi ga arimasen.
- Note: NI. ARIMASU pattern is used here to express "have" as was explained on page 80.

Translate into Japanese:

1. Mt. Fuji is the highest mountain (yama) in Japan.
2. What is the name of your school?
3. Between A and B, which is larger?

Note: For A and B, substitute some nouns: chair, desk, pencil, room, etc. For example, between A (the chair) and B (the desk), which is larger?

4. A Buick is more expensive than a Ford.
5. A Cadillac is the most expensive.
6. 50 is larger than 15.
7. Please tell me (teach me) the name of your Spanish teacher.
8. Is that big white house larger than this old building? No, the building is smaller than the house.
9. What kind of books do you like best?
10. Is America larger than Japan? Yes, America is larger.

Note: When translating into Japanese, learn to analyze a sentence by grouping words together with proper postpositions. For example, in translating sentence 1 above, analyze as follows:

Mt. Fuji is the highest mountain in Japan.

- a. Subject (wa)    predicate (desu)                      comparison  
(dewa)
- b. Fujisan (wa)    ichiban takai yama (desu)    Nihon (dewa).
- c. Fujisan wa        Nihon dewa                      ichiban takai  
yama desu.

Answer in Japanese:

1. Nihon dewa dono tokai ga ichiban ookii desu ka.
2. New York dewa dono gakkoo ga ichiban ookii desu ka.
3. California to Illinois to Florida dewa anata wa dono shuu ga ichiban suki desu ka.
4. Anata no gakkoo wa Beikoku de ichiban ookii gakkoo desu ka.
5. Beikoku de ichiban yoi gakkoo desu ka.
6. Anata wa Doyoobi mo Nichiyooobi mo gakkoo e ikimasu ka.
7. Sekai de ichiban takai tatemono wa doko ni arimasu ka.  
  
Note: Sekai de ichiban takai modifies tatemono ("in the world-highest-building" is the literal translation, or: "the highest building in the world").
8. New York to Tookyoo dewa dochira ga ookii desu ka.
9. Anata wa Rockefeller-san yori kanemochi desu ka.
10. Nihonshiki no heya to yooshiki no heya dewa, anata wa dochira ga suki desu ka.
11. Texas-shuu to Maryland-shuu dewa dochira ga ookii desu ka.

12. Amerika de ichiban chiisai shuu no namae o oshiete kudasai.

13. Nihon de ichiban takai yama no namae wa nan desu ka.

14. Fujisan wa sekai de ichiban takai yama desu ka.

15. Sekai no tokai no naka de dono tokai ga ichiban suki desu ka.

Make appropriate questions in Japanese to fit the answers:

1. Tookyoo no hoo ga ookii desu.

2. Tookyoo wa ichiban ookii desu.

3. Teikoku Hoteru wa kooen no chikaku ni arimasu.

4. Watakushi wa hon o yonde imasu.

5. Watakushi wa Kyooto ga ichiban suki desu.

6. Kono hon no naka de kore ga ichiban takai desu.

7. Kono tsukue no ue ni zasshi mo shimbun mo arimasen.

8. Sono hoteru wa ookikute takai desu.

9. Anata no kaban wa heya no naka ni arimasu.

10. Kono hoteru niwa yooshiki no heya ga mittsu shika arimasen.

Useful Expressions  
Telephone (Denica)

KOOSHUU DENWA WA DOKO NI Where is the public  
ARIMASU KA. telephone?

TANAKA-SAN NO DENWA What is Mr. Tanaka's  
BANGOO WA NAMBAN DESU telephone number?  
KA.

DENWA RYOOKIN WA IKURA What is the telephone  
DESU KA. charge?

MOSHI, MOSHI Hello, I say

TANAKA-SAN NO OTAKU DESU Is this Mr. Tanaka's  
KA. residence?

WATAKUSHI WA BROWN DESU. This is Brown.

TANAKA-SAN O CHOTTO Please call Mr.  
YONDE KUDASAI. Tanaka (to the phone).

SUPPLEMENT VI

In Reference to Various Time Units



Time Units	Past		Present		Future	
	Before Last	Last	New (This)	Next	After Next	Every
Year	hadi-san (2 years ago)	kyo-san (last year)	ko-toki (this year)	mi-san (next year)	sei-san (year after next)	mi-toki mi-san (every year)
Month	san-nagatsu San-toki san (2 months ago)	san-gatsu (last month)	ko-gatsu ko-toki (this month)	mi-gatsu (next month)	sei-gatsu (month after next)	mi-gatsu mi-toki (every month)
Week	mi-yokushu san (2 weeks ago)	san-shu (last week)	ko-shu (this week)	mi-shu (next week)	sei-shu (week after next)	mi-shu (every week)
Time	kozo shi (the other day)		ima (now)	ondo (next time)		mi-do (every time)
Day	hadi-jin oishi (day before yesterday)	mi-to-jin kono (yesterday)	ko-shi kyo (today)	mi-to-shi san, shin (tomorrow)	mi-yo-shi san (day after tomorrow)	mi-shi (every day)
Morning	oishi no san (morning before last)	hadi no san (yesterday morning)	ima (this morning)	mi no san (tomorrow morning)	sei no san (morning after next)	mi-san (every morning)
Night	oishi no san (night before last)	mi-to-san yuki (last night)	ko-san (tonight)	mi-to-san san no san (tomorrow night)	sei no san (night after tomorrow)	mi-san (every night)
Hour	mi-jin san (2 hours ago)	san no jin (last hour)	ko-jin (this hour)	mi-jin (next hour)	sei-jin (hour after next)	mi-jin (every hour)

Note: In working with this chart, start with the PRESENT and go to the Past or Future.

## SUPPLEMENT VII

### Designating an Indefinite Number of Units with "Suu"

(*Suu* is a Chinese word meaning "a few" or "several." Therefore, *suunen* means "several years"; *suukagetsu* means "several months," etc.)

Time Units	Ago	Hence
<b>Year</b>	mas <sup>1</sup> suunen zen	sto suunen go nochi
<b>Month</b>	mas <sup>2</sup> suukagetsu zen	sto suukagetsu go nochi
<b>Week</b>	mas <sup>3</sup> suushuukan zen	sto <sup>4</sup> suushuukan go nochi
<b>Day</b>	suujitsu mas	sto <sup>5</sup> suujitsu go nochi
<b>Morning</b>	suujitsu mas no asa	sto <sup>6</sup> suujitsu go nochi no asa
<b>Night</b>	suujitsu mas <sup>7</sup> no ban	sto suujitsu go nochi no ban
<b>Hour</b>	suujikan mas <sup>8</sup>	sto <sup>9</sup> suujikan go nochi

1. Several years ago
2. Several months ago
3. Several weeks ago
4. Several weeks later
5. Several days later

6. Several mornings later
7. Several evenings ago
8. Several hours ago
9. Several hours later

# CHAPTER 8

## KEMBUTSU—SIGHTSEEING

<b>2nd BASE of the VERB + TAI</b>	= WANT TO . . . ( <i>Desiderative</i> )
<b>2nd BASE of the VERB + NASAI</b>	= POLITE IMPERATIVE
<b>INSTRUMENT + DE</b>	= BY MEANS OF . . . WITH . . .
<b>PLACE + E</b>	= IN THAT DIRECTION TOWARD . . .

### KEMBUTSUNIN TO JUNSA

Tookyuu hoteru e  
ikitai desu

K: WATAKUSHI WA TOO-  
KYUU HOTELU E IKITAI  
DESU.

CHIKATETSU TO DENSHA  
DEWA DOCHIRA GA  
HAYAI DESU KA.

J: TOOKYUU HOTELU WA  
TOOKU ARIMASEN.

### A SIGHTSEER AND A POLICEMAN

to (the) Tokyu Hotel  
went to go

I WANT TO GO TO THE TO-  
KYU HOTEL.

BETWEEN THE SUBWAY AND  
THE STREETCAR, WHICH IS  
FASTER?

THE TOKYU HOTEL IS NOT  
FAR.

denaha de  
ikinasai

DENSHA DE IKINASAI.

K: KONO KADO NI DENSHA  
GA TOMARIMASU KA.

J: DENSHA WA KONO KADO  
NIWA TOMARIMASEN.

tsugi  
tsugi no kado  
tsugi no kado e

TSUGI NO KADO E IKINA-  
SAI.

by (means of) streetcar  
go

GO BY STREETCAR.

DOES THE STREETCAR STOP  
AT THIS CORNER?

THE STREETCAR DOES NOT  
STOP ON THIS CORNER.

next  
next corner  
to (the) next corner.

GO TO THE NEXT CORNER.

KIMBUTSUNIN TO SHABROO

K: MOSHI, MOSHI. KONO  
DENSHA WA TOOKYUU  
HOTERU E IKIMASU KA.

S: KONO DENSHA WA SOKO  
E IKIMASEN. TSUGI NO  
DENSHA GA IKIMASU.

denaha no kippu o  
kaitei

K: DENSHA NO KIPPU O  
KAITAI DESU.

A SIGHTSEER AND A CONDUCTOR

HELLO (SAY, IF YOU PLEASE)  
DOES THIS STREETCAR GO  
TO THE TOKYU HOTEL?

THIS STREETCAR DOES NOT  
GO THERE. THE NEXT  
STREETCAR WILL GO.

streetcar ticket (obj. case)  
want to buy

I WANT TO BUY A STREET-  
CAR TICKET.

Tookyuu hoteru made  
sanjuu en desu

to Tokyu hotel  
is thirty yen

S: TOOKYUU HOTERU MADE  
SANJUU EN DESU.

IT IS THIRTY YEN TO THE  
TOKYU HOTEL.

Aoyama-yuki  
Aoyama-yuki no densha  
ni norinasai

Aoyama-bound  
the Aoyama-bound streetcar  
get on

AOYAMA-YUKI NO DEN-  
SHA NI NORINASAI.

GET ON (or TAKE) THE AO-  
YAMA-BOUND STREETCAR.

densha no  
teiryuujo wa  
\*densha no teiryuujo wa . . .  
tsugi no  
kado  
\*tsugi no kado ni . . .

streetcar (quasi adj.)  
station (nom. case)  
\*as for the streetcar stop . . .  
next (quasi adj.)  
corner  
\*at the next corner . . .

DENSHA NO TEIRYUUJO  
WA TSUGI NO KADO NI  
ARIMASU.

THE STREETCAR STOP IS AT  
THE NEXT CORNER.

ON THE AOYAMA-BOUND STREETCAR

K: SHASHOO-SAN, KONO  
DENSHA WA TOOKYUU  
HOTERU E IKIMASU KA.

(MR.) CONDUCTOR, DOES  
THIS STREETCAR GO TO THE  
TOKYU HOTEL?

S: HAI, HOTERU E IKIMASU.

YES, THIS GOES TO THE  
HOTEL.

\* Reminder: these asterisks are used to indicate the composite of phrases which preceded them.

Tookyuu hoteru made  
nampun  
kakarimasu ka

as far as (the) Tokyu Hotel  
how many minutes  
will it take

K: TOOKYUU HOTERU MADE  
NAMPUN KAKARIMASU  
KA.

HOW MANY MINUTES WILL  
IT TAKE TO THE TOKYU  
HOTEL?

watakushi wa  
hayaku  
hayaku ikitai

I (nom. case)  
quickly  
want to go quickly

WATAKUSHI WA HAYAKU  
IKITAI DESU.

I WANT TO GO QUICKLY.

S: HOTERU WA CHIKAI  
DESU.

THE HOTEL IS NEAR.

JIPPUN SHIKA KAKARIMA-  
SEN.

IT TAKES ONLY TEN MIN-  
UTES.

KONO DENSHADOORI NO  
MIGI NI ARIMASU.

IT IS ON THE RIGHT OF THIS  
STREETCAR LINE.

hoteru wa  
ookikute  
atarashii tatemono

the hotel  
big (and)  
new building.

HOTERU WA OOKIKUTE  
ATARASHII TATEMONO  
DESU.

THE HOTEL IS A BIG, NEW  
BUILDING.

## Vocabulary List from the Lesson

kembutsunin (n.) sightseer  
(kem-bu-tsu-nin)

junsa (jun-sa) (n.) policeman

e (p.p.) directional postposition; "to" (See I.C.  
& G.N.)

iku (v.i.) to go; same as yuku

ikitai (i-ki-tá-i) (desiderative form of iku) want to go (See  
I.C. & G.N.)

chikatetsu (chi-ká-te-tsu)	(n.) subway; or chikatetsudoo
dens (den-sha)	ha(n.) streetcar, suburban trains
hayai (ha-ya-i)	(adj.) fast
tooi (too-i)	(adj.) far
de	(p.p.) by, with, in, etc., in the sense of "by means of." (See I.C. & G. N.)
densha de	by (means of) streetcar
ikinasai	(polite imperative form of iku) go!
kado (ká-do)	(n.) street corner
tomaru	(v.i.) to stop
<b>Note:</b> This is an INTRANSITIVE VERB. Therefore, it cannot be used in the sense of the English verb, which is transitive: "He stopped the train." There is another verb "to stop"— <i>tomeru</i> , transitive, in Japanese.	
tomarimasu	(polite form of <i>tomaru</i> ) (it) stops
densha tomarimasu	ga The streetcar stops.
tsugi (tsu-gi)	(n.) next, the next following (tsugi no hi—next day; tsugi no hito—next person)
tsugi no kado	the next corner
shashoo (ská-shoo)	(n.) conductor
moshi, moshi	(idio.) "Hello, oh say, excuse me," (usually spoken in pairs)
kippu (kip-pu)	(n.) ticket
kau	(v.t.) to buy
kainasai	(polite imperative of <i>kau</i> ) buy!

ikimasu	(polite form of iku) (one) goes
ikimasen	(negative of iku) (one) does not go
Aoyama-yuki	Aoyama-bound, as in "Chicago-bound"
noru	(v.i.) to ride
	Note: This is another INTRANSITIVE VERB in Japanese. The English verb "to ride" is transitive, and it is possible to say, "Mr. Brown rides a horse." However, when translating such a sentence into Japanese, say, "Brown-san wa horse ni norimasu." O is incorrect. Learn to associate ni with noru.
norinasai	(polite imperative of noru) get on, take (in the sense of "take the next car")
teiryuujo (te-i-ryuu-jo)	(n.) station stop; basu (densha) no teiryuujo bus (streetcar) stop. Eki is used for train station.
orinasai	(polite imperative of oriru) get off!
made (má-de)	(equivalent to English preposition) "up to," or "until"
nan	(inter, pro.) what?
-pun	(n.) minute (phonetic change from fun)
jippun	10 minutes; phonetic change from juu—fun (see above p. 72)
nampun	how many minutes?
kak arimasu	(polite form of kakaru) to take, in the sense of "time required"
hayaku (há-ya-ku)	(adverbial form of hayai) quickly, in a hurry
chikai (chi-ká-i)	(adj.) near

#### Additional Vocabulary



michi	(n.) road
kara	from
osoi	(adj.) slow
(o-so-i)	
yomu	(v.t.) to read
deru (de-ru)	(v.i.) to leave, depart (n.c.v.) place O + deru—leave the place. Eki O deru. Associate postposition o with deru when leaving a place.
mae	(n.) preceding
mae	no preceding streetcar
densha	
jidoosha	(n.) automobile
(Ji-dóo-sha)	
jitensha	(n.) bicycle
hikooki	(n.) airplane
kisha	(n.) train
(ki-shd)	
kisen	(n.) steamship
(ki-sen)	
ootobai	(n.) motorcycle
oriru	(v.i.) to get off (n.c.v.) vehicle O orimasu—to get off the vehicle; basu O oriru.
basu*	(n.) bus
takushii*	(n.) taxi

**Note:** \*There are many English words used as Japanese words. In pronouncing such words, be sure you pronounce them like a Japanese, e.g.,

typewriter—ta-i-pu-ra-i-taa

escalator—e-su-ka-ree-taa

rice curry—ka-ree-ra-i-su

ice cream—a-i-su-ku-rii-mu  
jazz band—jya-zu-ban-do  
baseball—bee-su-boo-ru

## Important Construction and Grammar Notes

**VERB CONJUGATION:** Japanese verbs are classified into one of three groups:

1. Ichidan (or non-conjugating) verbs
2. Yodan (or conjugating) verbs
3. Irregular verbs (kuru and suru)

**NON-CONJUGATING VERBS:** The ichidan (or non-conjugating) verbs are verbs whose infinitives end in either eru or iru. As the name implies, the non-conjugating or ichidan verb has only one base, its stem. The stem is derived by dropping the ru ending of the infinitive, as follows:

miru "to see"    mi-(ju) mi (the stem)  
taberu "to eat"    tabe-(r'i) tabe (the stem)  
mieru "to be able"    mie-(ru) mie (the stem)  
to see"

There are few exceptions. Some eru and iru verbs belong to the conjugating verb classification, but these are few, and easily memorized (see below). Henceforth, non-conjugating verb may be abbreviated as n.c.v.

**EXCEPTIONS:** The following verbs are exceptions to the rule that all eru and iru-ending verbs are non-conjugating.

kiru —to cut  
kaeru —to return  
hashiru—to run  
shiru —to know  
iru —to need  
hairu —to enter  
mairu —to come (humble form)

Therefore, these are treated as conjugating verbs with the base as follows:

ra  
ri  
kaeru  
re  
ro

(See following for detailed explanation of this.)

The "te" form of these verbs assumes the same form as an ru-ending verb, i.e.,

uru becomes u-tte\*  
kiru            ki-tte

\* See page 51 for explanation of the formation of "te" form of the verb.

shiru" shi-tte  
etc.

Note: Kiru has two meanings: "to wear" and "to cut." Kiru as "wear" is non-conjugating. However, the kanji is different. Similarly, iru means "is" and "to need." The former is non-conjugating.

**CONJUGATING VERBS:** All Japanese verbs, except kuru, suru, and the ichidan verbs mentioned above are yodan (conjugating) verbs.

The root forms of the conjugating verbs have either a "consonant + u" ending, or a "u" ending. For instance:

yomu — to read  
kaw — to buy

For conjugation purposes, yomu belongs to the ma column of the Japanese alphabet; while kau and other conjugating verbs ending in double vowels belong to the wa column (see page 21).

		ma	yoma (1st base)
		mi	yomi (2nd base)
yomu	yo + mu	yomu	(3rd base)
		me	yome (4th base)
		mo	jomo (5th base)
		wa*	kawa (1st base)
		i	kai (2nd base)
kau	ka + u	kau	(3rd base)
		e	kae (4th base)
		o	kao (5th base)

Note: \*The double vowel ending verbs, e.g., kau (buy), warau (laugh), arau (wash) etc. have WA as their first base.

**SIGNIFICANCE OF CONJUGATION:** The importance of conjugation and knowing the proper base is that this forms the base to which different suffixes are attached. For all ichidan verbs, verb suffixes are added to the stem. For all yodan verbs suffixes are added to one of the bases. For instance, the "desiderative form" is constructed by adding the "desiderative suffix" tai to the stem of an ichidan verb, and to the 2nd base of a yodan verb, as follows:

1. miru mi-tai
2. yomu yomi-tai

The polite present is formed by adding masu:

1. miru mi-masu
2. yomu yomi-masu (masen is the negative suffix)

The polite imperative is formed by adding nasai:

1. miru mi-nasai
2. yomu yomi-nasai

STEM OF ICHIDAN VERB	+	TAI (Desiderative) MASU (Polite Present) NASAI (Polite Imperative)
-------------------------	---	--

miru	mi	+	tai	=	mitai	("I" want to see)
taberu	tabe	+	tai	=	tabetai	("I" want to eat)
miru	mi	+	masu	=	mimasu	("I" see, will see)
miru	mi	+	nasai	=	minasai	(See!)

2nd BASE OF YODAN VERB	+	TAI (Desiderative) MASU (Polite Present) NASAI (Polite Imperative)
---------------------------	---	--

yomu	yomi	+	tai	=	yomitai	("I" want to read)
tomaru	tomari	+	tai	=	tomaritai	("I" want to stop)
yomu	yomi	+	masu	=	yomimasu	("I" read, will read)
yomu	yomi	+	nasai	=	yominasai	(Read!)

Note: Other commonly used endings which can be added to each base are found on page 403 as an appendix. These should be memorized by constant practice.

**DESIDERATIVE NEGATIVE:** The negative of the desiderative, e.g., "do not want to," can be formed in the same way as the negative of an adjective (see page 82):

1. akai desu

akaku (wa) arimasen. (negative of adjective)

2. mitai desu

mitaku (wa) arimasen. (negative of desiderative)

3. yomitai desu

yomitaku (wa) arimasen. (negative of desiderative)

**ZASSHI O YOMITAI DESU AND ZASSHI GA YOMITAI DESU:** In the use of desiderative form requiring an object, the postposition o is preferred, but ga may be used when the object is emphasized.

1. Watakushi wa Kabuki o mitai desu.

I want to see Kabuki.

2. Watakushi wa Kabuki ga mitai desu.

I want to see Kabuki (and not movies).

**POLITE IMPERATIVE NASAI AND POLITE REQUEST KUDASAI:** The suffix *nasai* expresses a sentiment which has no equivalent in English. It is a command form, but it is not as strong as the English "Stop!" "Go!" "Get out!" It has an element of polite, gentle, admonition, an encouragement, such as when a mother would tell a child, or a teacher would tell a student to:

1. Tachinasai.—Stand up!
2. Miruku o nominasai.—Drink (your) milk!
3. Hayaku shinasai.—Do it quickly!

*te* + *kudasai* shows a request in which the speaker is requesting a favor of the party being spoken to.

1. Tanaka-san, *to o shimete kudasai*.
2. Kore o *shite kudasai*.
3. Hon o *yonde kudasai*.

**POSTPOSITION E:** This postposition indicates the direction in which the object is moving or will move, as in "(going) toward " "TO...." Therefore, *e* is used with a verb of movement.

SUBJECT (what)	WA	DIRECTION (where)	E	VERB
Kono densha (This streetcar)	wa	Tookyoo eki (to Tokyo Station)	e	ikimasu. (will go).

The difference between e and ni is that the latter points to specific location, or specific destination, and e general direction. However, in actual usage this fine distinction is not made and e and ni are used interchangeably where movement toward is intended.

**POSTPOSITION DE:** De is used to show the instrument used, "by means of (with) . . .":

- | SUBJECT WA + INSTRUMENT DE + OBJECT O + VERB |    |                 |    |            |             |
|--|----|-----------------|----|------------|-------------|
| (who)  |    | (with what)     |    | (what)     |             |
| Gakusei                                      | wa | empitsu         | de | Nihongo    | o kakimasu. |
| (The student)                                |    | (with a pencil) |    | (Japanese) | (writes).   |
| Watakushi                                    | wa | me              | de | hon        | o yomimasu. |
| (I)  |    | (with eyes)     |    | (book)     | (read).     |
- | SUBJECT WA + INSTRUMENT DE + DIRECTION E + VERB |    |                                    |    |             |            |
|---|----|------------------------------------|----|-------------|------------|
| (who)   |    | (with what)                        |    | (where)     |            |
| Watakushi                                       | wa | hikooki                            | de | Nihon       | o ikimasu. |
| (I)   |    | (by airplane)                      |    | (to Japan)  | (will go). |
| Tanaka-san                                      | wa | Aoyama-yuki no                     |    |             |            |
|   |    | basu                               | de | gakkoo      | o ikimasu. |
| (Mr. Tanaka)                                    |    | (by means of the Aoyama-bound bus) |    | (to school) | (goes).    |

**Note:** The word order here may be varied as follows:

Subject + Instrument + Direction + Verb  
 or  
 Subject + Direction + Instrument + Verb

DE has another function when used with monetary terms. In the following examples de means "for," "at the cost of..."

1. Kono pen o go doru de kaimashita.

I bought this pen for \$5.00.

2. Kono jibiki o gohyaku en de urimasu.

I will sell this dictionary for 500 yen.



### 3. Kore o ikura de kaimashita ka.

How much did you buy this for?

It may not be too illogical to think of this de as "by means of" and interpret the sentences given above as "bought by means of \$5.00," "sell by means of 500 yen."

HOW MANY VOLUMES (of books), SHEETS (of paper), etc.: When asking how many volumes, sheets, etc., use the following:

#### Classifiers

nin	(How many persons?)
NAN mai	(How many sheets?)
or + satsu	(How many volumes?)
IKU doru	(How many dollars?)
etc.	

Therefore, nan-nin, nan-mat, nan-doru, etc., or iku-nin, iku-mai.

#### Fluency Drill

I

Kaimasu.

Depaato de kaimasu.

Depaato de hon o kaimasu.

Depaato de hon o kaimasen.

Depaato de Nihongo no hon o kaimasen.

Depaato de juu doru de Nihongo no hon o kaimasu.

Depaato de juu doru de Nihongo no hon o ni-satsu kaimasu.

I buy.

(I) buy it at a department store.

(I) will buy a book at a department store.

(I) will not buy a book at a department store.

(I) will not buy a Japanese book at a department store.

(I) will buy a Japanese book for 10 dollars at a department store.

(I) will buy 2 Japanese books for 10 dollars at a department store

## II

Ikimasu

Nihon e ikimasu.

Nihon e ikitai desu.

Hikooki de Nihon e ikitai desu.

Brown-san wa hikooki de Nihon e ikitai desu.

Brown-san wa America no hikooki de Nihon e ikinasai.

(He) will go

(He) will go to Japan

(He) wants to go to Japan

(He) wants to go to Japan by airplane

Mr. Brown wants to go to Japan by airplane.

Mr. Brown, go to Japan in (by means of) an American plane.

## Substitution Drill

<i>Noun (Instrument)</i>		<i>(Verb)</i>
TAKUSHII	DE	IKIMASU
BASU		KIMASU
HIKOOKI		KAERIMASU
etc.		

<i>Noun (Instrument)</i>	<i>(Verb)</i>
EMPITSU PEN FUDE (brush) etc.	} DE KAKIMASU
<i>(2nd Base of Verb)</i>	
TABE YOMI KAI SHI KI etc.	} + {TAI (DESU) NASAI

## Exercises

1. I will go by streetcar. Densha de ikimasu.
2. I will come in (by) my friend's automobile. Tomodachi no jidoosha de kimasu.
3. I will go by train. Watakushi wa kisha de ikimasu.
4. I will go home by subway. Chikatetsu de kaerimasu.
5. He will go to Japan by plane. Ano kata wa Nihon e hikooki de ikimasu.
6. Japanese eat with chopsticks. Nihonjin wa hashi de tabemasu.
7. Americans eat with knives and forks. Amerikajin wa naifu to fooku de tabemasu.
8. I go to school by streetcar. Densha de gakkoo e ikimasu.
9. I go to the hotel by subway. Chikatetsu de hoteru e ikimasu.
10. I will come here by motorcycle. Ootobai de koko e kimasu.
11. Read your book. Anata no hon o yominasai.
12. Eat your dessert. Dezaato o tabenasai.
13. Come here quickly. Koko e hayaku kinasai.

14. Go home by taxi quickly. Takushii de hayaku kaerinasai.
15. Get off in front of the hotel. Hoteru no mae de orinasai.
16. Get on the next streetcar. Tsugi no densha ni norinasai.
17. Do you want to eat sukiyaki? Suki-yaki o tabetai desu ka.
18. Yes, I want to eat sukiyaki. Hai, suki-yaki o tabetai desu.
19. Do you want to see Kabuki? Kabuki o mitai desu ka.
20. Yes, I do (want to see it). Hai, mitai desu.
21. Do you want to read this book? Kono hon o yomitai desu ka.
22. No, I do not (want to read it). Iie, yomitaku arimasen.
23. Do you want to buy a Kabuki ticket? Kabuki no kippu o kaitai desu ka.
24. No, I do not (want to buy one). Iie, kaitaku arimasen.
25. It takes 5 minutes. Go-fun kakarimasu.
26. It takes 10 minutes to school. Gakkoo made jippun kakarimasu.
27. It takes 15 minutes by bus to the hotel. Hoteru made basu de juugo-fun kakarimasu.
28. It takes only 20 minutes. Nijippun shika kakarimasen.
29. It takes only 20 minutes by taxi. Takushii de nijippun shika kakarimasen.
30. It takes only 5 minutes by bicycle to the railroad station. Eki made jitensha de go-fun shika kakarimasen.
31. Get on the bus (taxi, bicycle, train, airplane, steamship, motorcycle).

32. Get off the bus (taxi, bicycle, train, airplane, steamship, motorcycle).

Translate into Japanese:

1. I do not want to go to Japan by plane. I want to go by ship.
2. This hotel room is not large. Is there a larger one than this?
3. Take the next streetcar. Get off at the next corner.
4. This streetcar will not stop in front of the school.
5. How many minutes will it take by subway? It will take 15 minutes.
6. Please go quickly to the classroom.
7. My house is farther (away) than yours. Mr. Brown's house is the farthest.
8. A bicycle is slower than an automobile.
9. I will not go to the station by bus.
10. Is the Tokyu Hotel far from here? No, it takes only 5 minutes by taxi.

Answer in Japanese:

1. Anata wa Nihon e ikitai desu ka.
2. Eki wa koko kara tooi desu ka, chikai desu ka.

3. Densha wa kono gakkoo no mae de tomarimasu ka.
4. Anata no uchi kara gakkoo made densha de nampun kakarimasu ka.
5. Kono machi ni chikatetsu ga arimasu ka.
6. Hikooki to jidoosha dewa dochira ga hayai desu ka.
7. Anata wa mainichi jidoosha de gakkoo e ikimasu ka.
8. Anata wa atarashii jidoosha o kaitai desu ka.
9. Doko kara eki-yuki no basu ni norimasu ka.
10. Nihon-yuki no kisen wa doko kara demasu ka.
11. Watakushi wa hayaku Nihon e ikitai desu. Nani ga ichiban hayai desu ka.
12. Tookyoo kara San Francisco made hikooki de nan jikan kakarimasu ka.
13. Anata no uchi kara gakkoo made tooi desu ka, chikai desu ka.

Note:        ka        ka (this construction asks two questions, asking which of the two is correct, viz., "Is it \_\_\_\_\_ or is it \_\_\_\_\_?")

Is it fast, or is it slow?

Hayai desu ka, osoi desu ka.

Is he a teacher or a soldier?

Ano kata wa sensei desu ka, gunjin desu ka.

14. Eki-yuki no densha wa kono kado de tomarimasu ka.  
Koko kara eki made nampun kakarimasu ka.

Note: \_\_\_\_\_ kara \_\_\_\_\_ made" expression is often  
used to say, "from \_\_\_\_\_ to (up to) \_\_\_\_\_"

Koko kara New York made.

Kugatsu kara Juunigatsu made .

15. Anata wa Indo (India) e ikitai desu ka.

Anata wa fune de Nihon e ikitai desu ka.

Anata wa Kabuki o mitai desu ka.

Anata wa sukiyaki o tabetai desu ka.

Anata wa New York made arukitai desu ka.

Fill in the blanks with proper postpositions:

1. Kono hoteru \_\_\_\_\_ puuru \_\_\_\_\_ arimasen.

2. Anata \_\_\_\_\_ hikooki \_\_\_\_\_ Nihon \_\_\_\_\_ ikimasu ka.

3. lie, fune \_\_\_\_\_ ikimasu.

4. Anata \_\_\_\_\_ nan(i) de gakkoo \_\_\_\_\_ kimasu ka.

5. Basu \_\_\_\_\_ gakkoo \_\_\_\_\_ kimasu.

6. Anata \_\_\_\_\_ hoteru \_\_\_\_\_ aisu kuriimu \_\_\_\_\_ tabetai desu ka.

7. lie, watakushi \_\_\_\_\_ aisu kuriimu \_\_\_\_\_ tabetaku arimasen.

8. Anata \_\_\_\_\_ aisu kuriimu \_\_\_\_\_ kirai desu ka.

9. lie, watakushi wa aisu kuriimu \_\_\_\_\_ ichiban suki desu.

10. Aisu kuriimu \_\_\_\_\_ keeki (cake) \_\_\_\_\_ takai desu.
11. Watakushi \_\_\_\_\_ tsugi no kado \_\_\_\_\_ orimasu.
12. Doko \_\_\_\_\_ basu \_\_\_\_\_ norimasu ka.
13. Hoteru no mae \_\_\_\_\_ densha \_\_\_\_\_ orimasu.
14. Tanaka-san \_\_\_\_\_ hikooki \_\_\_\_\_ Nihon \_\_\_\_\_ ikimasu.
15. Depaato \_\_\_\_\_ ni doru \_\_\_\_\_ jibiki \_\_\_\_\_ kaimasu.

### Useful Expressions

#### Leaving and Returning Home (Aisatsu)

The following expressions are used when you (John Brown) are leaving your home, inn, etc., and the person remaining there (Mrs. Tanaka) responds:

John ITTE MAIRIMASU. "I am going now." (This is Brown: used only when the person is returning to the same place, e.g., husband leaving for work, tourist leaving the inn temporarily, student going to school, etc.)  
"Sayonara" is not used when you plan to return soon.

Mrs. ITTE IRRASSHAI. "All right, good-bye!" (This Tanaka: expression is used by the person remaining, and wishing a speedy and safe return).

John TADAIMA (KAERIMASHITA). "Hello! I've just returned," (said upon returning).

Mrs. O-KAERINASAI. "Welcome home!"  
Tanaka:

#### SUPPLEMENT VIII



## Telling Time

### 1. HOUR—JI MINUTE—FUN SECOND—BYO

1 o'clock—ichi-ji 7 o'clock—shichi-ji

3 o'clock—san-ji 9 o'clock—ku-ji

5 o'clock—go-ji 11 o'clock—juuichi-ji

Note: See Supplement IV and V for complete listings of time, minutes, etc.

### 2. AFTER—SUGI

#### HOUR MINUTES PAST

JI + FUN + SUGI

1:05 ichiJI goFUN (SUGI)\* (1 o'clock, 5  
— minutes past)

2:10 niJI jipFUN (SUGI)\* (2 o'clock, 10  
— minutes past)

6:15 rokuJI juugoFUN (SUGI)\* (6 o'clock, 15  
— minutes past)

\* SUGI may be omitted here. Therefore, for 1: 05, ichiji gofun is adequate.

### 3. BEFORE—MAE

#### HOUR MINUTES BEFORE

JI + FUN + MAE

12:55 ichiJI goFUN MAE (5 minutes before  
— 1:00)

1:50 niJI jipPUN MAE (10 minutes before  
— 2:00)  
5:45 rokuJI juugoFUN MAE (15 minutes before  
— 6:00)

#### 4. HALF PAST—HAN

7: 30—shichiJI HAN  
10: 30—juuJI HAN  
12: 30—juuniJI HAN

5. 9: 35—kuJI sanjuu-goFUN  
10:40—juuJI yon-jipPUN

Note: 9: 35 can also be read as 25 minutes until 10  
(or 10 o'clock, 25 minutes before) juuji nijuu-go-fun  
mae.

6. GO-ZEN and GO-GO are the Japanese equivalents to "a.m."  
and "p.m." These are used BEFORE the time, and not after, as  
in English.

11:20 a.m.—GO-ZEN juu-ichiJI ni-jipPUN  
1:30 p.m.—GO-GO ichiJI HAN

7. GORO and GURAI (KURAI): These two words mean "about"  
but note the difference in usage as illustrated below.  
GORO is used only for indicating the approximate point of  
time. Therefore, it is used only with words referring to time.

1. Nan-ji goro kimasu ka—about what time are you  
coming?

2. Roku-ji goro kimasu—I will come about 6 o'clock.

3. Hachigatsu goro Nihon e ikimasu—I will go to Japan about August.

When goro is used, since this indicates the approximate point of time, postposition ni showing specific time is not used with goro (see below).

GURAI, often pronounced as kurai, has the meaning of "approximate length of time, quantity or amount of things." This word is used immediately after the number word in the sentence.

1. San-jikan gurai benkyoo shimashita.—I studied about 3 hours.

2. Juugo-nin gurai kimashita.—About 15 people came.

3. Go-doru gurai arimasu.—I have about \$5.00.

8. POSTPOSITION ni has another usage of indicating specific time. It is used when specific time (either the year, month, day, day of the week, or the hour, as listed in Supplement V) is mentioned. It has the function of: "in" 1964; "on" June 6; "at" 7 o'clock; "on" Friday, etc.

A. Watakushi wa sen kyuuhyaku roku-juuku-nen ni Nihon e ikimasu.

B. Nihon-yuki no kisen wa rokugatsu muika ni demasu.

C. Nihongo no kurasu wa hachi-ji ni hajimarimasu.  
(kurasu—class, hajimarimasu—v.i. begin)

D. Tanaka-san wa Kayoobi ni Amerika e kaerimasu.

Note: No postposition is necessary when the time mentioned is vague and NOT specific, i.e., if specific time, day, month, or year is NOT given. For example:

I will go to school tomorrow.

next week.

next month.

next year.

etc.

No postposition is needed after the time element here, since this is a vague reference to time.

### Exercises

ANATA WA KYOO NAN-JI NI GAKKOO W IKIMASU  
KA.

(What time are you going to school today?)

1. I will go at 8:00 o'clock.
2. I will go at 8:15.
3. I will go about 9:30.
4. I will go at 15 minutes to 8:00.
5. I will go at 20 minutes to 10:00.

6. I will go at 10:20.
7. Today, I will go at 1:30 p.m.
8. Today, I will go at exactly 11:00 o'clock.

ANATA WA ITSU GAKKOO E IKIMASU KA.  
(When are you going to school?)

1. I will go to school today.
2. I will go to school tomorrow.
3. I will go to school tomorrow about 8 o'clock.
4. I will go to school on Friday.
5. I will go to school on Friday at 8 o'clock.
6. I will go to school tonight.
7. I will go to school tonight at 15 minutes to 7.
8. I go to school every day.

Useful Expressions  
Questions Concerning Time

Ima nanji desu ka. What time is it now?  
Nannichi desu ka. What day (of the month) is it?  
Nanyoobi desu ka. What day (of the week) is it?  
Nangatsu desu ka. What month is it?

Nanji ni .	... at what time . .?
Nannichi ni .	... on what day .?
Nanyoobi ni .	... on what day (of the week) . .?
Nangatsu ni .	... in what month . .?
Nannen ni .	... in what year .?

# CHAPTER 9

## HOTERU—A HOTEL

<b>3rd BASE OF THE VERB</b>	+	<b>TSUMORI</b>	= INTEND TO...
<b>VERB</b>			
or	+	<b>KARA (NODE)</b>	= BECAUSE...
<b>ADJ.</b>			

(College Student):

KÖNNICHI WA. BOKU WA  
AMERIKAJIN NO DAIGAKUSEI  
DESU. ANATA WA EIGO GA  
WAKARIMASU KA.

Eigo ga  
wakarimasen kara  
\*Eigo ga wakarimasen kara...

Nihongo de  
hanashite kudasai

(Clerk): IIE, WATAKUSHI WA  
EIGO GA WAKARIMASEN

HELLO (or GOOD DAY). I AM  
AN AMERICAN COLLEGE STU-  
DENT. DO YOU UNDERSTAND  
ENGLISH?

as for English  
because (I) do not understand  
\*because I do not understand Eng-  
lish...  
in Japanese  
please speak

NO, SINCE I DO NOT UNDER-  
STAND ENGLISH, PLEASE

KARA, NIHONGO DE HANA-  
SHITE KUDASAI\

(Student): BOKU NO NIHONGO  
WA HETA DESU\

II HEYA GA ARIMASU KA.

(Clerk): HAI, ARIMASU. NAN-  
NICHI (IKU-NICHI) TOMARI-  
MASU KA.

kono chihoo o  
kembutsu shitai  
node  
\*kono chihoo o kembutsu  
shitai node . . .  
futsuka  
tomaru tsumori desu

(Student): WATAKUSHI WA  
KONO CHIHOO O KEMBUTSU  
SHITAI NODE, FUTSUKA TO-  
MARU TSUMORI DESU\

kyoo wa  
Kinyoobi desu kara  
\*kyoo wa Kinyoobi desu kara . . .  
Getsuyoobi made  
tomaru tsumori desu ka

(Clerk): KYOO WA KINYOOBI  
DESU KARA, GETSUYOOBI  
MADE TOMARU TSUMORI  
DESU KA.

SPEAK IN JAPANESE.

MY JAPANESE IS POOR.

IS THERE A NICE ROOM?

YES, THERE IS. HOW MANY  
DAYS ARE YOU GOING TO  
STAY?

this area (obj. case)  
(I) want to sightsee  
because  
\*because I want to sightsee  
this area . . .  
two days  
(I) intend to stay

SINCE I WANT TO DO (SOME)  
SIGHT-SEEING IN THIS RE-  
GION, (I) INTEND TO STAY  
TWO DAYS.

today (nom. case)  
because it is Friday  
\*because today is Friday . . .  
until Monday  
do you intend to stay

SINCE TODAY IS FRIDAY, (DO  
YOU) INTEND TO STAY UN-  
TIL MONDAY?



Getsuyōobi made  
tomaru  
tsumori dewa arimasen

(Student): IIE, GETSUYOObI  
MADE TOMARU TSUMORI DE-  
WA ARIMASEN.

asatte  
uchi e  
kaeritai node  
\*asatte uchi e kaeritai node...

Nichiyōobi made  
tomaru tsumori desu

ASATTE UCHI E KAERITAI  
NODE NICHIOObI MADE  
TOMARU TSUMORI DESU.

(Clerk): ANATA NO NAMA E TO  
TOKORO (JUSHO) O YADO-  
CHOO NI KAITTE KUDASAI.

heyadai wa  
ichi-nichi  
happyaku en desu

HEYADAI WA ICHI-NICHI HAP-  
PYAKU EN DESU.

(Student): SOnO HEYA WA NI-  
HONSHIKI NO HEYA DESU KA,  
YOOSHIKI NO HEYA DESU KA.

until Monday  
stay  
do not intend

NO, I DO NOT INTEND TO  
STAY UNTIL MONDAY.

day after tomorrow  
to home  
because (I) want to return  
\*because I want to return home  
the day after tomorrow...  
until Sunday  
intend to stay

BECAUSE I WANT TO RETURN  
HOME THE DAY AFTER TO-  
MORROW, I INTEND TO STAY  
UNTIL SUNDAY.

PLEASE WRITE YOUR NAME  
AND ADDRESS IN THE HOTEL  
REGISTER.

as for room rent  
one day  
is 800 yen

THE ROOM RENT IS 800 YEN  
PER DAY.

IS THAT ROOM A JAPANESE-  
STYLE ROOM OR A WESTERN-  
STYLE ROOM?

(Clerk): YOO<sup>1</sup>SHIKI NO HEYA  
DESU.

hayaku  
okitai  
node  
\*hayaku okitai node . . .  
hachi-ji  
hachi-ji ni  
okoshite kudasai

(Student): BOKU WA ASU NO  
ASA HAYAKU OKITAI NODE,  
HACHI-JI NI OKOSHITE KUDA-  
SAI. IMA WA NAN-JI DESU KA.

(Clerk): CHODOO ROKU-JI NI-  
JIPPUN MAE DESU. ANATA NO  
HEYA WA NI-KAI DESU.  
CHOOSHOKU WA NAN-JI NI  
TABEMASU KA.

hachi-ji han  
hachi-ji han ni  
tabetai desu

(Student): HACHI-JI HAN NI TA-  
BETAI DESU.

SENMENJO TO FUROBA WA  
DOKO NI ARIMASU KA.

(Clerk): SOKO NI ARIMASU.

(Student): ARIGATOO. (or ARI-  
GATOO GOZAIMASU).

(Clerk): DOO ITASHIMASHITE.

(IT) IS A WESTERN-STYLE  
ROOM.

early  
(I) want to get up  
because  
\*because I want to get up early . . .  
eight o'clock  
at eight o'clock  
please wake me.

SINCE I WANT TO GET UP  
EARLY TOMORROW MORN-  
ING, PLEASE WAKE ME AT  
EIGHT O'CLOCK. WHAT TIME  
IS (IT) NOW?

(IT) IS EXACTLY TWENTY  
MINUTES OF SIX. YOUR ROOM  
IS (ON THE) SECOND FLOOR.  
WHAT TIME ARE (YOU) GOING  
TO EAT (YOUR) BREAKFAST?

eight-thirty  
at eight-thirty  
want to eat

(I) WOULD LIKE TO EAT AT  
EIGHT-THIRTY.  
WHERE ARE THE WASHROOM  
AND THE BATHROOM?  
THEY ARE THERE.  
THANK YOU.

DON'T MENTION IT.

## Vocabulary List from the Lesson

Nihongo                      ga    (I) understand Japanese. (Learn to associate  
wakarimasu                ga with waku. DO NOT say "Nihongo o  
                                      waku.")  
                                      (conjunctive postposition) since, because.  
kara                         (Kara cannot be used to begin a sentence.  
                                      Also remember that, in Japanese, the

	subordinate clause always precedes the main clause. (See I.C. & G.N.) Kara used in this sense follows a verb or an adjective.)
node	because. Same as kara explained above. (See I.C. & G.N.)
heta (he-tá)	(n.) unskillful (or poor, in the sense of unskillful at golf, piano, etc.) "Poor in golf or piano" is "goru-fu-piano-ga heta desu. "I am poor in Japanese" is "Watakushi wa Nihongo ga heta desu."
nan-	what, this is the contraction of nani.
nan-nichi (nan-ni-chi)	how many days (?)
iku-nichi (i-ku-ni-cki)	how many days (?)
tomaru (to-ma-ru)	(v.i.) to stay (at some place other than one's home). Also, the abrupt present form (stays, stay) is further used in the definite future sense (will stay, am going to stay). This is true with infinitive forms of other verbs.
tomarimasu (to-ma-ri-ma-su)	(polite form of tomaru. Also, the definite future form) stays, stay, will stay, .am going to stay.
chihoo	(n.) the region, the district
kembutsu	(n.) sightseeing
suru	(irregular verb) to do
kembutsu	(o)(Chi. v.) to do (some) sightseeing, to
suru	sightsee
kono chihoo	o want to sightsee this region (or want to do
kembutsu shitai	some sightseeing in and around this region)

tsumori (tsu-mo-ri)	(n.) intention
tomaru tsumori (desu)	intend to stay (See I.C. & G.N.)
kyoo	(n.) today
asatte (a-sát-te)	(n.) the day after tomorrow
kaeru (ká-e-ru)	(v.i.) to return, go back, go home (See I.C. & G.N.)
kaeritai	(desiderative form of kaeru) "want to" return, go back, go home
tokoro (to-ko-ro)	(n.) place, or residence
juusho	(n.) address, place of residence
yadochoo	(n.) hotel register
heyadai	(n.) room rent (See I.C. & G.N.)
ichi-nichi	one day
asu (a-sú)	(n.) tomorrow
asu no asa	(n.) tomorrow morning
okitai	(desiderative form of okiru—"to get up") want to get up
okosu	(v.t.) to wake (someone)
desu kara	a full verb (+) kara means "because" or "since"
hachi-ji	eight o'clock
ima	(n.) the present, now
nan-ji	what time (?)
choodo (choo-do)	(adv.) exactly, just
mae	"of," in the sense of "before"
ni-kai	second floor (See I.C. & G.N.)

chooshoku	
(asahan, asagohan)	(n.) breakfast
nan-ji ni	at what time (?)
han	attached to time, means "half-past"
tabetai	(desiderative form of taberu) want to eat
senmenjo	(n.) washroom
furoba	(n.) room for taking a bath

### Additional Vocabulary

yachin	(n.) house rent
chuushoku	
(hiruhan, hirugohan)	(n.) noon meal, lunch
yuuhan (yuugohan)	(n.) evening meal
benkyoo	
(beti-kyoo)	(n.) study
shigoto (shi-go-to)	(n.) work
koojoo	(n.) factory
machi (ma-chi)	(n.) town
naze (ná-ze)	why (?) used at the beginning of the sentence to ask the reason why.
osoku	(adv.) late, slow
neru	(v.i.) to sleep (n.c.v.)
arau (a-ra-u)	(v.t.) to wash
te	(n.) hand, hands
kao	(n.) face
o-tearai	(n.) toilet

### Important Construction and Grammar Notes

**CHINESE VERBS:** In addition to the three classes of Japanese verbs listed in Lesson 7, there is another group of verbs known as Chinese verbs. These are "noun verbs"—nouns used as verbs by the addition of suru ("to do"). The form is:

NOUN + O SURU
---------------

The following are some examples of Chinese verbs:

1. kembutsu (o) suru to do sightseeing "to sightsee"
2. benkyoo (o) suru to do some studying, "to study"
3. shigoto (o) suru..to do some work, "to work"
4. sooji (o) suru....to do some cleaning, "to clean"

The use of o in Chinese verbs is optional. In this formula, the noun portion is a Chinese compound word (kembutsu, benkyoo, shigoto, etc.)—thus, the derivation of this term, Chinese verb. See below for other examples of Chinese verbs.

Similarly, English words can be used to form this type of verb:

1. doraibu suru....to drive
  2. booringu suru .... to bowl
  3. dansu suru to dance
- etc.

**CONJUGATION OF CHINESE VERBS:** Chinese verbs are conjugated by conjugating suru. Suru is an irregular verb, but it is irregular in the sense that the bases are irregular. Otherwise they are regular, and conjugate like yodan verbs. The four bases are:

se,(sa),shi—1st base

shi —2nd base

suru —3rd base

(sare), sure —4th base

Hence: 1. the infinitive or abrupt present is suru.

2. the polite present is shimasu (2nd base + masu).

3. the desiderative form is shitai (2nd base + tai).

The "te" form of suru is shite, hence:

1. shite kudasai.    please do

2. shite imasu .    (am) doing

**TSUMORI:** The meaning of this word by itself is "intention." Generally, however, this word is combined with the third base of a verb. (The third base of a verb is the same as the infinitive, or the dictionary form, or the abrupt form.) Thus:

1. Boku wa aruku tsumori desu . . . I intend to walk.
2. Boku wa akeru tsumori desu . . . I intend to open.
3. Boku wa benkyo suru tsumori desu . . . I intend to study.

THE NEGATIVE: In order to express negative intention, simply change desu to dewa arimasen, or ja arimasen. tsumori desu becomes tsumori dewa arimasen (. do not intend to).

1. Watakushi wa Kyotoo ni tomaru tsumori dewa arimasen. I do not intend to stay in Kyoto.
2. Ano kata wa fune de kaeru tsumori dewa arimasen. He does not intend to return by ship.

Another way of saying this is to make the verb negative \*:

3. Watakushi wa Kyotoo de tomaranai\* tsumori desu.
4. Ano kata wa fune de kaeranai\* tsumori desu.

KARA USED AFTER STATEMENTS: In English, one may say:

BECAUSE TOMORROW IS SUNDAY, I shall not go to school.  
I shall not go to school because tomorrow is Sunday.

\* The making of an abrupt negative of a verb is explained on page 309.



In other words, the subordinate clause (in this case, the reason) can come either before or after the principal clause. However, in Japanese there is only one way of expressing a subordinate clause:

REASON	KARA + PRINCIPAL CLAUSE
NODE	

Ashita wa Nichiyoubi desu *kara* watakushi wa gakkoo e ikimasen.  
 Hayaku okimasu (okiru) *kara* hayaku nemasu.

Kara may be considered a conjunction meaning "hence," "because," "since," or "therefore," and it comes at the end of the subordinate clause, not before, as in English.

NODE: This expresses the obvious cause, reason, excuse of the subordinate clause of the sentence and is often used interchangeably with kara. However, node does not have the emphasis of kara on pointing out the reason.

- Dempoo o utta node Because I sent a wire, Mr.  
 1. Tanaka-san wa sugu kuru Tanaka will probably come at  
 deshoo. once.  
 2. Isogashii node iku koto ga Because I am busy, I cannot  
 dekimasen. go.

"KARA" MEANING "FROM" AND "KARA" MEANING "BECAUSE":

NOUN + KARA = from . . .

Hikooki wa *Nihon kara* kimasu.  
Eki no mae *kara* densha ni no-  
rinasai.

The airplane will come *from* Japan.  
Get on the streetcar *from* (at) the front  
of the station.

VERB + KARA = because . . .  
ADJ. + NODE

Kono kisha wa Kyoto niwa to-  
marimasen *kara* orinasai.

Because this train will not stop at  
Kyoto, get off.

Kono jibiki wa *takai kara* kai-  
masen.

Because (since) this dictionary is ex-  
pensive, I shall not buy it.

DOUBLE "KA": A "double ka" construction could be either a "conjunctive double ka" construction, or a "two question double ka" construction—"either or", "whether. or":

1. Kore ka sore ka are. This, that, or that.
2. Densha de ikimasu ka, Are you going on a streetcar,  
jidoosha de ikimasu ka. or in an automobile?
3. Kono hon wa anata no desu Is this book yours or the  
ka, sensei no desu ka. teacher's?

Examples 2 and 3 illustrate how double questions are asked with " ka. ka" construction.

HOW TO HANDLE CHINESE VERBS: You have learned what Chinese verbs are, how they are formed, how they conjugate, and how they are translated. Can you use them correctly now? How would you ask such questions as follows in Japanese?

#### GROUP I

1. What do you do?
2. What are you going to do?

3. What will you do?
4. What are you doing?
5. What are you intending to do?
6. What do you intend to do?
7. What do you want to do?

GROUP II

1. What do you study?
2. What are you going to study?
3. What will you study?
4. What are you studying?
5. What are you intending to study?
6. What do you intend to study?
7. What do you want to study?

The preceding sentences are translated into Japanese as follows:

GROUP I

1. Anata wa nani o shite imasu ka.
2. Anata wa nani o shimasu ka.

3. Anata wa nani o shimasu ka.
4. Anata wa nani o shite imasu ka.
5. Anata wa nani o suru tsumori desu ka.
6. Anata wa nani o suru tsumori desu ka.
7. Anata wa nani o shitai desu ka.

#### GROUP II

1. Anata wa nani o benkyoo shite imasu ka.
2. Anata wa nani o benkyoo shimasu ka.
3. Anata wa nani o benkyoo shimasu ka.
4. Anata wa nani o benkyoo shite imasu ka.
5. Anata wa nani o benkyoo suru tsumori desu ka.
6. Anata wa nani o benkyoo suru tsumori desu ka.
7. Anata wa nani o benkyoo shitai desu ka.

**Note:** Try the same exercise with other Chinese verbs, supplying proper pronouns as a part of your lesson.

**TWO POSSIBLE TRANSLATIONS INVOLVING CHINESE VERBS:** Following sentences can be translated as follows:

1. I shall study Japanese.

a. Watakushi wa Nihongo no benkyoo o shimasu.

b. Watakushi wa Nihongo o benkyoo shimasu.

2. I shall clean the room.

a. Watakushi wa heya no sooji o shimasu.

b. Watakushi wa heya o sooji shimasu.

In (a), Nihongo no benkyoo and heya no sooji are the objects of the verb shimasu. The literal translations are "to do Japanese study" and "to do room cleaning." In (b), Nihongo and heya are objects of benkyoo shimasu and sooji shimasu. Translations are "to study Japanese" and "to clean (the) room."

In answering the question:

Anata wa saku-ban nam o shimashita ka.

One can answer:

Watakushi wa benkyoo o shimashita.

Watakushi wa benkyoo shimashita.

In this case *o* is optional. However, when the object is supplied one must comply with the pattern explained above.

To the question:

Nani o benkyoo shimashita ka.

Answer:

Nihongo o benkyoo shimashita.

— or —

Nihongo no benkyoo o shimashita.

KAI: This is a numeral classifier for "times." Hence, ikkai, ni-kai, san-kai, etc. mean once, twice, three times, etc. Kai is also the numeral classifier for "floors" in a building. Hence:

- |                         |                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. ikkai. . first floor | 6. rokkai                |
| 2. ni-kai               | 7. shichi-kai (nana-kai) |
| 3. sangai               | 8. hachi-kai (hakkai)    |
| 4. yon-kai              | 9. kyuu-kai              |
| 5. go-kai               | 10. jikkai               |

KAN: Kan is a suffix denoting period or duration of time, and therefore it is often attached or placed after various time units:

- |                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 1. ichi nen, or ichi nenkan    | one year, for the period of one year   |
| 2. tkkagetsu, or ikkagaetsukan | one month, for the period of one month |
| 3. isshuukan                   | one week, for the period of one week   |
| 4. futsuka, or futsukakan      | two days, for a period of two days     |

5. ichi jikan (ichi-ji by itself one hour, for the period of means one o'clock) one hour
6. ippun, or ippunkan one minute, for the period of one minute
7. ichi-byoo or one second, for the period of one ichi-byookan second

DAI: Dai is a suffix used to denote fare, rental, fee, etc.

1. heya-dai.room rent
2. takushii-daitaxi fare
3. denki-dai electric bill

This word, however, cannot be used universally. Hence:

1. ya-chin.house rent
2. futia-chinboat fare

At times dai and chin are interchangeable. Learn by particular association. Ryookin, too, has the same meanig of "fare, rate, charge."

1. heya no ryookin
2. takushii no ryookin

KAERU: According to the definition of verb conjugation established in Chapter 8, page 113, this, being an era-ending verb, should be an ichidan verb (n.c.v.). However, this is one of the seven exceptions, and it conjugates as follows:

The "te" form of this verb is: KAE-TTE.

## Fluency Drill

### I

Suru tsumori desu.

Benkyoo suru tsumori desu.

Nihongo o benkyoo suru tsumori desu.

Daigaku de Nihongo o benkyoo suru tsumori desu.

Nihon no daigaku de Nihongo o benkyoo suru tsumori desu.

Nihon no daigaku de Nihongo o benkyoo suru tsumori dewa arimasen.

(I) intend to do.

(I) intend to study.

(I) intend to study Japanese.

(I) intend to study Japanese at college.

(I) intend to study Japanese at a Japanese college.

(I) do not intend to study Japanese at a Japanese college.

### II

Ikimasen.

Ikitaku arimasen.

Samui kara ikimasen.

Samui kara ikitaku arimasen.

Kyoo wa samui kara ikitaku arimasen.

Asu wa samuku naru kara ikitaku arimasen.

Asu wa samuku naru kara yama e ikitaku arimasen.



(I) will not go.

(I) do not want to go.

Because it is cold I will not go.

Because it is cold I do not want to go.

Because it is cold today I do not want to go.

Because it will be cold tomorrow I do not want to go.

Because it will be cold tomorrow I do not want to go to the mountains.

## Substitution Drill

<i>(3rd Base Verb)</i>			
I. WATAKUSHI WA	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{TOMARU} \\ \text{TABERU} \\ \text{SURU} \\ \text{KAERU} \\ \text{etc.} \end{array} \right\}$	+	TSUMORI $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{DESU} \\ \text{DEWA (JA)} \\ \text{ARIMASEN} \end{array} \right\}$
<i>(Adj.)</i>			
II. SORE WA	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{TAKAI} \\ \text{OOKII} \\ \text{CHIIISAI} \\ \text{AKAI} \\ \text{etc.} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{KARA} \\ \text{NODE} \end{array} \right\}$	KAIMASEN
<i>(Verb)</i>			
III. SENSEI GA	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{IKU} \\ \text{KIMASU} \\ \text{KAERIMASU} \\ \text{IMASEN} \\ \text{etc.} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{KARA} \\ \text{NODE} \end{array} \right\}$	IKIMASU

## Exercises

Translate into Japanese:

I. Since I don't understand English, I don't like it.

Since you understand Japanese, read the letter.

Since I speak Japanese, please speak in Japanese.

Since I want to read, I will buy that book.

Since it is twelve o'clock, I want to eat lunch.

Since the day after tomorrow is Tuesday, I will go to school.

Since it is Saturday, I want to do some sightseeing.

Since it is Tuesday, please study.  
Since it is exactly six o'clock, I want to eat supper.  
Because today is Sunday, I will not go to school.  
Because it is 40 minutes before 8:00, it is early.  
Because it is 10 minutes after 6:00, it is late.  
Because it is big, I will not buy it.  
Because it is black, I don't like it.  
Because the room is expensive, I will not stay long.

II. I intend to stay.  
I don't intend to stay three days.  
How many days do you intend to stay?  
How many hours do you intend to play?  
Are you intending to go straight ahead?  
I don't intend to go home.  
I don't intend to go home the day after tomorrow.  
Do you intend to go sightseeing today?  
I don't intend to open that box.  
I don't intend to stay until Sunday.  
I will play until nine o'clock.

III. I study (work, do sightseeing, etc.).  
I don't study.  
I want to study.  
Please study.  
I am studying.  
I am not studying.  
You study (polite imperative).  
I intend to study.

IV. The bus fare is 50 yen.  
The room rent is 725 yen.  
The train fare from Tokyo to Osaka is 2000 yen.

The streetcar fare is ten cents.  
Is the streetcar fare twenty or thirty cents?

V. It is not far.  
I want to get up early.  
I want to go late.  
It is not red.  
The school is not near.

VI. Is this yours or mine?  
Is your teacher a Japanese or an American?  
Is Japanese easy or difficult?  
Are you buying or selling?  
This is a Ford, or Chevrolet, or Datsun.

Answer in Japanese:

1. Kyoo wa nan-yoobi desu ka.
2. Asu wa nan-yoobi desu ka.
3. Asatte wa nan-yoobi desu ka.
4. Anata wa Beikokujin no gakusei desu ka.
5. Anata no namae to tokoro o oshiete kudasai.
6. Dare ga anata no heya no sooji o shimasu ka.
7. Anata wa Furansugo to Nihongo ga wakarimasu ka.
8. Kono heya wa donna heya desu ka.

9. New York o kembutsu shitai desu ka.
10. Doko o ichiban kembutsu shitai desu ka.
11. Dono hoteru ga ichiban ookii desu ka.
12. Sono hoteru ni tomaritai desu ka. Naze desu ka.
13. Sono hoteru ni nan-nichi tomaritai desu ka.
14. Sono hoteru ni Nihonshiki to yooshiki no heya ga arimasu ka.
15. Sono hoteru no heya-dai wa ikura desu ka.
16. Dochira ga suki desu ka. Naze desu ka.
17. Nichiyooobi no asa hayaku okimasu ka. Naze desu ka.
18. Anata wa Nichiyooobi ni nan-ji ni chooshoku o tabemasu ka.
19. Nichiyooobi no asa nan-ji ni okimasu ka.
20. Choodo juuni-ji ni chuushoku o tabemasu ka.

Formulate questions so that you can obtain the following information:

1. Whether he understands English or not.
2. What is the name of the best hotel and where it is located.
3. I want to get up at 6:30, so can you wake me up.

4. Whether a person is a student or a Japanese language teacher.
5. You want to find out whether a person intends to stay here until the day after tomorrow—and next, how many days.
6. You want to know where he came from and where he is going.
7. You want to find out what he wants to do tomorrow—sightseeing or shopping.
8. You want to know whether there are any Americans staying in this hotel—how many.
9. You want to determine whether your friend has eaten breakfast, if he would like to eat, and where.
10. You want to know the telephone number of the Imperial Hotel, where there is a telephone, and how much the telephone charge is.
11. You want to find out where one buys a Kabuki ticket, how much it is.
12. Find out where the Kabuki theater is, how long it takes by streetcar, the fastest way of getting there.

Change the following sentences into:

- a. tsumori (intention) construction
- b. negative of tsumori.

c. tai (desiderative) construction

d. negative of tai.

e. past tense of tai.

1. Watakushi wa ikimasu.

a. Watakushi wa iku tsumori desu.

b. Watakushi wa iku tsumori dewa arimasen.

c. Watakushi wa ikitai desu.

d. Watakushi wa ikitaku (wa) arimasen.

e. Watakushi wa ikitaku (wa) arimasen deshita.

2. Ashita kaerimasu.

3. Kyooto o kembutsu shimasu.

4. Futsuka Kyooto ni tomarimasu.

5. Chuushoku o tabemasu.

6. Asu no asa hayaku okimasu.

7. Te to kao o araimasu.

8. Nihongo o benkyoo shimasu.

9. Komban osoku nemasu.



# CHAPTER 10

## KAIMONO—SHOPPING

*adj.*

YASUI + NO

= CHEAP ONE

LOCATION + DE + VERB

= (place where action occurs) AT, IN

BROWN-SAN WA KAIMONO O  
SHITAI KARA GINZA E  
IKIMASHITA.  
DAIMARU TO JU OOKII DE-  
TAATO NI HAIRIMASHITA.

MR. BROWN WANTED TO DO  
SOME SHOPPING SO HE WENT  
TO THE GINZA.  
HE ENTERED A BIG DEPART-  
MENT STORE CALLED DAI-  
MARU.

iriguchi  
iriguchi de  
tenin ni  
 tazunemashita

entrance  
at the entrance (place of action)  
to the clerk  
asked

BROWN-SAN WA IRIGUCHI DE  
TENIN NI TAZUNEMASHITA.  
(Tenin): IRASSHAIMASE.

MR. BROWN ASKED THE  
CLERK AT THE ENTRANCE.  
WELCOME!



(Brown-san): TEBUKURO O KAI-  
TAI DESU. NANGAI NI ARI-  
MASU KA.

(Tenin): TEBUKURO WA NANA-  
KAI DESU.

EREBEETAA WA MIMI NO HOO  
NI ARIMASU.

(BROWN-SAN WA EREBEETAA  
NI NORIMASHITA. SOSHITE  
NANA-KAI DE ORIMASHITA)

(Brown-san): KONO TEBUKURO  
WA IKURA DESU KA.

(Tenin): SONO TEBUKURO NO  
NEDAN WA SEN HAPPYAKU EN  
DESU.

(Brown-san): KORE WA SUKOSHI  
TAKA-SUGIMASU.

motto yasui  
motto yasui no

MOTTO YASUI NO WA ARI-  
MASEN KA.

sore wa  
hakraibin desu  
kara

I WANT TO BUY (SOME)  
GLOVES. ON WHAT FLOOR  
ARE THEY?

THE GLOVES ARE ON THE  
SEVENTH FLOOR.

THE ELEVATOR IS TO THE  
RIGHT.

(MR. BROWN TOOK THE ELE-  
VATOR, AND GOT OFF ON  
THE SEVENTH FLOOR.)

HOW MUCH ARE THESE  
GLOVES?

THE PRICE OF THAT PAIR OF  
GLOVES IS 1800 YEN.

THESE ARE A LITTLE TOO  
EXPENSIVE.

cheaper  
cheaper ones

AREN'T THERE CHEAPER  
ONES?

as for those  
(they) are imported goods  
because

\*sore wa hakurashin desu kara...

takai desu

(Tenin): SORE WA HAKURASHI-  
NIN DESU KARA TAKAI  
DESU.

KORE WA NANAHYAKU GO-  
JU EN DESU.

(Brown-san): SONO IRO WA SUKI  
DEWA ARIMASEN.

HOKA NO TEBUKURO O MISE-  
TE KUDASAI.

(Tenin): KORE WA IKAGA  
DESU KA.

taihen ii iro desu  
ga  
sukoshi  
chiisa-sugimasu

(Brown-san): SORE WA TAIHEN  
II IRO DESU GA SUKOSHI  
CHIISA-SUGIMASU.  
MOO SUKOSHI OOKII NO WA  
ARIMASEN KA.

sore yori  
ookii tebukuro wa  
\*sore yori ookii tebukuro wa...

\*because those are imported  
goods...  
(they) are expensive

SINCE THOSE ARE IMPORTED  
GOODS, THEY ARE EXPEN-  
SIVE.

THESE ARE 750 YEN.

I DON'T LIKE THAT COLOR.

PLEASE SHOW ME OTHER  
GLOVES.

HOW ARE THESE?

(they) are a very nice color  
but  
a little  
too small

THAT IS A VERY NICE COLOR,  
BUT A LITTLE TOO SMALL.

AREN'T THERE LARGER  
ONES?

than those  
larger gloves (nom. case)  
\*larger gloves than those...

urikire mashita  
kara  
\*urikire mashita kara . . .

sold out  
because  
\*because (they) are sold out . . .

(Tenin): SORE YORI OOKII TE-  
BUKURO WA URIKIREMASHITA  
KARA ARIMASEN.

SINCE THE GLOVES LARGER  
THAN THOSE ARE SOLD OUT,  
WE DO NOT HAVE ANY.

sore dewa  
kono  
shiroi no  
kono shiroi no o  
kudasai

in that event  
these  
white ones  
these white ones (obj. case)  
give me

(Brown-san): SORE DEWA KONO  
SHIROI NO O KUDASAI.  
(TENIN WA TEBUKURO O KAMI  
NI TSUTSUMIMASHITA)

IN THAT EVENT, PLEASE  
GIVE ME THESE WHITE ONES.  
(THE CLERK WRAPPED THE  
GLOVES IN PAPER.)

soshite  
hoteru e  
aruite  
kaerimashita

and  
to the hotel  
walking (on foot)  
returned

BROWN-SAN WA TSUGI NI  
HONYA DE SHUUKAN ASAHI  
TO IYU ZASSHI O KAIMASHITA.  
SOSHITE HOTERU E ARUITE  
KAERIMASHITA.

MR. BROWN NEXT BOUGHT A  
MAGAZINE CALLED *WEEKLY*  
*ASAHI* AT THE BOOKSTORE,  
AND HE WALKED BACK TO  
THE HOTEL.

## Vocabulary List from the Lesson

irasshaimase (v.) Welcome! — a form of greeting used when a customer enters a shop, hotel, restaurant, etc. It is also used by a host greeting a guest at home.

kaimono o suru (Chi. v.) to shop  
(ka-i-mo-no)

kaimono o want to shop, want to do (some) shopping  
shitai

Ginza	(n.) name of a street in Tokyo where the famous shopping district lies.
ikimashita	(polite past of iku, to go) went
Daimaru	(n.) name of a department store
to iu	called (See I.C. & G.N.)
depaato	(n.) department store
hairu	(v.i.) to enter, to get in (c.v.)
hairimashita	(v.i. polite past of hairu) associate the post-position ni with this verb: daigaku (heyaa, etc.) ni hairu—enter (into) a university (room, etc.)
iriguchi	(n.) entrance
tebukuro	(n.) gloves
(te-bu-ku-ro)	
tenin (ten-in)	(n.) store clerk
erebeetaa	(n.) elevator
soshite	(conj.) and
(sooshite)	
ikura (i-ku-ra)	how much?
nedan	(n.) price
sen happyaku 1800 yen	
en	
sukoshi	a little
(su-kó-shi)	
taka-sugimasu	to be too expensive (See I.C. & G.N.)
yasui (ya-su-i)	(adj.) cheap, inexpensive
no	(n.) one, substituting for a noun (See I.C. & G.N.)
yasui no	cheap one
hakuraihin	(n.) imported goods

miseru	(v.t.) to show (n.c.v.)
misete kudasai	("te" + kudasai) please show me
ikaga desu ka	How is it? How are they? How about it ? How are you ? (Idiomatic—learn as a phrase.)
chiisa-sugimasu	to be too small, too little
moo sukoshi	a little larger, bigger
ookii	
moo sukoshi	a little larger one
ookii no	
urikiremashita	(polite past of urikireru) to be sold out
kudasai	(v.) give me
sore dewa	in that case, in that event
tsutsumimashita	(polite past of tsutsumu, to wrap) wrapped
honya (hón-ya)	(n.) bookstore
de	(p.p.) at, in (postposition indicating place of action. See I.C. & G.N.)
Shuukan Asahi	(n.) name of a Japanese weekly magazine, Weekly Asahi.
aruite	(polite past of aruite kaeru, to walk home, to return on foot) walked home (See I.C. & G.N.)

### Additional Vocabulary

mono (mo-nó)	(n.) (concrete) thing
shinamono	(n.) merchandise
uru	(v.t.) to sell (c.v.)
warui	(adj.) bad
nagai (na-gd-i)	(adj.) long
mijikai (mi-ji-ka-i)	(adj.) short

ie (t-e)	(n.) house
ashi (a-shi)	(o.) leg, legs, foot, feet
toru	(v.t.) to take (c.v.)
sentaku (sen-ta-ku)	(n.) wash, sentaku suru (Chi. v.)
ryokan	(n.) Japanese inn
hyakkaten	(n.) department store
yunyuuhin (yu-nyuu-hin)	(n.) imported goods

### Important Construction and Grammar Notes

**TENSES:** The Japanese verb tenses, in the polite forms, are formed by adding the various verb suffixes to the second base of the yodan verbs, and to the stem of the ichidan verbs. The irregular verb suru is handled like a yodan verb.

1. masu: the polite present as well as the polite definite future ending.
2. masen: the negative polite present as well as the polite definite future ending.
3. mashita: the polite past ending.
4. masen deshita: the negative polite past ending.

Therefore:

1. kakimasu: (I) write, (I) will write, (I) shall write, (I) am going to write.
2. kakimasen: (I) do not write, (I) will not write, (I) shall not write, (I) am not going to write.

3. kakimashita: (I) wrote, (I) have written.

4. kakimasen deshita: (I) did not write, (I) have not written.

This is an example using the verb kaku, a yodan or conjugating verb. Practice using ichidan verbs and the irregular verb suru (to do). For derivation of bases and stems, consult Chapter 8, page 113.

TO IU: As used in this lesson, to iu can be translated "called," in the sense of "something called something" or "something named something."

1. department store called Daimaru—Daimaru to iu depaato.

2. a man called Brown—Brown to iu hito.

3. a city called Chicago—Chicago to iu machi.

TO is often equivalent to the English quotation mark, or "that" of an indirect quotation. To is placed immediately after the quotational portion of the sentence to identify this.

1. Sensei ga "Kore wa Eigo no hon desu" to iimashita.  
(The teacher said, "This is an English book.")

2. Sensei ga kore wa Eigo no hon desu to iimashita.  
(The teacher said that this is an English book.)

TO OMOIMASU (OMOU): As explained above, to was used with the verb iimasu to indicate quotation. In the same

way, to can be used with other verbs of exclamation to indicate the quoted portion. Study the following examples.

1. The student shouted "Help!"

Student wa, "help," to shouted.

2. The boy cried, "I want to go home."

Boy wa, "I want to go home," to cried.

3. Mother called, "Dinner is ready!"

Mother wa, "Dinner is ready," to called.

Similarly, to is used with omoimasu (to think) to point out what has been thought—the content of what the subject thought. For example:

1. I think "I would like to do some shopping tomorrow."

What I think is included within the quotation marks, so to follows this portion.

Ashita kaimono o shitai to omoimasu. (Subject "I" is understood.)

2. I think "this is an imported item."

"This is an imported item" I think.

Kore wa hakuraihin da to omoimasu.

4. I think the shoes are on the 5th floor.

Kutsu wa go-kai ni aru to omoimasu.

Note: In the following examples, NI is used after the indirect object. Follow the word order explained below where quotational to construction is used.



1. Sensei *WA* seito *NI* ashita shiken (exam) ga arimasu *TO* iimashita.

(The teacher said to the students that there would be an exam tomorrow.)

2. Brown-san *WA* tenin *NI* motto ookii no o misete kudasai *TO* iimashita.

(Brown said to the clerk, "Please show me a bigger one.")

The usage of *NI* to indicate indirect object may be more clearly explained in the following examples.

1. Please give this book to me. ("book" is the direct object and "me" is the indirect object.)

Watakushi ni kono hon o kudasai.

2. I will send this magazine to my Japanese friend, ("this magazine" is the direct object, "my Japanese friend" is the indirect object.)

Nihon no tomodachi ni kono zasshi o okurimasu.

*NO*: This has been used earlier (see p. 38) as a postposition. Here it is used as a nominalizer (adjective taking a noun construction). *No* used in this way can often be interpreted as "one" or the "thing," and it is often similar to the English "give me the large one" when the object referred to is understood by the context of the sentence. A corollary to this is that *no* is used to avoid frequent use of the noun (or object) in question.

1. Kuroi no o kudasai.

(Give me a black one.)

2. Yasui no ga arimasen ka.

(Aren't there (any) cheap ones?)

3. Kono tebukuro no uchi de kuroi no ga suki desu.

(Among these gloves, I like the black ones—instead of repeating "gloves.")

However, remember that the Japanese equivalent of "this one" and "that one" are kono and sono respectively.

DE: An additional use of de, a postposition, is to designate the place of action. It is used after a noun to indicate where the action takes place.

1. Gakkoo de benkyoo o suru—to study at school,  
(shows where the action of STUDYING is done.)

2. Koojoo de shigoto o suru—to work in a factory,  
(shows where the WORK will be done)

3. Daimaru de kaimono o shimashita. I did (some) shopping at Daimaru.  
(indicates where the SHOPPING was conducted.)

When mere location is indicated and NO action is involved, ni is used:

1. Gakkoo ni hon ga arimasu. There are books at the school.

2. Koojoo ni nani ga arimasu ka. What is at the factory?

3. Kono heya no naka ni nani ga arimasu ka. What is in this room?

REVIEW OF DE, NI, AND E: Because of similarity in the meanings of de, ni, and e, the importance of having a clear definition of the function of postpositions rather than giving simple English equivalents to postpositions is repeated here.

1. Watakushi		DAIMARU	shigoto o
wa	kyonen	DE	shimashita.
I	last year	at Daimaru	worked.

(This sentence indicates where I worked—place of action.)

2. Daimaru to iu depaato wa GINZA NI arimasu.  
Daimaru called a department store in the Ginza is located.

(In this sentence ni also indicates where, but no action is specified. Ni specifies where it—the department store—is located.)

3. Watakushi wa ashita DAIMARU E ikimasu.  
I tomorrow to Daimaru to

(In this sentence e indicates where I am going—showing the direction of movement.)

If ni is to be represented by a dot (·) indicating a specific place, e may be an arrow (→) showing the direction toward which the action is moving; de will be a larger dot (○) where

some sort of action takes place.

**CONJUNCTION SOSHITE:** The conjunction *soshite*, meaning "and," is used to join two clauses. It may also be used to combine sentences.

1. Boku wa sakuban benkyoo o shimashita. Soshite eiga e ikimashita.

(Last night I did some studying, and I went to the movies.)

In Japanese, two clauses joined by *soshite*, though actually connected in thought, are treated as two independent sentences.

2. Boku wa kyoo machi e ikitai desu. Soshite kaimono ga shitai desu.

(I want to go to town today, and do some shopping.)

3. Anata wa kinoo san-ji ni uchi e kaerimashita ka. Soshite nani o shimashita ka.

(Did you go home yesterday at three o'clock? And what did you do?)

*Soshite* ("and") has some "and then" connotation.

When connecting two nouns, or substantives, use to explained below.

**TO:** To is used to connect two nouns, or substantives.

1. Anata to watakushi—you and I

2. Yoi hon to warui hon—good books and bad books

3. Machi to inaka—town and country

Unlike English, this conjunction cannot be used to join adjectives or sentences.

SUGIRU: The verb *sugiru* in itself means "to pass," "to exceed," etc. When combined with a true adjective minus its final *i*, *sugiru* expresses "excessiveness" or "over abundance" of a certain quality:

1. *akai aka-sugiru*—to be too red

2. *furui furu-sugiru*—to be too old

3. *tooi too-sugiru*—to be too far

Therefore:

1. *Kono iro wa aka-sugimasu*—This color is excessively red.

2. *Kono ie wa furu-sugimasu*—This house is too old.

3. *Ano gakkoo wa too-sugimasu*—That school is too far.

The negative form is handled in the same manner as any verb, as explained above in "tenses." Therefore:

1. *aka-sugimasen*—not too red

2. *yo-sugimasen*—not too good

VERB + SUGIRU: When combined with the second base of the yodan verbs, or the second base of suru, or the stem of the ichidan verbs, sugiru expresses the idea of "too much," or "overdoing" certain activity. Therefore:

1. tabe-sugimashita—(I) overate; ate too much.
2. yomi-sugimashita—(I) over-read; read too much.
3. benkyoo o shi-sugimashita—(I) overstudied; studied too much.
4. aruki-sugimashita—(I) over-walked; walked too much.
5. shigoto o shi-sugimashita—(I) overworked; worked too much.

As part of your lesson, practice with other verbs and adjectives. Also practice with various tenses.

ARUITE IKU: This is a new construction embodying a "te" form of the verb -f- a full verb. So far, you have not learned that a "te" verb, for example, aruite, has any meaning other than that it is the "te" form of a certain verb. You have learned that when this form is combined with kudasai, a polite request form is obtained. You have learned, too, that "te" verb + "imasu" is the progressive action form.

Aruite iku is another form. Aruite, here, means "walk and."  
." Aruite iku is "to walk and go," or "to go on foot." Similarly:

1. aruite kuru—to come on foot

2. aruite kaeru—to return on foot etc.

De was introduced in the sense of "by," "by means of," or as de, used to show "by what means" or "with what" (see page 116). Hence, you say:

1. Kisha de ikimashita. (I) went by train.

2. Jidoosha de ikimashita. (I) went by automobile, or by means of an automobile.

However, compare the following:

1. Aruite ikimashita.

2. Boku wa ashi de arukimasu. Soshite te deji o kakimasu.  
I walk by means of (my) feet, and I write words by means of (my) hands.

YA: Denotes stores and shops used as a suffix after a noun.

1. honya—bookstore

2. sentakuya—laundry

3. yadoya—inn

This suffix cannot be universally employed. Ten is sometimes used.

GA: This is a connective used to introduce ideas contrary to expectation.

1. Kore wa takai shinamono desu ga kaimasu.  
(These are expensive goods but (I) will buy them.)

2. Gakkoo wa tooi desu ga aruite ikimasu.  
(The school is far but I will walk there.)

GA has another usage which is closer to the English conjunction "and," introducing another clause of equal weight.

1. Kore wa hon desu ga sore wa zasshi desu.

### Fluency Drill

Kaimasu.

Kaimashita.

Depaato de kaimashita.

Ookii depaato de kaimashita.

Kore o ookii depaato de kaimashita.

Kono tokei o ookii depaato de kaimashita.

Kono tokei o Daimaru to iu ookii depaato de kaimashita.

Kono yasui tokei o Daimaru to iu ookii depaato de kaimashita.

Hakuraihin no tokei o Daimaru to iu ookii depaato de kaimashita.

(I) will buy.

I bought it.

I bought it at the department store.

I bought it at a large department store.

I bought this at a large department store.

I bought this watch at a large department store.

I bought this watch at a large department store called



Daimaru.

I bought this cheap watch at a large department store called Daimaru.

I bought an imported watch at a large department store called Daimaru.

## Substitution Drill

<i>(Place)</i>		<i>(Verb)</i>
GAKKOO	} DE	YOMIMASU
KOON		TABEMASU
DEPAATO		KAKIMASU
HOTERU		SHIGOTO SHIMASU
etc.		etc.

<i>(Adj. minus "i")</i>		
TAKA	} +	SUGIMASU
YASU		SUGIMASEN (DESHITA)
TOO		SUGIMASHITA
MIJIKAI		
etc.		

<i>(2nd Base of Verb)</i>		
TABE	} +	SUGIMASU
YOMI		SUGIMASEN (DESHITA)
BENKYOO SHI		SUGIMASHITA
etc.		

## Exercises

Translate into Japanese:

I

Since I wanted to buy the book, I bought it.  
Since I didn't go to school yesterday, I will go today.  
Since these are imported goods, they are expensive.  
Since I overate, I will not eat.  
Since I got off, I will walk.

II

I entered the department store called Daimaru.  
I go to a school called Tokyo University.

A man named Brown is teaching English at my school.

That bookstore is selling an American magazine called Life.

### III

I did (some) shopping at the department store.

Please study in this room.

I will eat at the inn.

I got off on the second floor.

I bought the book at the bookstore.

### IV

I studied well and played.

I got off the elevator and walked.

This notebook is 300 yen and it is not good.

I entered the room and sat down.

I bought this and wrapped it.

### V

I studied Japanese but I don't understand it well.

This newspaper is 10 yen but that magazine is 50 yen.

This is good but it is too expensive.

I like this but it is too big.

### VI

The price is a little too high.

The gloves are a little too small.

It is too red.

The school is too far.

I overslept this morning.

## VII

In that event, please give me these.

In that case, I'll go to the store.

How are these hats?

How are these imported goods?

## VIII

Use the following verbs in sentences with the various tenses specified: (Start from the top and go down the column.)

I will	buy	do	go in	wrap	stay	sell
I won't	"				"	
I want to						
I don't want to						
You (imperative)						
Please						
I am	buying	doing	going in	wrapping	staying	selling
I am not						
I	bought	did	went in	wrapped	stayed	sold
I didn't	buy	do	go in	wrap	stay	sell
I intend to	"				"	
I	overbought	overdid			overstayed	oversold

Answer in Japanese:

1. Anata wa kaimono o shitai desu ka.

2. Nani o kaitai desu ka.
3. Daimaru to iu ookii depaato e ikimasu ka.
4. Kono chikaku ni arimasu ka.
5. Amerika de ichiban ookii depaato no namae o oshiete kudasai.
6. Daimaru ni erebeetaa ga arimasu ka.
7. Nangai de booshi o utte imasu ka. (Answer: 2nd floor)  
Note: You are a customer in a store. Respond to the following statements and questions presented to you by the clerk.
8. Donna iro no booshi o kaitai desu ka.
9. Kuroi no wa arimasen ga shiroi no wa ikaga desu ka.
10. Kono booshi wa ikaga desu ka. (Answer: It is good, but it is too small.)
11. Kore wa hakuraihin desu kara nedan wa sukoshi takai desu.
12. Kore wa sen en desu. Taka-sugimasu ka.
13. Kono aoi booshi wa roppyaku en desu.
14. Kore wa ikaga desu ka. (Answer: It is good, but show me another one.)
15. Hoka no iro wa urikire mashita kara asatte kite kudasai.

Fill in the blanks with suitable postpositions and give the reason why:

1. Tanaka-san wa heya no naka \_\_\_\_\_ hon o yonde imasu.
2. Anata wa kotoshi fune \_\_\_\_\_ Nihon \_\_\_\_\_ ikimasu ka.
3. Anata no ushiro \_\_\_\_\_ seito ga benkyoo shite imasu.
4. Honya \_\_\_\_\_ kono jibiki \_\_\_\_\_ kaimashita.
5. John-san wa furoba \_\_\_\_\_ ikimashita.
6. Sensei wa shokudoo \_\_\_\_\_ hiruhan \_\_\_\_\_ tabete imasu.
7. Brown-san no ryokan \_\_\_\_\_ Ginza no chikaku \_\_\_\_\_ arimasu.
8. Kono machi \_\_\_\_\_ depaato \_\_\_\_\_ arimasu ka.
9. Watakushi wa Doyoobi no go-zen kooba \_\_\_\_\_ shigoto o shimashita.
10. Tookyoo eki no mae \_\_\_\_\_ basu \_\_\_\_\_ orimashita.
11. Brown-san wa hikooki \_\_\_\_\_ Nihon \_\_\_\_\_ ikimashita.
12. Watakushi wa hoteru \_\_\_\_\_ chooshoku \_\_\_\_\_ tabetai desu.
13. Daimaru \_\_\_\_\_ kono booshi \_\_\_\_\_ kaimashita.
14. Anata wa basu \_\_\_\_\_ gakkoo \_\_\_\_\_ ikimasu ka.

15. Tanaka-san wa depaato \_\_\_\_\_ ikimashita. Soshite soko \_\_\_\_\_ Nihongo \_\_\_\_\_ jibiki \_\_\_\_\_ kaimashita.

16. Anata \_\_\_\_\_ kono hakuraihin \_\_\_\_\_ suki desu ka.

17. Watakushi wa gakkoo \_\_\_\_\_ kono nooto-bukku \_\_\_\_\_ kaimashita.

18. \_\_\_\_\_ Watakushi \_\_\_\_\_ wa hachi-ji \_\_\_\_\_ depaato \_\_\_\_\_ shigoto \_\_\_\_\_ shimasu.

19. Teeburu no ue \_\_\_\_\_ zasshi \_\_\_\_\_ arimasen.

20. Hachi-kai \_\_\_\_\_ erebeetaa \_\_\_\_\_ norimashita.

You are in a department store and you are seeking the following information:

How do you ask these questions?

1. You want to know what floor the shoes are on.
2. You want to know how much these shoes are.
3. These are too small, so you want to see some others.
4. You don't like brown shoes, so you ask to see black ones.
5. These black shoes are too expensive, so you want to see cheaper ones.
6. You want to know why these shoes are so expensive.

7. Foreign shoes are usually expensive; you want to know if they have any Japanese-made (Nihonsei) shoes.

8. If they are sold out, when will some be available.

9. You want to know if you can have shoes made here (atsuraeru—to make to order).

10. These are just right, so you want to know how much they are.

11. You want to know if there is a department store nearby.

12. Please have them wrapped.

### Useful Expressions

#### Apologies (O-wabi)

GOMEN NASAI "I'm sorry," "I beg your pardon."  
or It is also used (aside from ordinary situations where such

GOMEN KUDASAI apologies are required) when:  
(a) passing in front of another person.  
(b) upon entering the house, shop, etc., and announcing your presence.  
(c) leaving your seat at a meeting, etc.  
(d) going ahead of a person.  
(e) making an impolite remark.

SHITSUREI "I'm sorry" (for having committed a  
SHIMASHITA—breach of etiquette, a blunder, a  
(ITASHIMASHITA)\*discourteous act). For example, "I  
have kept you waiting. Shitsurei

shimashita." "I gave you the wrong amount of change. Shitsurei shimashita."

SHITSUREI  
SHIMASU—  
(ITASHIM ASU)\*

"Please excuse me" (for the breach of etiquette, or blunder I am about to commit). This explanation may not be so difficult to imagine if you consider a situation such as: "I won't be able to attend the meeting, so kom-ban shitsurei shimasu," or "I must leave now, so shitsurei shimasu." The circumstances listed under gomen nasai above will be applicable here also.

SUMIMASEN—

This is the more common way of saying, "I'm

SUMIMASEN  
DESHITA—(past)

sorry," "excuse me"—used for apologizing only.

\* Itashimashita may be used in place of shimashita. The former is the humble form of shimashita. The humble form is explained in Chapter 19.



# CHAPTER 11

## GORAKU—ENTERTAINMENT

<b>3rd BASE OF THE VERB</b>	+	<b>KOTO GA DEKIRU</b>	= CAN DO ... ABLE TO ... (potential)
<b>ABRUPT PAST OF THE VERB</b>	+	<b>KOTO GA ARU</b>	= HAVE THE EXPERIENCE OF ... HAVE YOU EVER ... (?)
<b>2nd BASE OF THE VERB</b>	+	<b>NI IKU NI KURU NI KAERU</b>	= GO COME FOR THE PUR- RETURN POSE OF ...

BROWN-SAN WA AMERIKAJIN  
NO CAKUSEI DE  
TANAKA-SAN WA BROWN-SAN  
NO TOMODACHI DESU.

MR. BROWN IS AN AMERICAN  
STUDENT AND  
MR. TANAKA IS MR. BROWN'S  
FRIEND.

ame ga futte iru  
node  
kembutsu  
kembutsu suru  
suru koto ga dekimasen

it is raining  
because  
sightseeing  
to do the sights  
cannot do

AME GA FUTTE IRU NODE  
MACHI O KEMBUTSU SURU  
KOTO GA DEKIMASEN.

SINCE IT IS RAINING, WE  
CANNOT DO SIGHTSEEING  
IN THE CITY.

FUTARI WA EIGA KA SHIBAI  
NI IKU TSUMORI DESU.

(Brown-san): KYOO WA TENKI  
GA WARUI KARA EIGA E IKI-  
MASEN KA.

(Tanaka-san): SORE WA TAIHEN  
II KANGAE DESU. SASSOKU  
IKIMASHOO.

FUTARI WA TAKUSHII O YO.  
BIMASHITA. SOSHITE TAKU-  
SHII NI NORIMASHITA.

TAKUSHII NO MAKU DE:

Nihon no shibai o  
mita koto ga arimasu ka

(Tanaka-san): ANATA WA NIHON  
NO SHIBAI O MITA KOTO GA  
ARIMASU KA.

Amerika dewa  
Nihon no shibai o  
miru koto ga dekimasen  
node  
mita koto ga arimasen

(Brown-san): AMERIKA DEWA  
NIHON NO SHIBAI O MIRU

TOGETHER THEY INTEND TO  
GO TO THE MOVIES OR (TO)  
A PLAY.

SINCE THE WEATHER IS BAD  
TODAY, WON'T YOU GO TO  
THE MOVIES?

THAT IS AN EXCELLENT  
IDEA. LET US GO IMME-  
DIATELY.

THE TWO CALLED A TAXI  
AND GOT INTO THE TAXI.

IN THE TAXI:

(a) Japanese play (obj. case)  
have you ever seen?

HAVE YOU EVER SEEN A  
JAPANESE PLAY?

in America (place of action)  
Japanese play (obj. case)  
cannot see  
because  
have not seen

WE CANNOT SEE JAPANESE  
PLAYS IN AMERICA, SO I

KOTO GA DEKIMASEN NODE  
MADA MITA KOTO GA ARI-  
MASEN.\

(Tanaka-san): KABUKI YA ODORI  
WA IKAGA DESU KA.

(Brown-san): ODORI WA MITA  
KOTO GA ARIMASU GA KA-  
BUKI WA MITA KOTO GA ARI-  
MASEN.\

(Tanaka-san): ANATA WA KA-  
BUKI O MITAI DESU KA.

mi ni  
ikitai desu

(Brown-san): EE, ZEHI ICHIDO  
MI NI IKITAI DESU.\

(Tanaka-san): ODORI WA IKAGA  
DESU KA.

(Brown-san): ODORI WA MITAKU  
(WA) ARIMASEN.\

shibai o  
mi ni  
iku tsumori desu  
kara  
\*shibai o mi ni iku  
tsumori desu kara . . .

HAVE NOT SEEN (ONE) YET.

HOW ABOUT KABUKI AND  
DANCES AND THE LIKE?  
I'VE SEEN ODORI DANCES,  
BUT I HAVEN'T EVER SEEN  
KABUKI.

DO YOU WANT TO SEE  
KABUKI?

(in order) to see  
want to go

YES, I WANT TO GO TO SEE  
(IT) ONCE BY ALL MEANS.  
HOW ABOUT DANCES?

I DO NOT WANT TO SEE  
DANCES.

a play (obj. case)  
(in order) to see  
intend to go  
because  
\*since I intend to go to  
see a play . . .

issho ni  
ikimasen ka

(Tanaka-san): WATAKUSHI WA  
MYOOBAN SHIBAI O MI NI IKU  
TSUMORI DESU KARA, ISSHO  
NI IKIMASEN KA.

tomodachi no uchi e  
asobi ni ikimasu  
kara  
iku koto ga dekimasen

(Brown-san): ARIGATOO GOZAI-  
MASU GA MYOOBAN WA TO-  
MODACHI NO UCHI E ASOBI  
NI IKIMASU KARA, IKU KOTO  
GA DEKIMASEN.

RAISHUU NO GETSUYOO NO  
BAN WA HIMA DESU KARA,  
ISSHO NI IKIMASHOO.

(Tanaka-san): EE, DEWA ISSHO  
NI IKIMASHOO.

RAISHUU NO SHIBAI WA TAI-  
HEN YOI SOO DESU.

TAKUSHII WA OOSAKA DE  
ICHIBAN OOKII SHOOCHIKU-  
ZA TO IYU EIGAKAN NO MAE  
NI TOMARIMASHITA.  
FUTARI WA TAKUSHII KARA  
ORIMASHITA.

kippu uriba e  
ni-mai no kippu o  
kai ni  
ikimashita

KIPPU URIBA E NI-MAI NO  
KIPPU O KAI NI IKIMASHITA.

together  
shall we not go

SINCE I INTEND TO GO SEE A  
PLAY TOMORROW NIGHT,  
WON'T YOU GO WITH ME?

to a friend's home  
go to visit  
because  
cannot go

THANK YOU, BUT SINCE I  
AM GOING TO MY FRIEND'S  
HOME FOR A VISIT TOMOR-  
ROW NIGHT, I WON'T BE  
ABLE TO GO.

SINCE NEXT MONDAY NIGHT  
IS FREE, LET'S GO TOGETHER.

YES, THEN LET US GO TO-  
GETHER.

I HEAR NEXT WEEK'S PLAY  
WILL BE VERY GOOD.

THE TAXI STOPPED IN FRONT  
OF THE LARGEST THEATER  
IN OSAKA, CALLED SHOO-  
CHIKU-ZA.

THE TWO GOT OUT OF THE  
TAXI.

to (the) ticket office  
two tickets (obj.)  
(in order) to buy  
went

THEY WENT TO THE TICKET  
OFFICE TO BUY TWO TICK-  
ETS.

## Vocabulary List from the Lesson

de	(used conjunctively to combine two sentences; see p. 246) .. and .
ame (á-me)	(n.) rain
ame ga furu	it will rain, it rains
ame	ga (polite form of the above)
furimasu	
ame ga futte	it is raining
imasu	
ame	ga it rained
furimashita	
koto	ga (known as the "can do" or potential form of
dekiru	"to be able to," "can"; it is preceded by the abrupt present form of a verb. See I.C. & G.N.)
iku koto	ga to be able to go, can go
dekiru	
iku koto	ga cannot go, not able to go
dekimasen	
tomodachi	(n.) friend
(to-mo-da-chi)	
shibai	(n.) play
(shi-ba-i)	
tenki	(n.) weather; tenki ga ii (warui) — weather is good (bad)
kangae	(n.) an idea
sassoku	immediately, right away
ikimashoo	(v.) let us go (polite probable future form of iku; See I.C. & G.N.)
sassoku	let's go right away
ikimashoo	
yobimashita	(pol. past form of yobu) called

mita	(abrupt past form of miru) saw
koto ga	(past experience form) This form, combined
arimasu	with the abrupt past form of a verb expresses past experience. Do not confuse with "... koto ga dekiru" form. (See I.C. & G.N.)
mita koto ga	I have seen (in effect, "I have the experience
arimasu	of having seen," see I.C. & G.N.)
mada (má-da)	still, yet
mada itta koto...	haven't been . yet.
ga arimasen	
Kabuki	(n.) a type of classical Japanese drama
zehi (zé-hi)	by all means
odori	(n.) dance
ee	same as hai—"yes"
wa	(p.p.) (as used in the lesson "Odori wa mita koto ga arimasu ga Kabuki wa mita koto ga arimasen." wa is USED TO SHOW THOUGHT CONTRAST. O is not incorrect, but wa is preferable to express the idea "as far as odori is concerned. .")
myooban	(n.) tomorrow night (consult and memorize chart in Supplement VI, p. 103)
mi	(stem of miru)
... ni	when combined with the 2nd base of yodan verbs and the stem of ichidan verbs, it means: "for the purpose of . .," "in order to . .," "for. ." (See I.C. & G.N.)
mi ni	for the purpose of seeing, in order to see (often used with iku, kuru, or kaeru)
issho (is-sho)	(n.) together
issho ni	together

issho desu	(we) are together
issho ni	Let us go together. (See I.C. & G.N.)
ikimashoo	
asobi ni	to go to play, while away time, visit
ikimasu	
raishuu	next week (consult and memorize table in Supplement VI)
Getsuyoo	no Monday night
ban	
hi ma	(n.) unoccupied time, hence: "free," "open" (in the sense of time)
dewa (dé-via)	then, in that case
soo desu	I hear, it is said (see p. 223 for explanation)
de	in (in the sense of "in all of a certain place, locality, group, category, or classification" when comparing. This form is usually followed by "ichiban+adjective," to indicate the superlative degree. This de (in) is different from ni (in), since ni merely shows location of existence. Hence, "something ga someplace ni arimasu." It also differs with de (at), which shows location of action. Do not confuse these usages.)
Shoochiku-za	name of a theater
eigakan	a motion picture theater
-kan	(suffix) denotes a building, toshokan —library.
uriba	(n.) place of sale, sales room

#### Additional Vocabulary

gekijoo	(n.) legitimate theater
baa	(n.) cocktail bar
hanami	(n.) flower viewing
kissaten	(n.) tea house (a place to sit and relax and drink tea while listening to records or other music)
ongaku	(n.) music
ongakukai	(n.) concert
yamanobori	(n.) mountain climbing
Gimbura	(n.) a term applied to a popular pastime in Tokyo: "to walk around the Ginza district with no particular purpose." In Osaka, the term is Shimbura. Kobe and Yokohama have similar expressions. "Gimbura suru," "Gimbura ni iku."
haikingu	(n.) hiking
booto nori	(n.) boat ride
itsu	when (?)
hidoi	(adj.) severe, harsh
hidoku	(adverbial form of hidoi) severely, harshly
ame	ga It is raining severely/hard. It is pouring.
hidoku	
futte imasu	
ame	ga It is raining a little.
sukoshi	
futte imasu	
yuki	(n.) snow
(yú-ki)	
yuki	ga (it) snows, will snow
furu	

## Important Construction and Grammar Notes



**POLITE AND ABRUPT FORMS:** The rigid class-stratification in past Japanese society is manifested in different degrees of politeness or abruptness in Japanese speech. The differentiation is usually demonstrated in the verb endings and personal pronouns. The masu and desu form of ending emphasized throughout this book is the ordinary polite form which is most widely used. This form is polite enough to be used in almost any social situation by students of the language without creating ill-feeling.

The abrupt form is used among intimates where there is no need to maintain formality. Depending upon the circumstances, this form can be either intimate or impolite. It is considered impolite to use the abrupt form when addressing a stranger, or someone of higher status. The root form (or dictionary form) of the verb is the abrupt (plain) present.

There is another form (which we will call the super polite, or honorific form for lack of a better term) generally used among more educated people, women, or attendants (hotel maids, clerks, waitresses, etc.) speaking to their patrons to show respect. The humble form of expression is used by the speaker to underrate or humble himself.

These two forms are explained in Chapter 19 in greater detail.

	polite	abrupt
(Present)	yomi-masu	yomu
(Past)	yomi-mashita	yonda
	desu	da

Note: The meaning is the same in these two forms.  
The only difference is in the degree of politeness implied.

**HOW TO FORM THE ABRUPT PAST OF THE VERB:** We have noted that the abrupt present form of a verb is the same as the "infinitive" or the "root" of a verb. On page 51, an explanation on how to form the "te" form of the verb was given. Abrupt past is formed by changing the e of the "te" verb to an a. Hence:

INFINITIVE (ABRUPT)	"TE" FORM	ABRUPT PAST
1. kau	katte	katta (bought)
2. yomu	yonde	yonda (read)
3. taberu	tabete	tabeta (ate)
4. hairu	haitte	haitta (went in)
5. tobu	tonde	tonda (jumped)
6. iru	ite	ita (was, animate existence)
7. aru	atte	atta (was, inanimate existence)
8. desu	de atte)	(de de atta, datta (was)
9. iku	itte	itta (went)

Compare the following:

PRESENT			PAST		
<i>Abrupt</i>		<i>Polite</i>	<i>Abrupt</i>		<i>Polite</i>
read	yomu	yomimasu	read	yonda	yomimashita
play	asobu	asobimasu	played	asonda	asobimashita
see	miru	mirimasu	saw	mita	mirimashita
eat	taberu	tabemasu	ate	tabeta	tabemashita
do	suru	shimasu	did	shita	shimashita
come	kuru	kimasu	came	kita	kimashita

**KOTO GA DEKIRU:** This construction, known as the "potential" or "can do" form, should be memorized as a phrase. It follows the abrupt present or the infinitive form of a verb, and it means: "to be able to . . .," "can. . ."

Conjugation is done by conjugating *dekiru*.

1. *Iku koto ga dekimasu*: can go, able to go.
2. *Suru koto ga dekimasen deshita*: was unable to do.

Students should also familiarize themselves with "*.. koto ga dekiru*" constructions embodying all the elements of a sentence:

1. *Anata wa Eigo o hanasu koto ga dekimasu ka.*  
Are you able to speak English?
2. *Anata wa Nichiyooobi ni eiga e iku koto ga dekimasu ka.*  
Can you go to the movies on Sunday?

Also note that in answering *koto ga dekimasu ka* construction questions, often all the elements preceding *dekimasu* are left out:

(Q) *Anata wa kore o suru koto ga dekimasu ka.* Can you do this?

(ans.)      *Hai, dekimasu.*                      Yes, I can.

(ans.)      *ie, dekimasen.*                      No, I can't.

**KOTO GA ARU:** This is the "experience" construction. When combined with abrupt past form of a verb, it expresses

past experience. Do not confuse this with ". . . koto ga dekiru" construction (potential).

1. Mita koto ga arimasu.

I have seen (but in effect, "I've had the experience of seeing.")

2. Yonda koto ga arimasu.

I have read (but in effect, "I've had the experience of reading.")

3. Anata wa Nihon e itta koto ga arimasu ka.

Have you been to Japan? (but in effect, "Have you had the experience of going to Japan?")

The negative is formed in the usual manner: arimasu—arimasen.

It should be noted that the koto ga arimasu construction has an additional connotation: "Did you ever do," or "have you ever done so-and-so?"

1. Anata wa Nihon no eiga o mita koto ga arimasu ka.

Have you EVER seen a Japanese movie?

2. Hai, mita koto ga arimasu. Iie, mita koto ga arimasen.

Yes, I have seen (one). No, I have NEVER seen (one).

Bear in mind that since this form already expresses past experience by the use of the past abrupt form of the verb, be careful NOT to make the final verb past. The verb endings should be either arimasu or arimasen.

See the pattern at the beginning of this chapter.

NI: When combined with the 2nd base of the yodan verbs, the stem of the ichidan verbs followed by iku (to go), kuru (to come), kaeru (to return), or other verbs of motion, it means "to go, to come, to return for the purpose of, in order to, or for." The first verb indicates the purpose for which you go, come, or return. See the pattern at the beginning of this lesson.

1. asob in iku                      to go for a visit (yodan verb)
2. tabe ni iku                      to go to eat (ichidan verb)
3. benkyoo o shi ni ikuto go to study (Chinese verb)

With Chinese verbs, there are two possibilities in deriving condensed constructions utilizing ni. For instance:

1. Shi ni ikimashita—"went to do," but the question is, "went to do what?") Benkyoo o shi ni ikimashita.

Hence, it is more explicit to say:

2. Benkyoo ni ikimashita. (He) went to study.
3. Kaimono ni ikimashita. (He) went shopping.
4. Shigoto ni ikimashita. (He) went to work.

MASHOO: The second base of the yodan verb, the stem of the ichidan verb + mashoo, a verb suffix, gives the probable future form. However, in actual usage, this means "Let us.. ." showing intention of the first person.

**2nd BASE VERB + MASHOO****"Let's . . . !"**

ikimashoo  
 tabemashoo  
 kaimono o shimashoo

Let's go! (*yodan*)  
 Let's eat! (*ichidan*)  
 Let's shop! (Chinese)

When this form is used in a question, it has the meaning of "Shall we ?" indicating a simple question in the future.

ikimashoo ka	Shall we go?
tabemashoo ka	Shall we eat?
kaimono o shimashoo ka	Shall we shop ?

**PROBABLE FUTURE:** The actual probable future is expressed by the form:

**2nd BASE VERB + MASU + DESHOO**

Deshoo is the probable future form of desu and it denotes the idea of "perhaps," "probably," or "may."

1. Ikimasu deshoo. (He) probably will go.
2. Tabemasu deshoo. (He) probably will eat.
3. Kaimono o shimasu deshoo. (He) probably will shop.

The more common form of this construction is:

**ABRUPT VERB + DESHOO**

1. Iku deshoo.
2. Taberu deshoo.
3. Kaimono o suru deshoo.

These actual probable future forms are NEVER used in the "let us.. " sense.

NOUN ADJECTIVE + DESHOO
----------------------------

 = Perhaps, probably, I think.

In this usage, deshoo also indicates probability or uncertainty. It is read with a falling tone.

Ano kata wa Nihonjin deshoo. That person is probably a Japanese.

Kore wa anata no deshoo. This is yours, I think.

Roshiya-go wa muzukashii deshoo. Russian language is probably difficult.

Imagoro Tookyoo wa atsui deshoo. Perhaps Tokyo is hot about now.

When the deshoo is read with a rising tone in the above sentences, it will assume the meaning of "don't you think that.. ?" "don't you suppose that.. ?" as if the speaker is asking for confirmation.

PAST TENSE AND PAST EXPERIENCE: A distinction must be made between the ORDINARY past and the PAST EXPERIENCE past. The latter is ordinarily used to describe unusual or special experience one enjoyed in the past.

1. Kinoo kooen e ikimashita. (I) went to the park yesterday.

2. Nikkoo e itta koto ga(I) have been to Nikko.  
arimasu.

THE VERB "KURU": This verb, together with suru, belongs to the irregular group, i.e., it does not conjugate according to any definite rule. Therefore, the four bases of this verb must be memorized as follows:

KURU	KO
	KI
	KURU
	KURE

Different suffixes (tnasu, tai, tsumori, etc.) are therefore attached to their respective bases as in other conjugating verbs.

KA: You have already learned that ka is equivalent to the English question mark (?). When used as a conjunction, it is equivalent to the English "or":

1. kore ka are—this OR that

2. kyoo ka asu—today OR tomorrow

The above could also be translated: "either this OR that";  
"either today OR tomorrow."

### Fluency Drill

Ikimasu.

Kai ni ikimasu

Hon o kai ni ikimasu

Nihongo no hon o kai ni ikimasu

Depaato e Nihongo no hon o kai ni ikimasu



Gakusei wa depaato e Nihongo no hon o kai ni ikimashita  
Ame ga futte iru node takushii de Nihongo no hon o kai ni ikimashita..

(I) will go

I will go to buy

I will go to buy a book

I will go to buy a Japanese book

I will go to the department store to buy a Japanese book

The student went to department store to buy a Japanese book

Because it is raining (I) went by taxi to buy a Japanese book.

## Substitution Drill

*(Abrupt Past Verb)*

ITTA	} +	KOTO GA ARU
TABETA		
MITA		
SHITA		
etc.		

*(3rd Base Verb)*

IKU	} +	KOTO GA DEKIRU
YOMU		
MIRU		
etc.		

*(2nd Base Verb)*

ASOBI	} NI {	IKU		
TORI			KURU	
KAI				KAERU
M1 (n.c.v.)				
etc.				

## Exercises

- |                           |   |
|---------------------------|---|
| 1. Can you come tomorrow? | Ashita kuru koto ga dekimasu ka.                |
| 2. Yes, I can come.       | Hai, kuru koto ga dekimasu (or, just dekimasu). |
| 3. Can you read Japanese? | Anata wa Nihongo o yomu koto ga dekimasu ka.    |

4. Yes, I can read a little. Hai, sukoshi yomu koto ga dekimasu.
5. Can you speak English? Anata wa Eigo o hanasu koto ga dekimasu ka.
6. No, I cannot (speak). lie, dekimasen.
7. Can you do this? Anata wa kore o suru koto ga dekimasu ka.
8. No, I cannot do this work. lie, kono shigoto o suru koto ga dekimasen.
9. Can you go to Kabuki with me? Anata wa watakushi to issho ni Kabuki ni iku koto ga dekimasu ka.
10. Yes, I can go with you next week. Hai, raishuu issho ni iku koto ga dekimasu.
11. Have you ever been to Japan? Nihon e itta koto ga arimasu ka.
12. No, I have never been to Japan. lie, Nihon e itta koto ga arimasen.
13. Have you ever eaten sashimi (raw fish)? Sashimi o tabeta koto ga arimasu ka.
14. Yes, I have eaten it twice. Hai, ni-do tabeta koto ga arimasu.
15. Have you ever seen a Japanese movie? Nihon no eiga o mita koto ga arimasu ka.
16. No, I have never seen (one) yet. lie, mada mita koto ga arimasen.
17. Have you ever studied Japanese? Nihongo o benkyoo shita koto ga arimasu ka.
18. Yes, I have studied it. Hai, benkyoo shita koto ga arimasu.
19. I am going to buy a ticket. Kippu o kai ni ikimasu.

20. I am going to see Kabuki. Kabuki o mi ni ikimasu.
21. I am going to study. Benkyoo o shi ni ikimasu.
22. I am coming to buy this. Kore o kai ni kimasu.
23. I am coming to watch your television. Anata no uchi no terebi o mi ni kimasu.
24. I am coming to study Japanese. Nihongo o benkyoo shi ni kimasu.
25. I am returning (home) to eat. Tabu ni kaerimasu.
26. I am returning (home) to write a letter. Tegami o kaki ni kaerimasu.
27. Because it is raining hard, we cannot do the sights (sightsee). Hidoku ame ga futte iru kara kem-butsu suru koto ga dekimasen.
28. Because I want to see the Gion Festival, I will go to Gion. Gion Matsuri o mitai kara toraishuu Kyooto e ikimasu. Kyoto next week.
29. Because I saw this movie, I do not want to go. Kono eiga o mita node ikitaku arimasen.
30. Because I am going home to eat lunch, I cannot do this. Chuushoku o tabe ni kaeru kara kore o suru koto ga dekimasen.

Translate into Japanese:

1. Have you ever been in an airplane? No, I have never been in an airplane.

2. I want to see a Japanese play, so let's go on Saturday night.

Note: "So" in English, as used here, signifies the reason of the case for the statement which follows it. Therefore, kara is applicable here.

3. Because it is snowing hard, we cannot go (to) flower viewing in Nara.
4. I went to the department store with Mr. Tanaka to buy a kimono.
5. Have you ever eaten sukiyaki at Suehiro's? No, I haven't (eaten it), but I hear it is very delicious.
6. I do not want to go by streetcar, so please call a taxi immediately.
7. Can you read Japanese? No, I cannot, but I can speak a little.
8. I would like to go mountain climbing but I cannot go this week.
9. Please tell me the name of the largest theater in Tokyo (de ichiban ookii). I hear the Kokusai Gekijoo is the largest, but it is far from here.
10. Let's go to a coffee house to listen to some music. That's a good idea.

Answer in Japanese:

1. Anata no uchi kara gakkoo made aruite iku koto ga dekimasu ka. Naze desu ka.
2. Anata wa Nihon e itta koto ga arimasu ka. Ikitai desu ka. Itsu iku tsumori desu ka.

3. Anata wa sukiyaki o tabeta koto ga arimasu ka. Doko de tabemashita ka.
4. Nichiyooobi ni tomodachi to issho ni yamanobori ni ikimasu ka.
5. Washington no hito-bito (people) wa Ichigatsu ni sakura (cherry blossoms) no hanami ni ikimasu ka. Itsu ikimasu ka.
6. Myooban tomodachi no uchi e asobi ni iku tsumori desu ka. Doko e ikimasu ka.
7. Kono chihoo dewa fuyu ni yuki ga hidoku furimasu ka.
8. Itsu Nihon e Nihongo o benkyoo shi ni ikimasu ka. Fune de ikitai desu ka.
9. Anata wa naze gakkoo de Nihongo o benkyoo shite imasu ka. Nihon e iku tsumori desu ka.
10. Anata wa kotoshi atarashii jidoosha o kau koto ga dekimasu ka. Naze desu ka.
11. Anata wa mainichi chuushoku o tabe ni kaerimasu ka. Naze desu ka.
12. Anata wa Nihongo o kaku koto ga dekimasu ka. Nihon no shimbun o yomu koto ga dekimasu ka. Fude (brush) de kaku koto ga dekimasu ka.
13. Anata wa kissaten e ongaku o kiki ni itta koto ga arimasu ka. Kiki ni ikitai desu ka.

14. Doko de booto ni noru koto ga dekimasu ka. Anata wa soko e itta koto ga arimasu ka.

15. Koko de ichiban ookii eigakan no namae wa nan desu ka. Anata wa soko e tabitabi eiga o mi ni ikimasu ka. Naze desu ka.

Give the negative of the following:

(affirmative) Gakusei wa hon o yomimasu.

(negative) Gakusei wa hon o yomimasen.

1. Sensei wa Nihon e ikimasu.
2. Tanaka-san wa kaerimashita.
3. Watakushi wa benkyoo shimasu.
4. Anata wa shigoto o shimashita.
5. Ano kata o mita koto ga arimasu.
6. Booto ni notta koto ga arimasu.
7. Nihongo o hanasu koto ga dekimasu.
8. Kanji o kaku koto ga dekimasu.
9. Kono shibai wa taihen omoshiroi desu.
10. Kono Nihon no eiga wa nagai desu.
11. Sensei wa san-nin imasu.

12. Watakushi wa fune de Nihon e ikitai desu.
13. Sono jitensha wa watakushi no desu.
14. Kono shibai no kippu wa Brown-san no desu.
15. Watakushi wa sashimi o tabetai desu.
16. Nihon e hon o kai ni ikitai desu.
17. Ashita anata no ie e hanashi ni ikitai desu.
18. Tegami o kaite imasu.
19. San Francisco wa Tookyoo yori ookii desu.
20. Kyoo wa kinoo yori atsui desu.

#### Useful Expressions

##### Temperature (Ono)

1. ATSUI            hot
2. SAMUI           cold
3. ATATAKAI      warm
4. SUZUSHII      cool
5. MUSHIATSUI sultry

Note: The above expressions are used to describe CLIMATIC condition. Kyoo wa atsui (samui, atatakai, suzushii) hi desu.

In addition, the following show the difference in warmth as can be perceived by one's touch.

1. ATSUI            hot            (ATSUI OCHA hot tea)

2. TSUMETAI cold (TSUMETAI TENUGUI cold towel)

3. NURUI lukewarm (used for liquid only)



# CHAPTER 12

## YUUBINKYOKU—POST OFFICE

NOUN ADJ. + NARA VERB	= IF (conditional clause)
-----------------------------	---------------------------

... who ....  
... which ....  
... that .... (relative clause)  
... where ....  
etc.

1st BASE OF VERB + NAKERERA NARIMASEN	= MUST....
--	------------

Beikoku e okuru  
miyage  
\*Beikoku e okuru miyage...

send to America  
gift  
\*gift which (I) will send to  
America...

KINOO BEIKOKU E OKURU  
MIYAGE O KAITTA NODE, SORE  
O YUUBINKYOKU E MOTTE  
YKIMASHITA.

SINCE I BOUGHT A PRESENT  
YESTERDAY WHICH I AM GO-  
ING TO SEND TO THE UNIT-  
ED STATES, I TOOK (IT) TO  
THE POST OFFICE.

(Watakushi): KONO KOZUTSUMI I WANT TO SEND THIS PACK-

Ô BEIKOKU E OKURITAI DESU  
GA, IKURA KAKARIMASU KA.

(Kyokuin): KÔZUTSUMI WA  
KOKO DEWA TORIATSUKAI-  
MASEN. TSUGI NO MADO NI  
MOTTE ITTE KUDASAI.

(Watakushi): AA, SOO DESU KA.  
SHITSUREI SHIMASHITA.  
SORE DEWA NIJU EN KITTE Ô  
GO-MAI TO HAGAKI O JUU-MAI  
KUDASAI.

Beikoku e iku  
funē  
\*Beikoku e iku funē . . .

BEIKOKU E IKU FUNE WA IK-  
KAGETSU NI NAMBEN DEMA-  
SU KA.

funē no bin  
funē no bin ga ii  
\*funē no bin ga ii kara . . .

Beikoku-yuki  
Beikoku-yuki no yubin wa

ikkagetsu ni  
san-shi-hen  
\*ikkagetsu ni san-shi-hen . . .  
demasu

AGE TO THE UNITED STATES,  
BUT HOW MUCH WILL IT  
COST?

(Postal Clerk): WE DO NOT  
HANDLE PACKAGES HERE.  
TAKE IT TO THE NEXT WIN-  
DOW, PLEASE.

OH, IS THAT SO?  
EXCUSE ME!

IN THAT CASE, PLEASE GIVE  
ME FIVE 20-YEN STAMPS,  
AND TEN POST CARDS.

go to America  
ship  
\*ship which goes to America . . .

HOW MANY TIMES A MONTH  
DO SHIPS WHICH GO TO THE  
UNITED STATES LEAVE?

ship's convenience  
ship's convenience is good  
\*because the ship's convenience is  
good . . .  
America bound  
as for American bound mail (nom.  
case)  
in one month  
three or four times  
\*three or four times a month . . .  
depart

(Kyokuia): KONO GORO WA  
FUNO BIN GA I KARA,  
BEIKOKU-YUKI NO YUBIN  
WA IKKAGETSU NI SAN-SHI-  
HEN DEMASU. KEREDOMO  
TAITEI NO HITO WA KOOKU-  
BIN O TSUKAIMASU.

(Watakushi): SOO DESU KA.

amari  
amari takaku arimasen  
nara  
\*amari takaku arimasen nara . . .  
kookubin de  
okurimashoo

AMARI TAKAKU ARIMASEN  
NARA KOOKUBIN DE OKURI-  
MASHOO.

WATAKUSHI WA SOKO DE GO-  
HYAKU EN KITTE O KAIMA-  
SHITA. SOSHITE KOZUTSUMI  
NI HARIMASHITA. SORE KARA  
AKAI EMPITSU DE "KOOKU-  
BIN" TO KAKIMASHITA.  
TSUGI NO MADOGUCHI NI  
MOTTE IKIMASHITA.

SINCE THE SHIP ACCOM-  
MODATIONS ARE GOOD NOW-  
ADAYS, MAIL FOR AMERICA  
LEAVES THREE OR FOUR  
TIMES A MONTH. HOWEVER,  
MOST PEOPLE USE AIR-  
MAIL.

IS THAT SO?

too  
not too expensive  
if  
\*if it is not too expensive . . .  
by airmail  
I shall send

IF IT IS NOT TOO EXPENSIVE,  
I SHALL SEND IT BY AIR  
MAIL.

I BOUGHT A 500-YEN POST-  
AGE STAMP THERE AND  
PLACED IT ON THE PACKAGE.  
AND THEN, WITH A RED  
PENCIL I WROTE "AIR MAIL."

I TOOK IT TO THE NEXT  
WINDOW.

(Watakushi): KÔRE O O-NEGAI  
SHIMASU.

kakime  
ni shimasu

(Kyokuin): KAKITOME NI SHI-  
MASU KA, FUTSUU NI SHIMA-  
SU KA.

daiji na mono  
nara  
\*daiji na mono nara...

DAIJI NA MONO NARA KAKI-  
TOME NO HOO GA II DESHOO.

Ginza de katta  
kimono  
\*Ginza de katta kimono...

(Watakushi): KORE WA KINOO  
GINZA DE KATTA KIMONO  
DESU.  
AMARI TAKAI KIMONO DEWA  
ARIMASEN KARA, FUTSUU DE  
KEKKOO DESU.  
  
KAKARI NO HITO WA KOZU-  
TSUMITO HAKARI NI KAKE-  
MASHITA.

PLEASE TAKE CARE OF THIS.

money order  
to make it...

ARE YOU GOING TO MAKE  
IT REGISTERED OR REG-  
ULAR?

valuable thing  
if  
\*if it is a valuable thing...

IF IT IS A VALUABLE THING,  
REGISTERED MAIL IS PROB-  
ABLY BETTER.

bought on Ginza  
kimono  
\*kimono which (I) bought on Gin-  
za...

THIS IS A KIMONO WHICH I  
BOUGHT ON THE GINZA  
YESTERDAY.

SINCE IT IS NOT A VERY EX-  
PENSIVE KIMONO, REGULAR  
(POSTAGE) IS ALL RIGHT.

THE MAN IN CHARGE PUT  
THE PACKAGE ON THE SCALE  
(WEIGHED THE PACKAGE)

MEKATA WA CHOODO NI-KIRO  
ARIMASHITA.

futsuu yuubin  
nara  
\*futsuu yuubin nara . . .  
moo hyaku gojuu en  
haranakereba narimasen

(Kyokuin): FUTSUU YUUBIN  
NARA, MOO HYAKU GOJUUN EN  
KITTE O HARANAKEREBA  
NARIMASEN. KORE DAKE  
DESU KA.

(Wetakushi): KONO TEGAMI O  
SOKUTATSU DE DASHITAI  
DESU GA, DOKO E MOTTE  
IKANAKEREBA NARIMASEN  
KA.

(Kyokuin): KOKO DE OKURU  
KOTO GA DEKIMASU. FUU-  
TOO NO OMOTE NI ATENA O  
HAKKIRI KAITTE KUDASAI.

THE WEIGHT WAS EXACTLY  
TWO KILOGRAMS (AS FOR  
THE WEIGHT, THERE WERE  
EXACTLY TWO KILOGRAMS).

ordinary mail  
if  
\*if it is ordinary mail . . .  
150 yen more  
must place (attach)

IF IT IS REGULAR MAIL, YOU  
MUST PLACE (ATTACH) 150  
YEN MORE POSTAGE.  
IS THIS ALL?

I WANT TO SEND THIS LET-  
TER BY SPECIAL DELIVERY.  
WHERE MUST I TAKE IT?

IT IS POSSIBLE TO SEND IT  
FROM HERE. PLEASE WRITE  
THE ADDRESSEE'S NAME DIS-  
TINCTLY ON THE FACE OF  
THE ENVELOPE.

tomodachi to  
roku-ji ni  
yuushoku o  
taberu  
yakusoku  
\*tomodachi to roku-ji ni yuushoku o  
taberu yakusoku . . .

with a friend  
at 6 o'clock  
dinner (obj. case)  
eat  
promise  
\*promise to eat dinner at 6 o'clock  
with a friend . . .

WATAKUSHI WA TOMODACHI  
TO ROKU-JI NI YUUSHOKU O  
TABERU YAKUSOKU O SHITE  
IMASHITA\

I HAD PROMISED TO HAVE  
SUPPER WITH MY FRIEND AT  
SIX O'CLOCK.

YUUBINKYOKU NO TOKEI WA  
MOO GO-JI GO-FUN SUGI O  
SASHITE IMASHITA\

THE POST OFFICE CLOCK  
WAS ALREADY POINTING  
TO FIVE AFTER FIVE.

DENSHA DE YONJUUGO-FUN  
KARA ICHI JIKAN KAKARU  
NODE, ISOIDE YUUBINKYO-  
KU O DEMASHITA\

SINCE IT TAKES FROM  
FORTY-FIVE MINUTES TO  
ONE HOUR ON A STREETCAR,  
I LEFT THE POST OFFICE  
HURRIEDLY.

omote de  
matte ita  
matte ita takushii  
\*omote de matte ita takushii . . .  
takushii ni  
tobi-norimashita

in front (place of action)  
was waiting  
taxi which was waiting  
\*taxi which was waiting in front . . .  
into a taxi  
jumped on

SOSHITE OMOTE DE MATTE  
ITA TAKUSHII NI TOBI-NORI-  
MASHITA\

AND I JUMPED INTO THE  
TAXI WHICH WAS WAITING  
IN FRONT.

## Vocabulary List from the Lesson

okuru	(v.t.) to send
miyage	(n.) gift, present, souvenir
okuru miyage	(relative clause construction) "to send gift," or a gift to be sent, a gift which is to be sent. (See I.C. & G.N.)
kyokuin	(n.) postal clerk
motte	("te" form of motsu. See I.C. & G.N.)

motte iku	(or) "to hold and go," or "to take"
motte. iku	
kozutsumi	(n.) package
(ko-zú-tsu-mi)	
kakarimasu	(polite form of kakaru) to cost, require
toriatsukaimasu	(polite form of toriatsukau) to handle
aa	(interjection) oh!
kitte (kit-te)	(n.) postage stamp
hagaki	(n.) postcard
iku fune	(relative clause construction) the boat which goes
ikkagetsu	(n.) one month
demasu	(polite form of deru) to go out, to leave
kono goro	nowadays
bin	(n.) opportunity, occasion, accommodation
san-shi-hen	three or four times (See I.C. & G.N.)
keredomo	(conj.) but, however, nevertheless
taitei (ta-i-te-i)	(n.) the majority, most
taitei no hito	most people
yuubin (yuu-bin)	(n.) mail
kookuuyuubin	(n.) airmail
(koo-kuu-yuu-bin)	
kookuubin	contraction of kookuuyuubin
tsukaimasu	(polite form of tsukau) to use
sore dewa	(or) then, in that case, in that event
dewa	
mo	also, too (See I.C. & G.N.)
okurimashoo	(polite indefinite future form) shall send

harimashita	(v.t.) placed (from haru—to place; in the sense of "to stick," "to paste")
madoguchi	(n.) window, in the sense of "stamp window" or "stamp counter"
kakitome	registered mail (from kakitome yuubiti)
o-negai shimasu	(idio.) Please—It means, literally, "I would like to ask a favor of you," "I would like to make a request," "Will you please take care of this."
futsuu	(n.) the usual, ordinary, regular
futsuu ni suru	to make (it) regular
daiji	(n.) important
daiji na mono	an important, valuable, or precious thing (See I.C. & G.N.)
nara	if (See I.C. & G.N.)
amari	too, very (See I.C. & G.N.)
kekko	(n.) good, fine. When used as a quasi adjective use with na— kekko na shinamono (See I.C. & G.N.)
kakari	(n.) charge, responsibility
kakari no hito	the person in charge
hakari	(n.) scale
kakemashita	(pol. past of kakeru) hung; placed
hakari ni kakeru	to weigh (literally, it means "to hang on the scale")
mekata	(n.) weight
choodo	exactly
kiro	abbreviation of kilogram; standard of weight used in Japan, equivalent to 2.2 pounds.



ni-kiro	two kilograms
moo	more
nakereba	must.
narimasen	
haranakereba	must place (See I.C. & G.N.)
narimasen	
dake	only
sokutatsu	(n.) from sokutatsu yuubin—special delivery
fuutoo (fuu-too)	(n.) envelope
omote	(n.) the surface, or the face side
atena	(n.) addressee
hakkiri	(adv.) plainly, distinctly
dashimashita	(pol. past of dasu) sent, mailed
yuushoku	(n.) same as yuuhatt—evening meal
taberu	(v.t.) to eat (n.c.v.)
yakusoku	(n.) promise
yakusoku o suru	(Chi. v.) to promise
yakusoku o shite . .	had promised
imashita	
tokei	(n.) watch, clock
moo	already
sashite	("te" form of sasu—to point)
isoide	("te" form of isogu—to hurry) "hurried out. ." or "hurriedly" (function here is adverbial)
tobi-norimashita	(v.) jumped on (See I.C. & G.N.)

#### Additional Vocabulary

isogashii (i-so-ga-shii)	(adj.) busy
muzukashii (mu-zu-ka-shii)	(adj.) difficult
wasureru	(v.t.) to forget (n.c.v.)
dooshite	(adv.) why?
anna	(adj. pro.) that kind of.
konna	(adj. pro.) this kind of.
sonna	(adj. pro.) that kind of.
hikui (hi-kú-t)	(adj.) low
itsugoro	about when ?
chikagoro	recently
ura (u-rá)	(n.) back side, opposite of omote
fuu o suru	(Chi. v.) to seal (an envelope)
taisetsu	(n.) important, valuable, same as daiji; taisetsu na kozutsumi.
kawase	(n.) money order
yuubinbako, posuto	(n.) mailbox
dempoo	(n.) telegram, wire, telegraphic message
dempoo o utsu	to send a telegram (utsu—to wire, hit)
benri (bén-ri)	(n.) convenience
benri na	(adj.) convenient
baka	(n.) idiot, fool
baka na	(adj.) brainless, senseless, foolish

### Important Construction and Grammar Notes

**MOTSU:** Motsu (to hold) is used to express possession, ownership, by using the "te" form of motsu—motte + iru. Hence:

1. Boku wa empitsu o motte imasu. I have (possess) a pencil.
2. Anata wa jidoosha o motte imasu ka. Do you have (own) an automobile?

When the "te" form of motsu is combined with iku, it means "take" (along).

1. Eigo no hon o motte ikimasu. (He) will take the English book.
2. Tegami o motte ikimashita. (He) took (along with him) a letter.

When combined with kuru, it means "bring":

1. Mizu o motte kinasai. Bring (me) water.
2. Empitsu o motte kite kudasai. Please bring (me) a pencil.

When used with kaeru, it means "to take home":

1. Brown-san wa rajio (radio) o motte kaerimashita. Mr. Brown took the radio home.
2. Dare ga watakushi no jibiki o motte kaetta ka. Who took my dictionary home?

Note: It has been explained that motsu signifies POSSESSION and OWNERSHIP. Therefore, it has a meaning equivalent to "have" in English. However, "have" is used more widely than for simply showing possession, e.g.,

1. I have a two-week vacation.

2. I have an appointment.
3. I have a language class in the morning.
4. Mr. Tanaka has two sons.

The "have" in the above sentences does not indicate material ownership, so motsu cannot be used. Instead, "ni-shuukan no yasumi ga arimasu," etc., is the correct translation (see p. 80).

SAN-SHI-HEN: Hen is equivalent to do, a numeral classifier for "times." Hence, shi-hen is "four times." The "h" in hen is changed to "p" or "b" after certain sounds: ippen, ni-hen, samben, shi-hen, go-hen, roppen, shichi-hen, hachi-hen, kyuu-hen, jippen (or) juppen. Kai is also used as classifier to indicate frequency of occurrence. San-ski expresses the idea of samben kara shi-hen made, or samben ka shi-hen. It is equivalent to the English "three or four times." Similarly:

1. ichi-ni-hen (ichi-ni-kai)—once or twice
2. ni-samben (ni-san-kai)—two or three times
3. namben (nan-kai)—how many times?

DAIJI NA MONO: You have learned in an earlier lesson that the postposition no is used after certain nouns or substantives to obtain adjective forms. Therefore:

1. Eigo no hon—an English language book
2. chikaku no ie—a nearby house

3. *migi no hito*—the person on the right

In some cases, *na* is used:

1. *daiji na mono*—a valuable thing

2. *baka na hito*—a foolish person

3. *benri na densha*—a convenient street car

4. *kirei na hana*—a beautiful (or a pretty) flower

Now, what is the criteria for using *no* or *na*? The rule which will be given is not infallible, but it is a good guide to follow.

**THE RULE:** When it is a concrete noun, use *no*. For abstract nouns, use *na*. Such words as convenient, beauty, foolish, etc., are abstract, hence:

1. *benri na*

2. *kirei na*

3. *baka na*

**RELATIVE CLAUSES:** A relative clause construction is one of the most important constructions in the Japanese language.

At first it may be a little difficult to recognize relative clauses, since there are no relative pronouns to identify them, but construction identification is fairly simple.

(A) Remember that in English the relative clause follows the word it modifies, and it is usually preceded by relative pronouns (who, which, where, that, etc.), for example, "the movie which i saw" or "the man to whom i talked," etc., but in Japanese the rule that "the modifier always precedes the word it modifies" holds true in this case also.

(B) Reduced to its simplest form, a relative clause contains just two elements, namely, a VERB and a NOUN. The verb is usually in the abrupt form, but not necessarily so.

VERB + NOUN
-------------

- |                     |        |  |
|---------------------|--------|--|
| 1. katta            | kitte  | —the "purchased postage stamp," or the "postage stamp which I purchased" |
| 2. iku              | fune   | —the "to go ships," or "ships which go"                                  |
| 3. hanashite<br>iru | hito   | —the "speaking person," or the "person who is speaking"                  |
| 4. okuru            | miyage | —the "to send gift," or the "gift which I am going to send"              |
| 5. okuritai         | miyage | —the "want to send gift," or the "gift which I want to send"             |
| 6. aruite<br>kaeru  | hito   | —the "walk home person," or the "person who is walking home"             |

(C) Now let us add an OBJECT. The form is

OBJECT O + VERB + NOUN
------------------------

1. Nihotigo o hanashite iru hito—The man who is speaking Japanese.

2. Hon o yonde iru gakusei—The student who is reading a book..

(D) BASIC FORM plus Location. The form is:

LOCATION + VERB + NOUN
------------------------

1. Yuubinkyoku de katta kitte—The postage stamps which I bought at the Post Office..

2. Beikoku e iku fune—The ships which go to the United States.

3. Kado de hanashite iru hito—The man who is talking on the corner.

4. Tsukue no tie ni aru hon—The book which is on the table.

(E) BASIC FORM plus LOCATION plus OBJECT. The form is:

LOCATION + OBJECT O + VERB + NOUN
-----------------------------------

1. Kado de Nihongo o hanashite iru hito—The man who is speaking Japanese on the corner..

The relative position of the "object" and "location" may be interchanged:

Nihongo o kado de.

(F) BASIC FORM plus TIME. The form is:

**TIME + VERB + NOUN**

1. Kinoo katta kitte—The postage stamps which I bought yesterday.

(G) BASIC FORM plus TIME plus LOCATION plus OBJECT. The form is:

**TIME + LOCATION + OBJECT + VERB + NOUN**

1. Kinoo kado de Nihongo o hanashite ita hito—The person who was speaking Japanese on the corner yesterday.

The relative position of "time," "location," and "object" does not follow a hard and fast rule. Any combination such as location, time, object: object, time, location, etc., is possible. However, in the beginning, learning the order described above may be helpful.

**HOW USED:** A relative clause may be used nominatively, objectively, or predicatively. The entire clause is treated as a single word, and all the rules concerning postpositions apply to the clauses. Hence, if used nominatively, a relative clause takes a nominative postposition; used objectively, the objective postposition, etc.:

1. Kado de hanashite ita hito o mimashita. (obj.) (I) saw the person who was speaking on the corner.



2. Kado de hanashite iru hito wa Brown-san desu. (nom.) The person who is speaking on the corner is Mr. Brown.

3. Brown-san wa kado de hanashite iru hito desu. (pred.) Mr. Brown is the person who is speaking on the corner.

### Relative Clause Summary

The word order required in relative clause construction may be summarized as follows:

PATTERNS

				1.	NOUN	
			2.	VERB	+	NOUN
		3.	OBJECT	VERB	+	NOUN
	4.	LOCATION	OBJECT	VERB	+	NOUN
5.	TIME	LOCATION	OBJECT	VERB	+	NOUN
	(when)	(where)	(what)			
				1.	hito	
			2.	hanashite iru	hito	
		3.	Nihongo o	hanashite iru	hito	
	4.	kado de	Nihongo o	hanashite iru	hito	
5.	ima	kado de	Nihongo o	hanashite iru	hito	

TRANSLATIONS

1. The person
2. The person who is speaking
3. The person who is speaking Japanese
4. The person who is speaking Japanese on the corner
5. The person who is speaking Japanese on the corner now

Of course, there are variations of the above mentioned patterns, as follows:

# PATTERNS

			1.	NOUN
		2.	VERB	NOUN
	3.	LOCATION	VERB	NOUN
4.	TIME	LOCATION	VERB	NOUN
	(when)	(where)		
			1.	kitte
		2.	katta	kitte
	3.	yuubinkyoku de	katta	kitte
4.	kinoo	yuubinkyoku de	katta	kitte

## TRANSLATIONS

1. The stamp
2. The stamp which I bought
3. The stamp which I bought at the post office
4. The stamp which I bought at the post office yesterday

NARA: Nara is a conditional postpositive particle meaning "if." It is a contraction of nor aba.

At this point recall the explanation of subordinate clauses given on page 135, when kara was discussed. The same rule applies with nara.

1. SUBORDINATE CLAUSE kara + principal clause Ashita wa Nichiyoubi desu kara gakkoo e ikimasen. (because .)

2. SUBORDINATE CLAUSE nara + principal clause Ashita (ga) Nichiyoubi nara yamanobori ni ikimasu. (if...)

(a) when used with a SUBSTANTIVE, it takes the form: Doyoobi nara (if it is Saturday)

(b) when used with a VERB: yuku no nara or yuku nara (if you go)

(c) with an ADJECTIVE: muzukashii nara (if it is difficult)

# AFFIRMATIVE

# NEGATIVE

- |                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| 1. substantive + nara      | substantive + de nai nara* (This is a contraction of de arimasen nara.) |
| 2. arimasu nara (aru nara) | arimasen nara (nai nara)  |
| 3. imasu nara (iru nara)   | imasen nara (inai nara)   |
| 4. kakimasu nara           | (kaku kakimasen nara (kakanai nara**))                                  |
| 5. tabemasu nara           | (taberu tabemasen nara (tabenai nara))                                  |

Note: \*nai is the abrupt form of arimasen.

\*\*nai as abrupt negative suffix is explained on p. 309.

AMARI (or ANMARI): Amari is used in the same sense as sugiru, only less emphatic. This is used with an affirmative verb to mean "too much ..." or "so much..." expressing that something is in excess.

1. Sono empitsu wa amari takai desu: That pencil is too expensive.
2. Sono empitsu wa taka-sugimasu: That pencil is too expensive.

Amari + a negative verb has the meaning of "not so . . .," "not too much .. .," "not very much...."

1. Nihongo wa amari muzukashiku wa arimasen: Japanese is not so difficult.
2. Shibai niwa amari ikitaku arimasen: I do not want very much to go to a play.

Amari and sugiru are often combined:

1. Sono empitsu wa amari taka-sugimasu: That pencil is too expensive.

When it is desired to express a situation which is quite in excess such as "This is really too difficult," or "I am really tired" anmari + nimo can be used.

1. Kore wa amari nimo muzukashii desu.
2. Watakushi wa anmari nimo tsukaremashita node yasumimashoo.

Or, it can be used in the following pattern:

ANMARI NIMOSUGIRU

1. Kore wa anmari nimo muzukashisugimasu.
2. Watakushi wa anmari nimo tsukaresugimashita node yasumimashoo.

NOUN + NI SURU: This construction is used to indicate the meaning "make it Noun" or "decide on Noun." Study the following English expressions:

1. "What will it be?" (at a—Nani ni shimasu ka.  
restaurant)  
"Make it chocolate ice—Chokoreeto aisū kuriimu ni  
cream." shimasu.  
("I'll decide on chocolate.")
2. "Which one will it be?" —Dore ni shimasu ka.  
"Make it this red one." —Akai no ni shimasu.  
("I'll decide on this red  
one.")
3. "What day will it be?" —Nan-nichi ni shimasu ka.

NAKEREBA NARIMASEN: This is the "must" form. It is attached to the first base of the yodan verbs and the stem of ichidan verbs.

*KA + nakereba narimasen ("must" form of iku.)*  
 I    ki  
      ku  
      ke  
      ko

MI + NAKEREBA NARIMASEN ("must" form of miru)

1. ikanakereba narimasen: must go
2. orinakereba narimasen: must get off
3. shinakereba narimasen: must do
4. konakereba narimasen: must come

The past of the "must" form is formed by adding the past tense of desu, deshita.

1. ikanakereba narimasen deshita: had to go
2. orinakereba narimasen deshita: had to get off

3. shinakereba narimasen deshita: had to do
4. konakereba narimasen deshita: had to come

The abrupt form of this is konakereba naranakatta. (see p. 309)

The negative of this, "don't have to .," will be explained later, (see p. 403)

**MO AND DAKE:** Mo means "also" and dake means "only." They are similar in that they restrict, or limit, the noun with which they are used. The postposition mo replaces nominative and objective postpositions (wa, ga, and o).

Study the following examples carefully and note the subtle difference in meaning:

1. Watakushi                      mo I, also, will go to school on Friday  
Kinyoobi ni gakkoo e (indicates that others will go)  
iku.
2. Watakushi wa Kinyoobi I will go to school on Friday also.  
ni mo gakkoo e iku.            (in addition to other days)
3. Watakushi wa Kinyoobi I will also go to school on Friday,  
ni i gakkoo e mo iku.        (in addition to other places)

**DAKE** also has the following restrictions on the noun it is used with. Dake replaces the nominative and objective postpositions.

1. Watakushi dake Kinyoobi ni Only I will go to school on  
gakkoo e iku.                      Friday.

2. Watakushi wa Kinyoobi ni I go to school only on Friday.  
dake gakkoo e iku.
3. Watakushi wa Kinyoobi ni I go only to school on Friday  
gakkoo e dake iku. (and nowhere else).

DAKE: Shika is used only with negative verbs, and it means "only." The verb meaning is changed to positive.

Dake means "only" or "just," but it is used with affirmative verbs, or negative verbs in the usual manner with the usual meaning. Postposition ga may be used to emphasize the subject.

1. dake (ga) arimasu: there is only..
2. dake (ga) arimasen: only there isn't
  - (a) Kono heya no naka niwa hon dake (ga) arimasu:  
There are only books in this room.
  - (b) Kono heya no naka niwa hon dake (ga) arimasen:  
Only books are not in this room.

As explained above both SHIKA. MASEN and DAKE mean "only." However there is a nuance in their usage which can be explained as follows:

SHIKA MASEN, used with a negative verb, has a negative connotation. The emphasis is on the negative aspect of the expression while DAKE stresses the positive. In this connection, it might be appropriate to introduce BAKARI which means "just," "nothing but. ." in the sense of "at the exclusion of all others."

Ano hito wa He speaks nothing but Japanese  
Nihongo shika (because he cannot speak any  
hanashimasen. other language).

Ano hito wa He speaks only Japanese  
Nihongo dake (although he can speak other  
hanashimasu. languages).

Ano hito wa He speaks just Japanese  
Nihongo bakari (excluding other languages he  
hanashimasu. may be able to speak).

TOBI-NORIMASHITA: Such a compound verb is common in Japanese to make the expression more vivid. This example is a combination of two verbs—tobu (jump) + noru (go on): jump aboard, jump on, jump on board. The meaning of a compound verb is derived from the combination of each verb.

## 2 ND + VERB

### BASE

ugoki	+hajimeru (move begin —begin to move)
kai	+aruku (buy walk —go around buying)
tiori	+kaeru (ride change—transfer trains, buses, etc.)

SECOND BASE OF THE VERB (or CONTINUATIVE BASE): As demonstrated above, the second base of the verb is often the base to which another verb, or other words, are attached to form compound words. Remember that for ichidan verbs (n.c.v.), the stem is used. Thus, this base is called *renyookei*, or "continuative base."

hanasu (speak) + au (meet)—hanashi-au (discuss)



hataraku (work) + sugiru (exceed)—hataraki-sugiru  
(overwork)

taberu (eat)+ owaru (end)—tabe-owaru (finish  
eating)

yomu (read) + nikui (difficult)—yomi-nikui (hard to  
read)

tsukau (use) + yasui (easy)—tsukai-yasui (easy to  
use)

## Fluency Drill

I

tabete ita hito

chooshoku o tabete ita hito

hoteru de chooshoku o tabete ita hito

kesa hoteru de chooshoku o tabete ita hito

kesa ku-ji ni hoteru de chooshoku o tabete ita hito

kesa ku-ji ni Amerikajin no tomodachi to hoteru de  
chooshoku o tabete ita hito

Note: (a) In this exercise, note the postpositions.

(b) The word order need not conform to the examples given  
here. Time, location, etc., can be interchanged with the proper  
postpositions

the man who was eating

the man who was eating breakfast

the man who was eating breakfast at the hotel

the man who was eating breakfast at the hotel this morning

the man who was eating breakfast at the hotel this morning at

9:00

the man who was eating breakfast at the hotel this morning at  
9:00 with an  
American friend

II

yonda hon

yonda Eigo no hon

kinoo yonda Eigo no hon

Kinoo yonda Eigo no hon wa muzukashii deshita.

Kinoo gakkoo de yonda Eigo no hon wa muzukashii deshita.

Kinoo gakkoo no toshokan de yonda Eigo no hon wa  
muzukashii deshita.

the book which (I) read .

the English book which I read .

the English book which I read yesterday

The English book which I read yesterday was difficult.

The English book which I read yesterday at school was  
difficult.

The English book which I read yesterday at the school's  
library was difficult.

Substitution Drill

*(Noun)*

DOYOBI	}	+	NARA
ANATA			
NIHONJIN			
etc.			

*(3rd Base of Verb)*

HATARAKU	}	+	NARA
TABERU			
BENKYO SURU			
etc.			

*(Adj.)*

TAKAI	}	+	NARA
TABETAI			
ISOGASHIKU NAI			
etc.			

*(Abrupt Past)*

MITA	}	+	<i>(Noun)</i>	
UTTA			{	EIGA
MOTTE KITA				HON
etc.				JIDOOSHA

*(1st Base of Verb)*

IKA	}	+	NAKEREBNA NARIMASEN (DESHITA)
YOMA			
KAWA			
SHI			
KO			
etc.			

Exercises

1. If it is Sunday I will go.      Nichiyooobi nara ikimasu.
2. If I were you I wouldn't buy Watakushi ga anata nara  
(it).      kaimasen.
3. If it is a Cadillac it is Cadillac nara takai desu.  
expensive.
4. If it is tomorrow I cannot Ashita nara watakushi wa  
go.      iku koto ga dekimasen.
5. If you are going I will not Anata ga iku nara watakushi  
go.      wa iki-masen.
6. If you are (going to) buy (it) Anata ga kau nara watakushi  
I      wa uri-  
will not sell (it).      masen.
7. If it is raining, we will not Ame ga futte iru nara  
(go) sightseeing.      kembutsu shi-masen.
8. If it is easy, I can read it.      Yasashii nara yomu koto ga  
dekimasu.
9. If it is hot, open the Atsui nara mado o akenasai.  
window.
10. If it is cold, close the door.      Samui nara to o shimenasai.
11. If you want to see Kabuki, Kabuki o mitai nara asa  
go in the morning.      ikinasai.
12. If you want to buy a radio, Rajio o kaitai nara kono  
this store is cheap.      mise wa yasui desu.
13. The movie which I saw was Watakushi ga mita eiga wa  
old.      furui deshita.
14. The car which I bought is Watakushi ga katta jidoosha  
good.      wa yoi desu.
15. The man who is teaching Nihongo o oshiete iru hito  
Japanese is Mr. Ito.      wa Itoo-san desu.
16. The stores which are in the Ginza ni aru mise wa takai  
Ginza are expensive.      desu.

17. The student who came here is Jiro.                      Koko ni kita gakusei wa Jiroo desu.
18. I must study tonight.                      Komban benkyoo shinakereba narimasen.
19. I must write a letter.                      Tegami o kakanakereba narimasen.
20. I must send this package.                      Kono kozutsumi o okuranakereba narimasen.
21. I must go to buy a magazine.                      Zasshi o kai ni ikanakereba narimasen.
22. I must go to teach Japanese.                      Nihongo o oshie ni ikanakereba narimasen.
23. I must take this dictionary home.                      Kono jibiki o motte kaeranakereba narimasen.
24. Only the teacher came.                      Sensei dake kimashita.
25. I want to read this book only.                      Kono hon dake o yomitai desu.
26. I will go only to the bookstore.                      Honya e dake ikimasu.
27. I saw only a child.                      Kodomo dake o mimashita.

Translate into Japanese:

I

The student who bought the car came.

Mr. Brown, who is speaking, is an English teacher.

The book which I want to buy is sold out.

The present which I am going to send is this.

This is the book which I must read by tomorrow. (asu made ni  
.)

The person who is walking is an American student.

The teacher who went to see the play did not come to school today.

The foreign student who went to the concert was unable to eat supper.

The man who is working at the factory now is Mr. Jones.

The day before yesterday I bought a present at Daimaru which I am going to send to California.

## II

I have a red hat.

I brought my textbook to my class.

I don't want to take the magazine home.

Please bring my Japanese dictionary today.

He did not bring the gift.

## III

The train leaves at 10:15 p.m.

The airplane left for New York yesterday.

I want to leave the class immediately.

The bus does not leave in the morning.

#### IV

I go to school four or five times a week.

The train leaves the station three or four times a day.

Does the train leave for New York once a month?

Most people go to the theater once a week.

Note: "Number of times in a specified period of time" construction, such as "once a week" or "twice a year" is expressed by (period) NI (frequency) —issshuukan NI ichi-do, ichi-nen NI ni-do.

#### V

I, too, will go hiking tomorrow.

The teacher does not like Kabuki either.

I also wanted to go to the concert.

I don't like this department store either.

The teacher and the student also went to see the play.

## VI

Give me one more.

I placed an additional five-cent stamp on the special delivery letter.

Please handle one more package.

Has he gone to the post office already? (moo—already)

I have already sent the gift.

## VII

I studied Japanese, but my Japanese is still poor.

I like ice cream, but I am unable to eat it.

The students went to the concert; however, I stayed at home.

The stamp was \$1.20; however, I had only one dollar bill.

I like to go hiking; however, it is raining today.

## VIII

If it is Saturday, I can go to the Post Office.



If it is too big, I cannot send it today.

If you leave, I will leave too.

If the weather is bad, the airplane will not leave this afternoon.

If it costs 35c, I will not buy it because it is too expensive.

## IX

This book is a very valuable book.

He speaks poor Japanese.

The airplane is a convenient thing.

She is a very beautiful woman.

An automobile is a more convenient thing than a bicycle.

## X

It isn't too far.

This merchandise isn't very cheap.

Since registered mail is not too expensive, please send it by registered mail.

Since Nara is not too convenient, I like Osaka better.

Since it is not raining too much, let's go mountain climbing.

## XI

You must study Japanese tonight.

You must place an eight-cent stamp on regular mail.

I must send this special delivery letter immediately.

You must write the addressee's name distinctly on the letter.

Since it is raining, I must stay at home.

Since today is Monday, I must go to school.

## XII

Is that all?

Is it only you ?

Is it today only?

I want to study Japanese only.

Shall we teach only the foreign students?

Only my book is not on the table.

Answer in Japanese: (Some questions are based on the story in the main text.)

1. Kono hito wa nani o kaimashita ka.
2. Doko e motte ikimashita ka.
3. Kono kozutsumi o doko e okuritai no desu ka.
4. Kakari no hito wa kozutsumi o sugu ni toriatsukaimashita ka. (sugu ni— immediately)
5. Sore kara doko e motte ikimashita ka.
6. Tsugi no mado de nani o kaimashita ka.
7. Kyoto kara Hiroshima e iku kisha wa doko kara demasu ka.
8. Beikoku-yuki no fune wa ikkagetsu ni nan-do deru to iimashita ka.
9. Minna wa doko de kitte o kaimasu ka.
10. Futsuu yuubin to kookuubin dewa dochira ga takai desu ka.
11. Daiji na mono wa nan de okurimasu ka.
12. Yuubinkyoku dewa kozutsumi o nani ni kakemasu ka.
13. America dewa futsuu yuubin ni ikura no kitte o haranakereba narimasen ka.
14. Fuutoo no omote ni nani o kakimasu ka.

15. Tomodachi to yakusoku o shita koto ga arimasu ka.  
Donna yakusoku desu ka.

16. Anata no tokei wa nan-ji desu ka.

17. Omoi kozutsumi nara kookuubin no hoo ga yasui deshoo ka.

18. Atena wa fuutoo no omote ni kakimasu ka, ura ni kakimasu ka.

19. Kono ookii kozutsumi wa yuubinbako ni ireru koto ga dekimasen (ireru—"to put in"). Doko e motte ikanakereba narimasen ka.

20. Koko kara Tookyoo made futsuubin nara ikkagetsu gurai kakarimasu ka. Nan-nichi gurai kakarimasu ka.

### Useful Expressions Feelings (Kimochi)

TSUKAREMASHITA. I'm tired, (n.c.v. tsukareru)

AT AMA GA ITAI I have a headache (literally, "head is painful"). Therefore, if you wish to say, "I have a stomach ache," the expression is onaka ga itai desu.

ONAKA GAI am hungry (literally, "the stomach is empty").  
SUKIMASHITA.

ONAKA GA IPPAI am not hungry ("the stomach is full").  
DESU.

KIBUN GA II DESU. I feel well (used when you feel well physically). For example, a sick

person after a good night's rest will say, "Kesa wa kibun ga ii desu."

KIBUN GA WARUII don't feel well (due to internal DESU. physical conditions).

KIMOCCHI GAI don't feel good (because of some WARUI DESU. EXTERNAL cause, such as seeing a gruesome sight, shock, fright, etc.).

KIMOCCHI GA III feel good (because it is cool, after a DESU. refreshing bath, etc., due to EXTERNAL reasons).

# CHAPTER 13

## SUKIYAKI O TABE NI IKU—

### GOING OUT FOR SUKIYAKI

VERB + KOTO NI SURU	= DECIDE TO...
NOUN + NI SURU	DECIDE ON...

"TE" FORM OF THE VERB + KARA	= AFTER...
------------------------------	------------

"TE" FORM OF THE VERB (WA) IKEMASEN...	= MUST NOT... DON'T HAVE TO... NEED NOT...
--	--

yuubinkyoku o  
dete kara  
\*yuubinkyoku o dete kara...  
isoide itta  
node  
\*isoide itta node...  
choodo roku-ji ni  
yakusoku shita  
tokoro  
\*yakusoku shita tokoro de...  
tomodachi ni  
aimashita  
\*choodo roku-ji ni tomodachi  
ni aimashita

Post Office  
after leaving  
\*after leaving the Post Office...  
hurriedly went  
because  
\*because (I) went in a hurry...  
exactly at 6 o'clock  
promised  
place  
\*at the promised place...  
with (my) friend  
met  
\*met my friend at exactly 6 o'clock

WATAKUSHI WA YUUBIN-

AFTER LEAVING THE POST

KYOKU O DETE KARA ISOIDE

OFFICE, SINCE I WENT IN A

ITTA NODE, CHOODO ROKU-JI  
NI YAKUSOKU SHITA TOKORO  
DE TOMODACHI NI AIMASHI-  
TA.

(Watakushi): YAA, CHOODO MA  
NI AIMASHITA WATAKUSHI  
WA ONAKA GA SUKIMASHITA.  
ANATA WA IKAGA DESU KA.

watakushi mo  
taihen  
onaka ga sukimashita

(Tomodachi): WATAKUSHI MO  
TAIHEN ONAKA GA SUKIMA-  
SHITA NANI-KA OISHII MONO  
GA TABETAI DESU NEE.

(Watakushi): YOOSHOKU O TA-  
BEMASHOO KA, WASHOKU O  
TABEMASHOO KA.

(Tomodachi): WASHOKU NO  
HOO GA SUKI DESU.

kono atari ni aru  
ii ryooriya  
\*kono atari ni aru ii ryooriya...  
shitte imasu ka

KONO ATARI NI ARU II RYOO.

HURRY, I MET MY FRIEND IN  
(or AT) THE PROMISED PLACE  
AT EXACTLY SIX O'CLOCK.

AH, I MADE IT JUST ON  
TIME! I'M HUNGRY!  
HOW ABOUT YOU?

I, too  
very much  
am hungry

I'M VERY HUNGRY, TOO.  
I WANT TO EAT SOMETHING  
GOOD!

SHALL WE EAT WESTERN  
FOOD OR JAPANESE FOOD?

I LIKE JAPANESE FOOD  
BETTER.

located in this neighborhood  
good eating place  
\*good eating place in this neigh-  
borhood...  
do you know?

DO YOU KNOW OF A GOOD

RIYA O SHITTE IMASU KA.

(Watakushi): SUEHIRO NO SUKI-  
YAKI WA TAIHEN OISHII SOO  
DESU KARA SUEHIRO NI SHI-  
MASHOO.\

(Tomodachi): SENGETSU KOUBE  
DE SUKIYAKI O TABEMASHITA  
GA TAIHEN OISHII DESHITA.  
SUEHIRO NO SUSHI WA DOO  
DESU KA.

(o)sushi mo  
naka naka  
oishii soo desu

(Watakushi): (O)SUSHI MO NAKA  
NAKA OISHII SOO DESU.\

gohan o  
tabete kara  
\*gohan o tabete kara . . .  
eiga o  
mi ni ikimashoo

GOHAN O TABETE KARA EIGA  
O MI NI IKIMASHOO.\

Suchiro to iu ryooriya wa  
watakushi-tachi ga  
tatte  
hanashite ita

EATING PLACE LOCATED  
AROUND HERE?

SINCE IT IS SAID THAT SUKI-  
YAKI AT SUEHIRO'S IS VERY  
DELICIOUS, LET US DECIDE  
ON SUEHIRO'S.

LAST MONTH I HAD SUKI-  
YAKI IN KOBE, AND IT WAS  
VERY DELICIOUS.

HOW IS SUEHIRO'S SUSHI?

sushi too  
very  
I hear (it) is delicious

I HEAR SUSHI IS QUITE  
DELICIOUS ALSO.

meal (obj. case)  
after eating  
\*after eating the meal . . .  
movie (obj. case)  
let's go to see

AFTER EATING DINNER,  
LET'S GO TO SEE A MOVIE.

eating place called Suchiro  
we  
were standing (and)  
were talking



tokoro kara  
\*watakushi-tachi ga tatte  
hanashite ita tokoro kara . . .  
\*chikakatta node . . .

SUEHIRO TO IU RYOORIYA  
WA WATAKUSHI-TACHI GA .....  
TATTE HANASHITE ITA TO-  
KORO KARA CHIKAKATTA  
NODE ARUITE KIMASHITA.

Suchiro ni  
haitte  
\*Suchiro ni haitte . . .  
zashiki ni  
agaru  
to  
\*zashiki ni agaru to . . .

jochuu ga  
sugu ni  
ocha to kondatehyoo o  
motte kimashita

SUEHIRO NI HAITTE, ZASHIKI  
NI AGARU TO JOCHUU GA  
SUGU (NI) OCHA TO KONDATE-  
HYOO O MOTTE KIMASHITA.

(Watakushi): ANATA GA CHUU-  
MON O . . .

(Tomodachi): NANI NI SHIMASU  
KA.

from the place where (rel. cl.)  
\*from the place where we were  
standing and talking . . .  
\*because (it) was near . . .

SINCE THE EATING PLACE  
CALLED SUEHIRO WAS NEAR  
(FROM) WHERE WE WERE  
STANDING AND TALKING,  
WE WALKED THERE.

into Suchiro  
entered (and)  
\*entered Suehiro and . . .  
to a room  
go up  
when  
\*when we went up and into the  
room . . .  
maid (nom. case)  
immediately  
tea and a menu (obj. case)  
brought

WHEN WE ENTERED SUE-  
HIRO'S AND WENT INTO THE  
ROOM, THE WAITRESS IM-  
MEDIATELY BROUGHT TEA  
AND A MENU.  
WILL YOU DO THE ORDER-  
ING?  
WHAT SHALL WE DECIDE  
ON?

(Watakushi): SUKIYAKI GA II  
DESU NE. SUKIYAKI NI SHITE  
KUDASAI.

(Tomodachi): SUKIYAKI O NI-  
NIN MAE KUDASAI.  
SORE KARA GOHAN O TAKU-  
SAN KUDASAI. SORE DAKE  
DESU.

JŌCHUU WA NIKU YA YASAI  
YA TŌFU NO HAITTA OOKII  
SARA O MOTTE KIMASHITA.

naifu to fooku o  
tsukatte wa ikemasen

(Watakushi): NAIFU TO FŌKŪ  
O TSUKATTE WA IKEMASEN.  
HASHI DE TABERU KOTO GA  
DEKIMASU KA.

(Tomodachi): IIE, DEKIMASEN.  
TSUKAIKATA O ŌSHIETE  
KUDASAI.

SUKIYAKI IS FINE. PLEASE  
MAKE IT SUKIYAKI.

PLEASE GIVE US TWO  
ORDERS OF SUKIYAKI.  
AND THEN GIVE US LOTS OF  
RICE. THAT WILL BE ALL.

THE WAITRESS BROUGHT A  
LARGE PLATE WHICH CON-  
TAINED SUCH THINGS AS  
MEAT, VEGETABLES,  
SOYBEAN CAKES, ETC.

knife and fork (obj. case)  
don't use

DON'T USE A KNIFE AND  
FORK.

CAN YOU EAT WITH CHOP-  
STICKS?

NO, I CANNOT.

PLEASE SHOW ME (HOW) TO  
USE THEM.

niku ya yasai o  
nimasu  
kara  
\*niku ya yasai o nimasu kara . . .

anata wa  
ryoori no shikata o  
mite inasai  
\*anata wa ryoori no shikata o mite  
inasai . . .

(Watakushi): ÔSHIETE ÂGEMA-  
SHOO.

DEWA WATAKUSHI GA NIKU  
YA YASAI O NIMASU KARA  
ANATA WA RYOORI NO SHI-  
KATA O MITE INASAI.

(Tomodachi): NAKA NAKA IT  
NOI GA SHIMASU, NE.

ICHIIJIKAN ATO DE:

(Watakushi): TAIHEN OISHI-  
KATTA NODE ZUIBUN TAKU-  
SAN TABEMASHITA.

dezzato wa  
nani ni shimasu ka

DEZAATO WA NANI NI  
SHIMASU KA.

(Tomodachi): MÔO ÔNAKA GA

meat and vegetables (obj. case)  
cook  
because  
\*because I will cook the meat and  
vegetables . . .  
you  
cooking method (obj. case)  
watch  
\*you watch how (I) cook . . .

I SHALL SHOW YOU.

THEN, SINCE I AM GOING TO  
COOK THE MEAT AND VEGE-  
TABLES, YOU WATCH (HOW)  
I COOK.

IT CERTAINLY SMELLS  
GOOD, DOESN'T IT?

ONE HOUR LATER:

SINCE IT WAS VERY DELI-  
CIOUS, I CERTAINLY ATE A  
LOT!

as for dessert  
what to decide on

WHAT SHALL WE HAVE FOR  
DESSERT?

I AM FULL ALREADY.

IPPAI DESU. KAERIMASHOO.  
CHO'TTO, IKURA DESU KA.

gochisoo shimasu  
kara  
\*gochisoo shimasu kara...  
haratte wa ikemasen

(Watakushi): WATAKUSHI GA  
GOCHISOO SHIMASU KARA  
ANATA WA HARATTE WA  
IKEMASEN.

(Jochuu): Ô)KANJOO WA  
CHÔODO NI-SEN KYU-UHYAKU  
EN DESU.

WATAKUSHI WA SEN EN-  
SATSU O SAN-MAI DASHI-  
MASHITA.

(Watakushi): ÔTSURI WA  
IRIMASEN.

(Jochuu): ÂRIGATOO GOZAI-  
MASHITA.

ryooriya o  
dete kara  
\*ryooriya o dete kara...  
eiga o  
mi ni iku  
koto ni ahimashita

RYOORIYA O DETE KARA EIGA  
Ô MI NI IKU KOTO NI SHÎMA-  
SHITA.

LET'S GO HOME.

OH, SAY, HOW MUCH IS IT?

(I) will treat (you)  
because  
\*because I will treat you...  
(you) must not pay

SINCE I AM GOING TO TREAT  
YOU, YOU MUST NOT PAY.

THE (AMOUNT OF THE)  
CHECK IS EXACTLY 2000 YEN.

I TOOK OUT THREE 1000 YEN  
BILLS.

I DON'T WANT THE CHANGE.  
(KEEP THE CHANGE.)  
THANK YOU.

restaurant  
after leaving  
\*after leaving the restaurant...  
movies (obj. case)  
go to see  
decided

AFTER LEAVING THE RES-  
TAURANT WE DECIDED TO  
GO TO SEE A MOVIE.

## Vocabulary List from the Lesson

deru (n.c.v.) to go out, to leave, (place) O deru.  
(Associate postposition o when leaving a place.)  
dete kara after (I) leave, after leaving (See I.C. & G.N.)  
au (v.i.) to meet

aimashita	(pol. past of au) met
	nimet (somebody) (This takes the postposition NI
aimashita	to indicate the person whom one meets. Sensei NI aimashita.)
yaa	(interj.) oh!
ma ni au	(v.i.) to be on time (takes the postposition NI for "to be on time for a class, train, etc." Kurasu NI ma ni au.)
onaka	ga(I am) hungry.
sukimashita	
nani-ka	something (See I.C. & G.N.)
gochisoo	(n.) good thing to eat, delicious food
nee	(interj.) isn't it?
yooshoku	(n.) western food
washoku	(n.) Japanese food; Nihonshoku is also used.
kono atari	(n.) around here, hereabouts
ryooriya	(n.) eating place, restaurant
shiru	(v.t.) to know (c.v.) see p. 113
shitte iru	(v.t.) The verb shiru is always in the progressive when used in the affirmative sense.
shirimasen	(v.t.) do not know
sukiyaki	(n.) name of a Japanese dish
oishii	(adj.) delicious
oishikatta	was delicious (See I.C. & G.N.)
(o)sushi	(n.) name of a Japanese dish (o is added for politeness)
naka naka	quite, very (same as taihen)
tachi	(suffix) denoting plural (human beings)
zashiki	(n.) Japanese-style room with tatami mats
to	when, if (See I.C. & G.N.)

jochuu	(n.) waitress, or maid
sugu (ni)	(adv.) immediately
(o)cha	(n.) green tea
kondatehyoo	(n.) a menu; menyuu is used also.
chuumon	(n.) the ordering
chuumon	o (Chi. v.) to order
suru	
mae	(n.) an order
ninin mae	two orders, or "... for two"
sore kara	(conj.) and, then, and then
gohan	(n.) cooked rice; meal (in general)
niku	(n.) meat
yasai	(n.) vegetable
toofu	(n.) soybean cake
ya	(conj.) and (See I.C. & G.N.)
(o)chawan	(n.) rice bowl
(o)hashi	(n.) chopsticks
tsukau	(v.t.) to use
tsukaikata	method of using, way to use, how to use (See I.C. & G.N.)
oshiete	(v.t.) to show (you, him, her, etc.— NEVER
ageru	me—See I.C. & G.N.)
nimasu	(polite form of niru) boil, cook
ryoori	(n.) cooking
ryoori	no how to cook (See I.C. & G.N.)
shikata	
nioi	(n.) smell
nioi ga suru	(v.i.) to smell
zuibun	extremely, very (syn: taiheti)
onaka	(n.) stomach

onaka	ga (idio.) lit., stomach is full, I am full
ippai	
chotto	I say! Hey! Look here! (Used to call attention.)
gochisoo	(n.) treat, feast
gochisoo	(Chi. v.) to entertain at dinner, treat someone
suru	
harau	(v.t.) to pay
te	wa must not, don't. (See I.C. G.N.)
ikemasen	
haratte	wa must not pay, don't pay
ikemasen	
dashimashita	(past tense of dasu) produced, submitted
(o)tsuri	(n.) change (monetary)
iru	(v.i.) to need (note that this verb, though it ends in iru and therefore should be a non-conjugating verb, is an exception. It conjugates as ira, iri, iru, ire, ire. See p. 113.)
irimasen	(negative of iru) do not need

### Additional Vocabulary

tabemono	(n.) things to eat (from taberu mono)
(o)kane	(n.) money
kudamono	(n.) fruit
ringo	(n.) apple
suika	(n.) watermelon
budoo	(n.) grapes
mikan	(n.) orange
biiru	(n.) beer
sake	(n.) Japanese rice-wine
booi-san	(n.) waiter (from "boy-san")

pan	(n.) bread
bataa	(n.) butter
sakana	(n.) fish
mizu	(n.) water
koohii	(n.) coffee
koocha	(n.) black tea
gyuunyuu,	(n.) milk
miruku	
maagarin	(n.) margarine
sampo	(n.) a stroll
sampo o suru	(Chi. v.) to take a walk
kasu	(v.t.) to lend
nomu	(v.t.) to drink
shokuji	(n.) meal
shokuji	o (Chi. v.) to have one's meal, to eat
suru	
tempura	(n.) popular Japanese dish of deep-fried shrimp, vegetables, etc.
chippu	(n.) tip

## Important Construction and Grammar Notes

**KARA:** There are three main usages of kara:

1. Kara after "te" form of the verb:

Kara following the "te" form of the verbs (te or de) means "after," "since," or "after. ing."

a. Yuuhan o tabete kara ongakukai e ikimasu.  
After eating dinner I will go to a concert.



b. Boku wa Nihongo o benkyoo shite kara nemasu.  
I will go to bed after studying Japanese.

The following two usages of kara have already been discussed:

2. Kara after statements:

When kara follows a statement (or a verb or adjective) it means "because or "since."

a. Kono kisha wa Chicago-yuki desu kara Seattle niwa ikimasen.

b. Ima shokuji o shimasu kara ato de (later) ano kata ni aimasu.

Note the similarity of the Japanese construction, but the great difference in meaning in the following examples. Sentences numbered (1) are verb + kara=because; (2) are.     te + kara=after.

1. shita kara

2. shite kara

1. tabeta kara

2. tabete kara

1. deta kara

2. dete kara

### 3. Kara after nouns:

In this case kara means "from."

- a. Nihon kara kita kisen wa The steamer which came from  
ookii desu. Japan is large.
- b. Sengetsu kara ame ga It has not rained since last  
furima-sen. month.

Distinguish the difference in the meaning of the following

- 1. Kinyoobi kara —from Friday (kara following a noun)
- 2. Kinyoobi desu—because it is Friday (kara following a  
kara verb)

SOO DESU: This is attached to the abrupt present and past tense of verbs and adjectives, and gives the meaning, "it is said that. .," "I hear that.. ." and "I understand that...."

- 1. Beikoku no tomodachi wa I hear that my American  
Nihon e iku soo desu. friend is going to Japan.
- 2. Ito-san wa uchi e kaetta soo I hear that Mr. Ito went  
desu. home.
- 3. Hawai wa taihen atsui soo I hear Hawaii is very hot.  
desu.
- 4. Kore wa amari oishikunai I understand that this is not  
soo desu. so tasty.

This expression is used when the speaker has received the information second hand.

NANI-KA: Nani is "what." Nani + ka is "something."  
Similarly

1. dare    dare-ka    "somebody"
2. itsu    itsu-ka    "sometime"
3. dore    dore-ka    "one of several"

4.            dochira-ka "one of the two"  
dochira

5. doko    doko-ka    "somewhere"

6. nani    nani-ka    "something"

When ka is replaced with mo, note the change in meaning:

1. dare    dare-mo    "no one"—used with negative verb only
2. itsu    itsu-mo    "always"
3. dore    dore-mo    "all"
4.            dochira-mo "both"  
dochira
5. doko    doko-mo    "everywhere"
6. nani    nani-mo    "nothing"—used with negative verb only

(See page 366 for further explanation.)

## "TE" FORM OF THE VERB USED AS A CONNECTIVE:

We have seen the following usages of "te" verbs:

1. "te" verb + kudasai — "please...."
2. "te" verb + imasu    —progressive form "...ing"
3. "te" verb + kara    —"after \_\_\_\_\_"

The fourth usage is that of a connective, in which the "te" verb takes the same tense as the final verb, as follows:

Ginza e itte kudamono I went to the Ginza and  
o kaimashita. bought (some) fruit.

The above sentence is actually two sentences which have been combined with *soshite*.

Ginza e ikimashita. Soshite kudamono o kaimashita.

By using the "te" construction in the first sentence, repetition of the conjunction *soshite* can be avoided and a compound sentence is formed.

A variation of this is the "te" verb used in the sense of *kara* (because).

1. Onaka ga suite matsu koto ga dekimasen deshita.

Because I was hungry (I) could not wait.

2. Ame ga futte doko e mo iku koto ga dekimasen deshita.

Because it rained (I) was not able to go anywhere.

**YA:** The conjunction *ya* is used in the same way and has the same meaning as *to*. However, *ya* is used when you select a few samples from a longer list instead of giving the complete series, while *to* is used where all the nouns in the series are mentioned.

1. Kudamonoya dewa, ringo ya ichigo ya mikan o utte imasu.

(Here, besides apples (ringo), strawberries (ichigo), and

oranges (mikan), there are many other kinds of fruit (kudamono) which are not all listed.)

(VERB) + ATO DE: This means "after." Used with the abrupt past tense of the verb, it refers to the time after some action has already taken place.

1. Tegami o kaita ato de, sampo o shi ni ikimashoo.  
After I've written the letters, let's go for a walk.

2. Ryooriya de shokuji o shita ato de biiru o nomi ni ikimashita.  
After I had my meal at the restaurant, I went to drink beer.

Used after a noun, the NOUN + NO ATO DE pattern is used.

1. Kurasu no ato de kimashita. (He) came after class.
2. Shigoto no ato de kite kudasai. Please come after work.

NEGATIVE IMPERATIVE: "Must not," "don't," and "not to be allowed" can be expressed by the "te" verb followed by wa ikemasen.

1. Sono furui ichigo o tabete wa Don't eat those old  
ikemasen. strawberries.
2. Kono suika o totte wa You must not take this  
ikemasen. watermelon.

"TE" VERB + WA IKEMASEN	= "... must not ..."
-------------------------	----------------------

KATA: The expression "how to + verb (walk, open, etc.)" is rendered into Japanese by the addition of kata to the second base of yodan verb and to the stem of the ichidan verb.

1. Nihongo no kakikata o oshiete Show me how to write  
kudasai. Japanese.
2. Anata no benkyoo no shikata ga Your method of studying  
warui desu. is poor.

2nd BASE OF THE VERB + KATA = "how to..."

**PAST TENSE OF ADJECTIVES:** One way of forming the past tense of adjectives is by adding the past tense of desu (deshita) to adjectives.

1. takai deshita —(was expensive)
2. furui deshita —(was old)

However, this form of expression is not as common as the following. Another method of forming the past is by adding katta to the stem of the true adjectives (adjectives without the final "i"). This is the abrupt (or plain) past.

1. taka-katta
2. furu-katta
3. ooki-katta

Note that the "katta" ending, like other abrupt endings of verbs, viz., taberu-tabeta, etc., may be used to complete a statement.

Eiga wa omoshirokatta.

However, this has a harsh, abrupt ring to the statement. So, in order to soften this, desu is added.

Eiga wa omoshirokatta desu.

There is no difference in meaning between:

(a) Eiga wa omoshiroi deshita.

(b) Eiga wa omoshirokatta desu.

Although the first sentence (a) is grammatically conceivable and it is occasionally used, the second form (b) is used much more frequently.

<table><tr><td>ADJ. (minus "i") + KATTA</td></tr><tr><td>taka + katta</td></tr></table>	ADJ. (minus "i") + KATTA	taka + katta	= "was—"
ADJ. (minus "i") + KATTA			
taka + katta			

In this same way the past of the desiderative can be formed:

1. tabetai — tabetakatta (wanted to eat)

2. ikitai — ikitakatta (wanted to go)

AGERU (YARU): This means "to give." When the person giving something away is in a lower social position, ageru is used. Yaru is used when the person to whom something is given is on very intimate terms with the giver, or when the giver is superior (see p. 311 for detailed explanation of this). This can be used when the first person gives away to a second or third person.

Kono kirei na hana o anata (sensei) ni agemasu.

(I) shall give these beautiful flowers to you (teacher).

Agemasu can also be used when a second person gives to a third person; or between third persons.

1. Anata wa sono kirei na hana o sensei ni agemasu ka.  
Are you going to give those beautiful flowers to the teacher?

2. Brown-san wa sensei ni kirei na hana o agemashita.  
Mr. Brown gave the teacher the beautiful flowers.

In these examples note the usage of ni after the indirect object. Ageru is not used when the receiver is the first person, i.e., this verb is never used in the sense of "give to me."

OSHIETE AGERU: Here, used with a "te" verb, ageru means that you want to do something as a favor to someone else. The meaning is "for the benefit of."

1. Ongakukai no kippu o I will buy a concert ticket for you  
katte agemasu. (for your benefit).
2. Okane o kashite I will lend some money to you (as  
agemasu. a favor to you).

TO: Used with the root form of the verb, it constitutes a subordinate clause, making this the condition of the following principal clause. It can be translated as "when." To also has a meaning of "if." The rule "subordinate clause + to, principal clause" is applicable.

1. Hachi-ji no kisha ni When/if you get on the eight  
noru to go-ji ni o'clock train, you will arrive in  
Hiroshima ni Hiroshima at five o'clock.  
tsukimasu.



2. Koocha o nomu to When/if I drink tea, I cannot eat  
gohan o taberu koto ga (my) meal.  
dekimasen.

In addition, to is used to indicate one action preceding another, or one action becoming the base of, or setting the stage for another.

Uchi e kaeru to sugu When I return home, I study  
benkyoo shimasu. immediately.

Natsu ni naru to atsuku When it becomes summer, it  
nari-masu. becomes hot.

KOTO NI SURU: This means literally "to make a situation," but in usage, it means "to decide." This is used with a root form of a verb.

3rd BASE VERB + KOTO NI SURU	= "to decide..."
---------------------------------	------------------

1. Ashita kara mainichi sampo o suru koto ni shimasu.  
I will (decide to) take a walk everyday from tomorrow (on).

2. Rainen Nihon e iku koto ni shimashita.  
We have decided to go to Japan next year.

3. Natsuyasumi niwa doko e mo ikanai koto ni shimashita.  
We have decided not to go anywhere during summer vacation.

When used with a noun, it follows the following pattern:

NOUN + NI SURU
----------------

1. Dore ni shimasu Which will it be?

ka.

Akai no ni I will decide on the red one.  
shimasu.

2. Nichiyooobi ni Let's make it Sunday. (Let's decide the  
shimashoo. date as Sunday.)

## Substitution Drill

("te" Verb)

TABETE	} + KARA
MITE	
KAITE	
YONDE	
SHITE	
KITE	

etc.

("te" Verb)

SHIMETE	} + (WA) IKEMASEN
ORITE	
NONDE	
TSUKATTE	
SHITE	
KITE	

etc.

## Exercises

1. After I eat I will Tabete kara benkyoo shimasu.  
study.
2. After I see a movie Eiga o mite kara kaerimasu.  
I will go home.
3. After I write a Tegami o kaite kara ikimasu.  
letter, I will go.
4. After I read a Zasshi o yonde kara kimasu.  
magazine, I will  
come.

5. After I do this, I Kore o shite kara hon o kai ni  
will go to buy aikimasu.  
book.
6. After I come, you Watakushi ga kite kara kaerinasai.  
go home.

First give the affirmative, then the negative (7-13):

7. Close the window. Mado o shimenasai. Mado o shimete  
wa ikemasen.
8. Get off at the next Tsugi no kado de orinasai. Tsugi no  
corner. kado de orite wa ikemasen.
9. Drink some coffee. Koohii o nominasai. Koohii o nonde  
wa ikemasen.
10. Use my automobile. Watakushi no jidoosha o tsukainasai.  
Watakushi no jidoosha o tsukatte wa  
ikemasen.
11. Do this work. Kono shigoto o shinasai. Kono  
shigoto o shite wa ikemasen.
12. Come at six o'clock. Roku-ji ni kinasai. Roku-ji ni kite wa  
ikemasen.
13. Get on at the next Tsugi no kado de norinasai. Tsugi no  
corner. kado de notte wa ikemasen.
14. I entered the house Ie ni haitte koshibakemashita.  
and sat down.
15. I stood up and read Tatte hon o yomimashita.  
the book.
16. I bought a book and Hon o katte yuubinkyoku e motte  
took it to the Post ikimashita.  
Office.

17. I sold my old car Furui jidoosha o utte atarashii no o  
and bought a new kaimashita.  
one.
18. I used chopsticks Hashi o tsukatte sukiyaki o  
and ate suki-yaki. tabe-mashita.
19. I met the teacher Sensei ni atte ichi jikan  
and talked one hanashi-mashita.  
hour.
20. I had dinner and Shokuji o shite sampo o shimashita.  
took a walk.
21. I paid the bill and Kanjoo o haratte ryooriya o  
left the restaurant. dema-shita.
22. If I go to Japan, I Nihon e iku to Kabuki o mimasu.  
will see a Kabuki  
play.
23. If you eat this, you Kore o taberu to yoku narimasu.  
will get well.
24. If you cook this you Kore o ryoori suru to taberu koto ga  
can eat it. dekimasu.
25. If you order now, it Ima chuumon suru to raishuu  
will come next kima-su.  
week.
26. If you get off here, Koko de oriru to hoteru wa sugu  
the hotel is near. chikaku desu.
27. I want to go to Itsu-ka Nihon e ikitai desu.  
Japan sometime.
28. Please come Itsu-ka kite kudasai.  
sometime.
29. Let us go Doko-ka e ikimashoo.  
somewhere.

30. I want to go Doko-ka e ikitai desu.  
somewhere.
31. Somebody came. Dare-ka kimashita.
32. Somebody forgot Dare-ka hon o wasuremashita.  
(his) book.
33. There is something Kaban no naka ni nani ka arimasu.  
in the bag.
34. Give me something. Nani-ka kudasai.

Translate into Japanese:

1. Because I am very hungry, let's go someplace to eat.
2. I wanted to go, but because I had (there was) an engagement (promise), I was not able to go.

Note: (a) First notice that this sentence is composed of two subordinates and one principal clause.

(b) (subordinate) but (subordinate) because (principal clause)

(c) \_\_\_\_\_ga \_\_\_\_\_kara (or) te (principal clause).

3. The strawberries which I bought at the fruit shop were delicious.

4. Please lend me (some) money. I will lend you 5,000 yen.

Note: The second part of this sentence must be interpreted to mean that "I will give you the favor of. ." (kashite ageru).

5. Because my friend did not have (any) money, I treated him.
6. After eating dinner, if it is not raining, let's take a walk.

Note: Use te + kara or ta + ato de.

7. If you go to Kyoto, be sure (zeshi) to go to a Japanese restaurant called "Tenichi" and have (eat) tempura.

(a) \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_ itte \_\_\_\_\_.

8. Waiter, please bring me a cup (ippai) of black tea. Later, give me bread and butter, (give me—kudasai)

9. Last night he drank too much beer and sake, so he was not in time for work, (drank too much—nomi + sugiru; for work—shigoto NI)

10. The man whom I met at the coffee house said he had been to the United States. (Use past experience construction for this.)

Answer in Japanese:

1. Anata wa sukiyaki ka tempura o tabeta koto ga arimasu ka. Doko de tabemashita ka.

2. Anata wa Nihongo o benkyoo shite kara Nihon e iku tsumori desu ka.

3. Anata wa kesa gakkoo e aruite kimashita ka. Aruite kaerimasu ka.

4. Shokuji no kanjoo wa kyuuhyaku gojuu en deshita. Watakushi wa sen en-satsu o dashimashita. Otsuri wa ikura desu ka.

5. Anata wa asa shichi-ji ni okiru to hachi-ji no kurasu ni ma ni aimasu ka. Isoganakereba narimasen ka.

6. Yooshoku to washoku dewa dochira ga suki desu ka. Anata wa itsu-mo washoku o tabemasu ka.

7. Amerikajin wa naifu (knife) to fooku (fork) de tabemasu ga Nihonjin wa nan de tabemasu ka. Anata wa (o)hashi no tsukaikata o shitte imasu ka.

8. Anatagata wa ima kanji (Chinese written characters) no kakikata o naratte imasu ka. Nani o benkyoo shite imasu ka.

9. Anata wa maiban nan-ji ni shokuji o shimasu ka. Shokuji o shita ato de sampo o shimasu ka.

10. Anata no uchi no chikaku ni aru suupaa-maaketto (supermarket) de toofu ya yasai ya niku o kau koto ga dekimasu ka.

The following are answers to questions. Form the questions:

1. Kesa hachi-ji no kurasu ni ma ni aimashita.

2. Iie, Tookyoo-yuki no kisha ni ma ni aimasen deshita.

3. Suehiro no sukiyaki wa oishikatta desu.

4. Ano ryooriya no (o)sushi wa amari oishikunai soo desu.

5. Asa ku-ji goro sensei no uchi e iku to dare-mo imasen.

6. Heya no naka ni dare-mo imasen.

7. Washoku no hoo ga suki desu.
8. Hai, hashi de taberu koto ga dekimasu.
9. Iie, toofu o tabeta koto wa arimasen.
10. Sukiyaki no ryoori no shikata o shirimasen.
11. Gohan o tabete kara gakkoo e ikanakereba narimasen.
12. Kesa okite kara sampo o shimashita.
13. Kinoo depaato de Tanaka-san ni aimashita.
14. Biiru wa ippon nihyaku en desu.
15. Watakushi wa hikooki de Nihon e kimashita.
16. Kono jibiki o gakkoo de kaimashita.
17. Ashita Kabuki o mi ni ikitai desu.
18. Teikoku hoteru made densha de jippun kakarimasu.
19. Juugo-fun shika kakarimasen.
20. Chikatetsu no hoo ga hayai desu.

You want to tell the waitress:

1. to bring some tea.
2. to bring some more toofii.



3. to show you the menu.
4. that you haven't ordered yet.
5. that you are hungry, so please hurry.
6. that you want 3 orders of sukiyaki.
7. that you want the check.
8. that the meal was good.
9. whether you can order coffee and cake here.
10. that you want her to show you how to use chopsticks.

The following conversation takes place between you and your guest. Translate:

You: What would you like to eat—Japanese food or Western food?

Guest: I like Japanese food better.

You: Have you ever eaten sukiyaki at Suehiro's?

Guest: No, never.

You: Shall I order?

Guest: Please order (for me). I would like to eat sukiyaki.

You: Shall I order some sake too?

Guest: No, thank you (kekkoo desu).

You: Would you like to eat with chopsticks?

Guest: I would like to use them and try (tsukatte mitai\*).

Please teach me how to use them.

What is this white thing?

You: That is called "tofu." Do you like it?

Guest: I like it very much.

You: How about some more tea ? (.. wa ikaga desu ka)

Guest: Thank you. Give me some.

You: How about some more rice?

Guest: No thank you. I am full.

It was very delicious.

You: Please eat a lot. How about some dessert?

Guest: I cannot eat anymore.

You: Shall we take a little walk?

Guest: That's a good idea.

**\* Note:** In the English expression "eat and see . . .," "read and see . . .and "do and see . . .," "see" is used in the sense of "try out" with the purpose of "finding out." The Japanese equivalent of this is "te" verb + MIRU, meaning "to experiment" or "to try experimentally."

1. Sashimi o tabete miru.—Eat raw fish and see (try out).
2. Kono hon o yonde minasai.—Read this book and see.
3. Kono shigoto o shite mimashita.—I did this work and tried.

### Useful Expressions

#### Taste (Aji)

When tabemono (food) is good, it is oishii. When it is not so savory, it is mazui. The following expressions are used to describe taste (aji).

AMAI	sweet	Satou (sugar) wa amai desu.
KARAI	hot peppery	or Kono karee-raisu wa karai desu.



# CHAPTER 14

## NIHON—JAPAN

NOUN + NI NARU	= BECOME . . .
ADVERB + NARU	

3rd BASE of VERB + NO NI TAME	= IN ORDER TO . . .
-------------------------------------	---------------------

KORE WA NIHON NO CHIZU  
DESU.

Nihon no chiri o  
benkyoo suru  
toki ni  
\*Nihon no chiri o benkyoo suru toki  
ni . . .

THIS IS A MAP OF JAPAN.

Japan's geography (obj. case)  
study  
when  
\*when (one) studies (the) geography  
of Japan . . .

NIHON NO CHIRI O BENKYOO  
SURU TOKI NI CHIZU O  
TSUKAIMASU.

Eikoku ni nita  
kuni  
\*Eikoku ni nita kuni . . .

WHEN YOU STUDY THE GEO-  
GRAPHY OF JAPAN, YOU USE  
A MAP.

resembles England  
country  
\*a country which resembles  
England (rel. cl.) . . .

NIHON WA EIKOKU NI NITA  
CHISAI KUNI DESU.

JAPAN IS A SMALL COUNTRY  
RESEMBLING ENGLAND.

Nihon wa  
takusan no shima kara  
naritatte imasu

NIHON WA TAKUSAN NO  
SHIMA KARA NARITATTE  
IMASU.

KONO UCHI DE ICHIBAN  
OOKII SHIMA WA HONSHUU  
TO IMASU.

yama ga takusan  
atte  
\*yama ga takusan atte . . .  
noogyoo ni tekisuru  
heiya  
\*noogyoo ni tekisuru heiya . . .

HONSHUU NIWA YAMA GA  
TAKUSAN ATTE NOOGYOO NI  
TEKISURU HEIYA GA SOKU-  
NAI DESU.  
KYUUSHUU TO SHIKOKU WA  
HONSHUU NO MINAMI NI  
ARIMASU GA HOKKAIDOO WA  
KITA NI ARIMASU.

kanari atatakai kara  
noogyoo ni tekishite imasu  
ga  
Hokkaidoo wa  
naka naka samukute . . .

as for Japan  
from (by) many islands  
made up of

JAPAN IS COMPOSED OF  
MANY ISLANDS.

AMONG THESE, THE LARG-  
EST ISLAND IS CALLED  
HONSHU.

many mountains  
there are and . . .  
\*there are many mountains and . . .  
suited for agriculture  
plain  
\*plain suited for agriculture  
(rel. cl.) . . .

BECAUSE THERE ARE MANY  
MOUNTAINS ON HONSHU,  
THERE ARE FEW PLAINS  
SUITED FOR AGRICULTURE.  
KYUSHU AND SHIKOKU ARE  
IN (TO) THE SOUTH OF HON-  
SHU, BUT HOKKAIDO IS IN  
(TO) THE NORTH.

because it is fairly warm  
suited for farming  
but (however)  
Hokkaido (nom. case)  
very cold and . . .

KYUUSHU TO SHIKOKU WA  
KANARI ATATAKAI KARA  
NOOGYOO NI TEKISHITE  
IMASU GA HOKKAIDOO WA  
NAKA NAKA SAMUKUTE,  
FUYU NI WA YUKI GA TAKU-  
SAN FURIMASU KARA NOO-  
GYOO NI TEKISHITE IMASEN.

Tookyoo wa  
Nihon no shufu  
de  
\*Tookyoo wa Nihon no shufu de...

TOKYO WA NIHON NO  
SHUFU DE, HONSHUU NI  
ARIMASU.  
TOKYO WA SENSOO NO  
MAE MADE WA SEKAI DE  
SAMBAMME NO TOKAI DE-  
SHITA GA SENGOU SEKAI-ICHI  
NO DAITOKAI NI NARI-  
MASHITA.

rippa na  
gekijoo ga  
ari...  
\*rippa na gekijoo ga ari...

London no yoo na  
tokai desu

KYUSHU AND SHIKOKU ARE  
FAIRLY WARM, SO THEY ARE  
SUITED FOR FARMING, BUT  
SINCE HOKKAIDO IS VERY  
COLD, AND IN THE WINTER  
IT SNOWS CONSIDERABLY, IT  
IS NOT SUITABLE FOR AGRI-  
CULTURE.

'Tokyo (nom. case)  
Japan's capital  
is and...  
\*Tokyo is Japan's capital and...

TOKYO IS THE CAPITAL OF  
JAPAN, AND IT IS ON  
HONSHU.

TOKYO WAS THE THIRD  
LARGEST CITY IN THE  
WORLD BEFORE THE WAR,  
BUT IT BECAME THE LARG-  
EST CITY IN THE WORLD  
AFTER THE WAR.

magnificent  
theaters (nom. case)  
there are and...  
\*there are magnificent theaters  
and...  
like (similar to) London (mod.)  
is a city

\*London no yoo na tokai desu

MODAN NA GINKOO YA KAI-  
SHA NO TATEMONO YA RIPPA  
NA GEKIJOO GA AN, NEW  
YORK YA LONDON NO YOO  
NA TOKAI DESU.

NIHON NIWA AMARI GENRYOO  
GA NAI NODE IRO-IRO NA  
SEIHIN O YUSHUTSU SHI,  
BEIKOKU YA CANADA KARA  
GENRYOO O YUNYUU SHINA-  
KEREBE NARIMASEN.

koogyookoku ni naru  
tame ni  
\*koogyookoku ni naru tame ni . . .

genryoo o  
yunyuu shite imasu

NIHON WA KOOGYOOKOKU NI  
NARU TAME NI GENRYOO O  
YUNYUU SHITE IMASU.  
OOSAKA WA NIBAMME NO  
TOKAI DE KOOGYOO NO  
CHUUSHINCHI DESU.

\*(it) is a city like London

THERE ARE MANY MODERN  
BANK AND COMPANY BUILD-  
INGS, MAGNIFICENT THEA-  
TERS, AND IT IS A CITY LIKE  
NEW YORK OR LONDON.  
BECAUSE JAPAN DOES NOT  
HAVE MUCH RAW MATERIAL  
SHE EXPORTS MANUFAC-  
TURED GOODS AND MUST IM-  
PORT RAW MATERIALS FROM  
THE UNITED STATES,  
CANADA, ETC.

to become an industrial nation  
in order to  
\*in order to become an industrial  
nation . . . .  
raw materials (obj. case)  
(they) are importing

JAPAN, IN ORDER TO BECOME  
AN INDUSTRIAL NATION, IS  
IMPORTING RAW MATERIALS.  
OSAKA IS THE SECOND  
(LARGEST) CITY AND IT IS  
THE CENTER OF MANUFAC-  
TURING.

Osaka no chikaku ni ari . . .  
mukashi no miyako de . . .  
rekishiteki meisho desu

KYOTOO WA OOSAKA NO  
CHIKAKU NI ARI, MUKASHI  
NO MIYAKO DE, REKISHITEKI  
MEISHO DESU.

Nihon ni wa  
keshiki no yoi tokoro ga takusan  
aru node  
\*Nihon ni wa keshiki no yoi tokoro  
ga takusan aru node . . .  
haru ni naru to  
kembutsu suru hito ga oosai

NIHON NI WA KESHIKI NO  
YOI TOKORO GA TAKUSAN  
ARU NODE, HARU NI NARU TO  
KEMBUTSU SURU HITO GA  
OOSAI GAIKOKU KARA  
KIMASU.

TAIHEIYOO SENSOO NI MAKE-  
TA NODE SENGO NIHONJIN  
WA TAIHEN KOMARIMASHITA.

keredomo  
Nihon kokumin wa  
heiwa  
heiwa na kuni o  
tsukuru tame ni  
\*heiwa na kuni o tsukuru  
tame ni . . .  
isshookenmei  
hataraite imasu

KEREDOMO NIHON KOKUMIN  
WA HEIWA NA KUNI O TSUKU-  
RU TAME NI ISSHOOKENMEI  
HATARAITE IMASU.

(Kyoto) is near Osaka and . . .  
(it) is an ancient capital and . . .  
(it) is a famous historical site

KYOTO IS (LOCATED) NEAR  
OSAKA: IT IS AN ANCIENT  
CAPITAL, AND A FAMOUS  
HISTORICAL PLACE.

in Japan  
many scenic spots  
because there are  
\*because there are many scenic  
spots in Japan . . .  
when it becomes spring  
many people who sightsee (nom.  
case)

SINCE THERE ARE MANY  
(GOOD) SCENIC SPOTS IN  
JAPAN, IN THE SPRING (WHEN  
IT BECOMES SPRING) MANY  
PEOPLE COME FROM FOREIGN  
COUNTRIES TO SIGHTSEE.  
SINCE (JAPAN) LOST THE  
PACIFIC WAR, THE JAPANESE  
WERE IN GREAT DISTRESS  
(WERE GREATLY TROUBLED)  
DURING (THE) POSTWAR  
(YEARS).

however  
Japanese people (nom. case)  
peace  
peaceful country (obj. case)  
in order to make  
\*in order to make a peaceful  
nation . . .  
with all their might  
are working

HOWEVER, THE JAPANESE  
PEOPLE ARE WORKING WITH  
ALL THEIR MIGHT IN ORDER  
TO CREATE A PEACEFUL  
NATION.

## Vocabulary



chizu	(n.) map
chiri	(n.) geography
toki ni	when (See I.C. & G.N.)
Eikoku	(n.) England
niru	(v.i.) to resemble (n.c.v.) when it resembles something: object NI niru.
(ni) nita	(abrupt past of niru)
kuni	(n.) country
shima	(n.) island
naritatsu	(v.i.) composed of.
naritatte	("te" form of naritatsu)
Honshuu	(n.) the main island of Japan
yama	(n.) mountain
heiya	(n.) plain
sukunai	(adj.) few (in number)
minami	(n.) south
kita	(n.) north
kanari	fairly
atatakai	(adj.) warm
noogyoo	(n.) agriculture
tekisuru	(v.i.) to be appropriate, to be suitable (takes the postposition ni to express "suitable FOR something") Kono seihin wa yushutsu NI tekishimasen.
samui	(adj.) cold
fuyu	(n.) winter
takusan	(with verb) a lot, considerably
shufu	(n.) capital
de	(contraction of desu used connec-tively) is... and" (See I.C. & G.N.)

sensoo	(n.) war
sengo	(n.) postwar (same as sensoo no ato)
sambamme	(n.) third (in order)
daitokai	(n.) large metropolis
modan	(n.) modern
ginkoo	(n.) bank
kaisha	(n.) firm, company
rippa	(n.) magnificent (rippa na is a quasi adj.)
yoo na	like (yoo na + noun, See I.C. & G.N.)
mukashi	(n.) olden days
miyako	(n.) capital (used historically)
rekishi	(n.) history
rekishiteki	historical
meisho	(n.) famed place
iro-iro	(n.) various (used as iro-iro na to modify)
yushutsu suru	(Chi. v.) to export
genryoo	(n.) raw material
tame ni	in order to (See I.C. & G.N.)
nai	(abrupt form of arimasen)
yunyuu sura	(Chi. v.) to import
seihin	(n.) manufactured goods
koogyoo	(n.) manufacturing industry
chuushinchi	(n.) center
keshiki	(n.) scenery
haru	(n.) spring
gaikoku	(n.) foreign country
oozei	many (use only with humans— oozei no hito)
Taiheiyoo	(η.) Pacific Ocean

Taiheiyoo	(n.) Pacific war; the Japanese refer to World War II by this term.
sensoo	
makeru	(v.i.) to lose—when you lose in a competition, race, game, bet, etc., use ".      ni makeru" (n.c.v.)
maketa	(abrupt past of makeru) lost
komaru	(v.i.) to be troubled, inconvenienced
kokumin	(n.) people of a country, nationals
no ni	(tame in order to .    (See I.C. & G.N.)
ni)	
isshookemmei	(adv.) with all one's might
(ni)	

### Additional Vocabulary

kawa	(n.) river
minato	(n.) harbor
mizuumi	(n.) lake
Taiseiyoo	(n.) Atlantic Ocean
Nihonkai	(n.) Japan Sea
umi	(n.) ocean
hashi	(n.) bridge
mura	(n.) village
higashi	(n.) east
nishi	(n.) west
natsu	(n.) summer
aki	(n.) autumn
onsen	(n.) hot spring
hyakushoo	o (Chi. v.) to farm
suru	
booeeki	(n.) trade

booeeki o suru	(Chi. v.) to trade
shoogyoo	(n.) commerce
gaikoku	(n.) foreign trade
booeeki	
gaikokujin	(n.) foreigner
jinkoo	(n.) population
Kankoku	(n.) Korea
Chuugoku	(n.) China
Taiwan	(n.) Formosa
yoo ni	like (followed by a verb, see I.C. & G.N.)
Yooroppa	(n.) Europe
Indo	(n.) India
katsu	(v.i.) to win (in competition—associate with . . ni katsu)

### Important Construction and Grammar Notes

**NOUN + NI NARU....** = to become (the noun)...

- gunjin ni to become a soldier (winter, large city, etc.) is  
 naru. expressed by the above formula. Note that "a  
 soldier, winter, and large city" are nouns;  
 therefore, these must be followed by NI when  
 used with NARU. These nouns are the goal of  
 "becoming" (naru).

gunjin ni(I) wish to become a soldier.  
 naritai..

gunjin ni(I) became a soldier.  
 narimashita.

- fuyu ni naru when it becomes winter  
 to .

3. Nagoya wa Nagoya became a large city.  
daitokai ni  
narimashita.

**ADVERBIAL FORM OF THE ADJECTIVE (... KU) + NARU**

1. takaku to become expensive (cold, few, etc.). First,  
naru. change the true adjective to an adverb  
(takaz—takaku; samut—samuku) and use NARU.  
In this construction ni IS NOT NECESSARY.
2. Kodomo A child becomes big.

ga  
ookiku  
naru.

Keep in mind that ni is not used after the adverbial form of the adjective.

TAKU NARU: The desiderative suffix tai, meaning "want to. .," has the adjectival ending ai. Therefore, ". tai" can be handled like any adjective.

1. It can modify a noun:

yomitai hon (want to read—book)  
mitai eiga (want to see—movies)  
shitai shigoto (want to do—work)

2. Negative is formed by . ku arimasen (adj. is akaku arimasen).

ikitaku arimasen or ikitaku+nai  
taketaku arimasen or tab etaku+nai

3. Abrupt past is katta (adj. is akakatta)

kaitakatta (wanted to buy)  
uritakatta (wanted to sell)  
arukitakatta (wanted to walk)

4. Similarly, . . ku naru construction, explained above, is applicable to tai, with the literal meaning "become so that you want to.. ." and "get the urge to . .", or "feel like ..."
- |               |                                      |
|---------------|--------------------------------------|
| nomitaku naru | (get the urge to drink)              |
| nakitaku naru | (feel like crying)                   |
| sumitaku naru | (get the feeling of wanting to live) |

COMPOUND SENTENCE: There are two methods by which simple sentences can be joined, and a compound sentence formed.

1. By means of the "te" form of the verbs, or the adjectives:

a. Ano kata wa chooshoku o tabete, gakkoo e ikimasu.  
This sentence is equivalent to two simple sentences connected with soshite: Ano kata wa chooshoku o tabemasu. Soshite gakkoo e ikimasu.

2. By using the second base of the yodan verb (c.v.) or the stem of ichidan verb (n.c.v.):

- a. Hokkaidoo dewa yuki ga It snows a lot in Hokkaido  
taku-san furi, taihen samui and it is a very cold place.  
tokoro desu.
- b. Boku wa gohan o tabe, isoide I ate (my) meal and I  
eiga e ikimashita. hurried to see the movie.

3. De can also be used as a conjunction. De is a contraction of desu, and when used in this way, it has the meaning of "and" as well as "is."

a. Kono kaisha wa booeiki gaisha de, Taiwan kara banana o yunyuu shimasu.

This company is a trading company and imports bananas from Taiwan.

b. John-san wa gaikokujin de watakushi wa Nihonjin desu.  
John is a foreigner and I am a Japanese.

TOKI (NI). Toki ni pinpoints the time when something happens, and it is another connective for a subordinate clause. It means "when. .," "time. .". This is used after the subordinate clause followed by a principal clause.

Subordinate Clause + TOKI (NIWA), Principal Clause =  
When.

1. Indo e iku toki (niwa), hikooki de ikimasu.  
When I go to India, I will go by plane.

2. Kyonen Indo e itta toki (niwa) hikooki de ikimashita.  
When I went to India last year, I went by plane.

3. Chooshoku o taberu toki (ni), watakushi o yonde kudasai.  
When you eat breakfast, please call me.

NO YOO NA; NO YOO NI; NO YOO DESU: These three expressions mean "like," or "similar to," but their usage is different.

1. 

NOUN	+	NO YOO NA + NOUN
------	---	------------------

- a. Tookyoo wa New York      NO YOO NA      tokai desu.  
(Tokyo is a New York-like      city.)  
b. Kyoo wa natsu      NO YOO NA      hi desu.  
(Today is a summer-like      day.)

2. 

NOUN	+	NO YOO NI + VERB
------	---	------------------

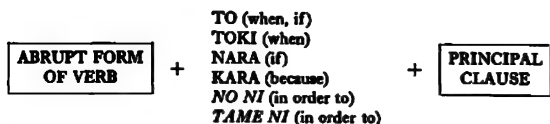
- a. Watakuhi wa sensei      NO YOO NI      Nihongo o hanashitai desu.  
(I      like a teacher      want to speak Japanese.)  
b. Kono mizuumi wa takusan      NO YOO NI      narimasu.  
sme ga furu to . . . umi      like an ocean      becomes.  
(This lake, when it      rains hard . . . )

3. 

NOUN	+	NO YOO DESU
------	---	-------------

- a. Kono yama wa Fujisan      NO YOO DESU.  
(This mountain is like Mt. Fuji.)  
b. Hokkaido wa America      NO YOO DESU.  
(Hokkaido is like America.)

NO NI (TAME NI): This expression is used after a root form of the verb and as a conjunction of a subordinate clause. The meaning is "in order to.. "for the purpose of. .," showing the purpose, or aim.



1. Nihon kara tokei ya toranjisutaa rajio o yunyuu suru no ni ginkoo kara okane o karimasu.

(In order to import watches and transistor radios, etc. from Japan, (I) will borrow money from the bank.)

2. Nihongo o benkyoo suru no ni kono jibiki o tsukaimasu.

(In order to study Japanese, (I) use this dictionary.)

Compare this construction with 2nd BASE + NI used with IKU, KURU, or KAERU (explained on p. 176) which has similar meaning of "in order to," but is more limited in its usage.



NO NI has another usage. It has the concessive meaning of "although," "whereas," or "in spite of the fact that. ."

Used with a Verb:

1. Ame ga futte iru no ni Although it is raining, he went  
shigoto e ikimashita. to work.
2. Shigoto ga aru no ni Although there is some work,  
sensei wa kimasen. the teacher won't come.

Used with an Adjective:

1. Atsui no ni mado o Although it is hot, he will not  
akemasen. open the window.
2. Muzukashii no ni yomu Although it was difficult, I  
koto ga dekimashita. was able to read it.

With a Noun + NA NO NI:

1. Nihonjin na no ni In spite of the fact that he is a  
Nihongo o Japanese, he doesn't speak  
hanashimasen. Japanese.
2. Nichiyooobi na no ni Even though it is Sunday, he  
shigoto o shimasu. works.

NOUN -f TEKI: This combination gives the meaning of "from the standpoint of. ." and is often used as an adjective.

a. rekishi + teki = historical (from the standpoint of history)  
(history)

b. keizai + teki = economical  
(economy)

c. tairiku + teki kikoo = continental climate  
(continent)

TAME (NI): This expression has three different usages.

I. When used with third base of the yodan verb (c.v.), it means "in order to " and forms a subordinate clause. When used in this way, it has the same meaning as no ni explained above. Ni is optional.

3rd BASE OF VERB + TAME (NI)	= "in order to ..."
---------------------------------	---------------------

1. Nihongo o benkyoo suru tame I will go to the library (in  
ni toshokan e ikimasu. order) to study Japanese.
2. Hako o tsukuru tame ni ki o I bought some wood (in  
kaimashita. order) to make a box.
3. Tegami o dasu tame ni kitte You need stamps (in order)  
ga irimasu. to send a letter.

II. Tame (ni) may be used with a verb, adjective, or noun to mean "because " This has the same function as kara and node giving the reason.

VERB ADJECTIVE + TAME (NI) NOUN NO	= "because ..."
--	-----------------

Verb

1. Yuki ga futte iru tame (ni) Because it is snowing it is  
samui desu. cold.
2. Kore o katta tame (ni) Because I bought this I don't  
okane ga arimasen. have any money.

Adjective

1. Atama ga itai tame (ni) kyoo Because I have a headache I  
shigoto o yasumimasu. will not go to work today.
2. Osoi tame (ni) takushii de Because it is late I will go by  
ikimasu. taxi.

## Noun

1. Byooki no tame (ni) Because of illness I was not  
ikemasen deshita. able to
2. Yasumi no tame (ni) mise wa Because it is a holiday the  
shimatte imasu. stores are closed.

III. Used with a noun, it means "for the sake of. .," "in behalf of...."

**NOUN + NO TAME (NI)** = "for the sake of . . ."

1. Kono kooen wa kodomo no This park is for children.  
tame desu.
2. Gakkoo no tame ni hataraitte Please work for (the sake of)  
kudasai. your school.

Note that the use of Noun + no tame (ni) has two meanings of "for the sake of. .," as well as "because .," so that the differentiation will have to be made from the context.

## Fluency Drill

I

Takaku naru.

Jidoosha wa takaku naru.

Atarashii jidoosha wa takaku naru.

Atarashii jidoosha wa sukoshi takaku naru.

Rainen kara atarashii jidoosha wa sukoshi takaku naru.

(A car) will be expensive.

A car will be expensive.

A new car will be expensive.

A new car will be a little expensive.

From next year a new car will be a little expensive.

## II

Sensei ni naru.

Brown-san wa sensei ni naru.

Brown-san wa daigaku no sensei ni naru.

Brown-san wa daigaku no eigo no sensei ni naru.

Brown-san wa daigaku o dete kara eigo no sensei ni naru.

Brown-san wa rainen daigaku o dete kara eigo no sensei ni naritai.

become a teacher Mr.

Brown will be a teacher.

Mr. Brown will be a university teacher.

Mr. Brown will be a university English teacher.

Mr. Brown, after graduating (from) college, will be an English teacher.

Mr. Brown, after graduating (from) college next year, would like to be an English teacher.

## Substitution Drill

WATAKUSHI WA	(3rd Base Verb)	}	+ TAME NI...
	IKU		
	KAU		
	SURU		
	TSUKURU		
	etc.		
	(Adverb)	}	+ NARU
	TAKAKU		
	MUZUKASHIKU		
	SAMUKU		
	TOOKU		
	etc.		
	(Noun)	}	+ NI NARU
	FUYU		
	RIPPA		
	DAITOKAI		
	CHUUSHINCHI		
	etc.		

## Exercises

1. In order to send this package, Kono kozutsumi o okuru no  
please give me money. ni okane o kudasai.
2. In order to buy a magazine, Zasshi o kau no ni okane o  
please give me money. kudasai.
3. In order to make a cake, Keeki o tsukuru no ni okane  
please give me money. o kudasai.
4. In order to go home by taxi, Takushii de kaeru no ni  
please give me money. okane o kudasai.
5. In order to pay the bill, Kanjoo o harau no ni okane  
please give me money. o kudasai.
6. Although it is expensive, he Takai no ni kaimashita.  
bought it.
7. Although it is cold, he Samui no ni oobaa o  
doesn't wear an overcoat. kimasen.
8. Although he can speak Nihongo o hanasu koto ga  
Japanese, he doesn't speak it. dekiru no ni hanashimasen.
9. Although he is a child, he Kodomo na no ni tabako o  
smokes (tabako o suu). suimasu.

10. Although it is a holiday, he Yasumi na no ni  
works. hatarakimasu.
11. The automobile will be Rainen jidoosha wa takaku  
expensive next year. narimasu.
12. The Japanese language will Nihongo wa muzukashiku  
become difficult. narimasu.
13. The building has become Tatemono wa furuku  
old. narimashita.
14. It has become hot. Atsuku narimashita.
15. My work has become busy. Watakushi no shigoto wa  
isogashiku narimashita.
16. It will be winter. Fuyu ni narimasu.
17. I will be a teacher. Sensei ni narimasu.
18. This boy will be eight. Kono otoko no ko wa yattsu  
ni narimasu.
19. This town became a capital. Kono machi wa shufu ni  
narimashita.
20. Mr. Tanaka became my Tanaka-san wa watakushi  
friend. no tomo-dachi ni  
narimashita.
21. Japan is like England. Nihon wa Eikoku no yoo  
desu.
22. This building is like a bank. Kono tatemono wa ginkoo  
no yoo desu.
23. Today is like winter. Kyoo wa fuyu no yoo desu.
24. Americans are like Americajin wa Eikokujin no  
Englishmen. yoo desu.
25. I want to be like my teacher. Sensei no yoo ni naritai.
26. I want to speak like my Sensei no yoo ni hanashitai.  
teacher.

27. Jiro walks like Taro.                      Jiroo wa Taroo no yoo ni arukimasu.
28. Tokyo has become like New York.        Tookyoo wa New York no yoo ni narimashita.
29. This train runs like a plane.      Kono kisha wa hikooki no yoo ni hashirimasu.
30. Brown writes kanji like a Japanese.      a Brown wa Nihonjin no yoo ni kanji o kakimasu.
31. If I go to Japan, I will go by ship.        Nihon e iku nara fune de ikimasu.
32. When I go to Japan, I will go by ship.      Nihon e iku toki wa fune de ikimasu.
33. Because I am going to Japan, I will buy a camera in Japan. camera o kaimasu.
34. In order to go to Japan I bought a ship ticket.      Nihon e iku no ni fune no kippu o kaimashita.

Translate into Japanese:

1.

When	}	(we) win this war, (we) must be an industrial country.
If		
Because		
In order to		

Note: "must be" is expressed as follows (see p. 202):

NARU—NA      ra    +   nakereba narimasen (1st base)  
                          ri  
                          ru  
                          re

2. Before the war, Manchuria was an agricultural country, but after the war, (it) became an industrial country.
3. American people are made up of (composed of) many races (jinshu) who came from many foreign countries.

4. It doesn't rain much in this area (chihoo), so the land is not suited to farming. The people who are in this area are in great trouble.

Note: komatte imasu—the progressive form can be used to indicate the STATE OF BEING. Here, it indicates the distressed state or condition the people are in. (See p. 293)

5. Detroit is the automobile manufacturing center and (de) Chicago is the commercial center.

6. (a) Japan is like England. (. . . no yoo desu)

(b) Japan is a country like England. (. . . no yoo na kuni desu)

(c) Japan will be like England. (. . . no yoo ni narimasu)

7. In order for Japan to import many raw materials from foreign countries, (she) must export manufactured goods.

Note: In analyzing this sentence:

In order            from foreign countries = subordinate clause  
connected

with no ni

she must . . . manufactured goods = principal clause

8. Japan lost the war and America won. The world is now (at) peace.

Note: Translate this into one sentence and without using conjunctions. First use the "te form" as a conjunctive; next, use the second base or the stem; lastly, alternate the two forms.



9. If you want to go to Japan (and) if you work hard (with all your effort), you can go next spring.

**Note:** first subordinate clause—. tai nara

10. South Korea's population is greater than North Korea's, but (its) raw materials are fewer than the North's.

Answer in Japanese:

1. Naze Honshuu wa noogyoo ni tekisuru heiya ga sukunai desu ka.

2. Nihon no yottsu no ookii shima o kita kara itte kudasai.

3. Nihon no koogyoo no chuushinchi wa kita Kyuushuu ni arimasu ka. Doko ni arimasu ka.

4. Anata wa fuyu ni naru to sukii (ski) o shi ni ikimasu ka. Kono chihoo ni sukii o suru no ni yoi yama ga arimasu ka.

5. New York wa Kyooto no yoo na tokai desu ka. Doo chigaimasu ka.

Note: doo—how? chigaimasu—from chigau—differ

6. Nihon e kembutsu shi ni iku no ni itsu ga ichiban yoi kisetsu (season) desu ka. Fuyu wa yoi kisetsu desu ka. Naze desu ka.

7. Eikoku wa Indo ya Chuugoku no yoo na kuni desu ka. Doo chigaimasu ka.

8. Anata wa Nihonjin no yoo ni Nihongo o hanasu koto ga dekimasu ka. Naze desu ka. Nihonjin no yoo ni Nihongo o hanashitai to omoimasu ka.

9. Chizu o mite kudasai. Yokohama kara Taiwan e iku toki ni Taiheiyoo o watarimasu ka. Nagasaki kara Kankoku e wataru toki wa, dono umi o wata-rimasu ka.

Note: toatarimasu—from wataru (to cross, to go over)

The usage of the postposition o is not as the object of a verb here, but to indicate the action taking place in space, covering space. It is used with verbs of movement, e.g., Hikooki wa ima Fujisan no ue o tonde imasu. (see p. 291 below)

10. Nikkoo wa rekishiteki meisho desu ka. Keizaiteki ni daiji na tokoro (important place) desu ka. Oosaka wa donna tokoro desu ka.

Note: Nikkoo is located about 120 miles north of Tokyo, and has a mausoleum built in 1632 dedicated to Tokugawa Ieyasu.

Combine the following sentences, using the connectives indicated:

1. I got up. I went to school, (use "te")
2. I go to school. I study in the library, (use "te")
3. Japan is small. The U.S. is large, ("te")
4. Winter is cold. Summer is hot. ("te")
5. Tokyo is the capital. It is the largest city, ("de")

6. I am a teacher. You are a student, ("de")
7. Japan exports manufactured goods. (She) imports raw materials. (2nd base)
8. He won. I lost. (2nd base)
9. He became a teacher. He became rich. (2nd base)
10. Kyoto is in Yamato. It is an old city. It has many temples (tera). (2nd base, "te")
11. My high school is in Tokyo. It is a large school. It has many students. ("te")
12. I get up. I wash my face. I eat breakfast, ("te," 2nd base)
13. I go home. I rest a little. I study. (2nd base, "te")
14. He is a Japanese. He cannot speak Japanese, (use "but")
15. Japan is a small country. She is an industrial nation, (use "but")
16. It becomes summer. It becomes hot. (use "when")
17. He doesn't have any money. He is troubled, (use "because")
18. The center of town is far. We will go by car. (use "because")
19. Farming is difficult. I don't want to farm, (use "because")

20. It is a large city. There will be banks, (use "if")

21. It is cold. Close the window, (use "if")

22. I go to school. I need money, (use "no ni," make the first sentence the reason for the second.)

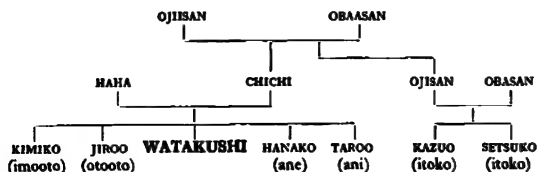
23. I will study Japanese. I will buy a dictionary, (use "no ni")

24. I will eat lunch. Please give me some money, (use "no ni")

25. I will send this package to Japan. I must take it to the post office, (use "no ni")

#### SUPPLEMENT IX

#### Shinrui (Family Relations)



KONO ZU O GORAN NASAI. LOOK AT THIS  
DIAGRAM.

WATAKUSHI NIWAI HAVE FOUR BROTHERS  
KYOODAI AND  
GA YONIN IMASU. SISTERS.  
WATAKUSHI NO ANI NOMEY OLDER BROTHER'S  
NA- NAME  
MAE WA TAROO DE, IS TARO, AND (HE IS) A  
DAIGAKU  
NO SANNENSEI DESU. THIRD YEAR STUDENT  
(AT A)

COLLEGE.

WATAKUSHI NO ANE NO MY OLDER SISTER,  
HANAKO,

HANAKO WAIS (A) SECOND YEAR  
KOOTOO GAKKOO HIGH  
NO NINENSEI DESU. SCHOOL STUDENT.

WATAKUSHI WAI AM A THIRD YEAR  
CHUUGAK- JUNIOR  
KOO NO SANNENSEI HIGH SCHOOL STUDENT.  
DESU.

JIROO WA WATAKUSHI JIRO IS MY YOUNGER  
NO BROTH

OTOOTO DE, IMAER AND (HE IS) NOW AT-  
SHOOGAK-

KOO E ITTE IMASU. TENDING ELEMENTARY  
SCHOOL.

KIMIKO WA KYONEN KIMIKO WAS BORN JUST  
UMARE-

TA BAKARI DE MADALAST YEAR AND (SHE IS)  
AKAM-

BOO DESU. STILL A BABY.

CHICHI WA SARARII-MAN MY FATHER IS A  
DE SALARIED

MARUNOUCHI NO KAISHA MAN WHO WORKS IN A  
NI COM

TSUTOMETE IMASU. PANY (WHICH IS) IN  
MARU  
NOUCHI.

HAHA WA ICHINICHIJU MY MOTHER IS AT  
HOME

UCHI NI IMASU. ALL DAY LONG.  
 KAZUO-SAN NO OTOOSANKAZUO'S FATHER AND  
 TO MY  
 WATAKUSHI NO CHICHIFATHER ARE BROTHERS,  
 WA SO  
 KYOODAI DESU KARAKAZUO AND SETSUKO  
 KAZUO- ARE  
 SAN TO SETSUKO-SAN WA MY COUSINS.  
 WATAKUSHI NO ITOKO  
 DESU.  
 KAZUO-SAN NO OTOOSANKAZUO'S FATHER AND  
 TO  
 OKAASAN WAMOTHER ARE (BECOME)  
 WATAKUSHI MY  
 NO OJI TO OBA NIUNCLE AND AUNT.  
 NARIMASU.  
 SETSUKO-SAN WASETSUKO IS THREE  
 KAZUO-SAN YEARS  
 YORI MITTSU TOSHIUE DE OLDER THAN KAZUO, SO  
 NEESAN DESU. (SHE IS HIS) OLDER  
 SISTER.  
 KAZUO-SAN WAKAZUO IS TWO YEARS  
 WATAKUSHI  
 YORI FUTATSU YOUNGER THAN I.  
 TOSHISHITA  
 DESU.  
 WATAKUSHI NO OJIISAN MY GRANDFATHER IS 85  
 WA  
 HACHIJU-GO-SAI DE YEARS OLD, AND (HE IS  
 TOSHI- A)  
 YORI DESU. OBAASAN WA VERY OLD MAN. GRAND

GO-NEN	MAE	NIMOTHER	DIED	FIVE
NAKUNARI-		YEARS		
MASHITA.		AGO.		

### Vocabulary and Notes

	PLAIN	HONORIFIC
family	KAZOKU	GO-KAZOKU
father	CHICHI	OTOOSAN
mother	HAHA	OKAASAN
grandfather	SOFU	OJISAN
grandmother	SOBO	OBAASAN
elder brother	ANI	(O)NIISAN
elder sister	ANE	(O)NEESAN
younger brother	OTOOTO	OTOOTOSAN
younger sister	IMOOTO	IMOOTOSAN
uncle	OJI	OJISAN
aunt	OBA	OBASAN
brothers and sisters	KYOODAI	GO-KYOODAI
son	MUSUKO	MUSUKOSAN, (O)BOTCHAN*
daughter	MUSUME	MUSUMESAN, OJOOSAN*
baby	AKAMBOO	AKACHAN*
husband	SHUJIN	GO-SHUJIN
wife	KANAI	OKU SAN
grandchild	MAGO	(O)MAGOSAN

\* These are affectionate terms.

Botchan is used for boys up to about 10 years old.

Although the honorific form is not used when referring to members of your own family when talking about them to a third party, note that this form is used when addressing them directly. For example:

(a) Watakushi no chichi to haha to ani wa Tookyoo ni sunde imasu.

Here you are talking about your family to someone else.

(b) Otoosan, okaasan, niisan, Jiroo, o-yasumi nasai.

Father, mother, (older) brother, and Jiro, goodnight!

In this example (b) you are addressing them, so you indicate respect to your elders by using the honorific san. san is added when addressing relatives who are older than you are. Jiro, who is your younger brother, does not rate a SAN.

"NO" USED IN RELATIVE CLAUSE: No, as used in Marunouchi no kaisha, or Tokyo no ani, is used to show the existence of the object in that particular locale. Therefore, no has the meanings of ni aru in the former, and ni iru in the latter.

(a) Marunouchi no kaisha—Marunouchi ni aru kaisha

A company which is located in Marunouchi

(b) Tokyo no ani—Tokyo ni iru ani

My brother who is in Tokyo

THE SCHOOL SYSTEM IN JAPAN is established after the American system.

SHOOGAKKOO —grade school, six years



CHUUGAKKOO —junior high school, three years  
KOOTOOGAKKOO—senior high school, three years  
DAIGAKU —university, four years  
DAIGAKUIN —graduate school

# CHAPTER 15

## ABRAHAM LINCOLN

1st BASE of  
VERB + KERU

STEM of ICHI-  
DAN VERB + RARERU

4th BASE of  
VERB + RU

—PASSIVE VOICE (*the subject  
receiving the action of a verb*)

—CAN (*potential form*)

ABRAHAM LINCOLN WA IMA  
KARA HYAKU ROKUJU-SAN  
NEN GURAI MAE AMERICA  
GASSHUUKOKU KENTUCKY-  
SHUU HARDING-GUN NI  
UMAREMASHITA.

ABRAHAM LINCOLN WAS  
BORN IN THE COUNTY OF  
HARDING, STATE OF KEN-  
TUCKY, UNITED STATES OF  
AMERICA ABOUT ONE HUN-  
DRED AND SIXTY-THREE  
YEARS AGO (FROM NOW).

Lincoln wa  
kodomo no toki kara  
gakumon ga suki deshita ga  
\*Lincoln wa kodomo no toki kara  
gakumon ga suki deshita ga . . .  
uchi ga  
hijoo ni bimboo deshita

as for Lincoln (nom. case)  
from when (he) was a child  
liked studies but . . .  
\*Lincoln, from his childhood, liked  
his studies but . . .  
(his) home (nom. case)  
was very poor

node  
gakko e  
ikemasen deshita

LINCOLN WA KODOMO NO  
TOKI KARA GAKUMON GA  
SUKI DESHITA GA UCHI GA  
HIJOO NI BIMBOO DESHITA  
NODE, GAKKOO E IKEMASEN  
DESHITA. HON MO KAEMA-  
SEN DESHITA.  
SHIKASHI, TOMODACHI KARA  
HON O KARITE HITORI DE  
ISSHOOKEEMMEI NI BENKYOO  
SHIMASHITA.  
LINCOLN WA WAKAI TOKI  
IRO-IRO NA SHIGOTO O  
SHIMASHITA.

hyakushoo o shitari  
hito ni yatowarete  
hataraitari  
\*hito ni yatowarete  
hataraitari . . .  
shoonin ni nattari shimashita

ARU TOKI WA HYAKUSHOO O  
SHITARI, HITO NI YATOWARE-  
TE HATARAITARI, SHOONIN  
NI NATTARI SHIMASHITA.

so  
to school  
was not able to go

FROM HIS CHILDHOOD,  
LINCOLN LIKED (TO) STUDY,  
BUT SINCE (HIS) HOME WAS  
VERY POOR HE WAS UNABLE  
TO GO TO SCHOOL. HE WAS  
ALSO UNABLE TO BUY  
BOOKS.  
HOWEVER, HE BORROWED  
BOOKS FROM FRIENDS, AND  
HE STUDIED WELL (HARD)  
BY HIMSELF.  
WHEN LINCOLN WAS YOUNG  
HE DID A VARIETY OF WORK.

at one time (he) farmed  
hired by someone  
at another time he worked  
\*at another time he was  
hired by someone and worked . . .  
at another time he became a  
merchant

AT ONE TIME HE FARMED,  
AT ANOTHER TIME HE WAS  
HIRED BY SOMEONE, AND HE  
ALSO BECAME A MERCHANT.

jibun de  
 hooritsu o  
 benkyoo shi . . .  
 \*jibun de hooritsu o benkyoo shi . . .  
 nijuu-hassai no toki  
 Springfield e utsutte  
 \*nijuu-hassai no toki Springfield  
 e utsutte . . .  
 bengoshi ni narimashita

LINCOLN WA JIBUN DE HOO-  
RITSU O BENKYOO SHI, NI-  
JUU-HASSAI NO TOKI SPRING-  
FIELD E UTSUTTE BENGOSHI  
NI NARIMASHITA.

dan dan  
 yuumei ni natte  
 \*dan dan yuumei ni natte . . .

tootoo  
 sen happyaku rokujuu-nen ni  
 America Gasshuukoku no  
 daitooryoo ni  
 erabare mashita

DAN-DAN YUUMEI NI NATTE,  
TOOTOO SEN HAPPYAKU  
ROKUJUU-NEN NI (WA)  
AMERICA GASSHUUKOKU NO  
DAITOORYOO NI ERABARE-  
MASHITA.  
LINCOLN GA DAITOORYOO NI  
NATTE IRU TOKI YUUMEI NA

by himself  
 law (obj. case)  
 studied and . . .  
 \*he studied law by himself and . . .  
 when he was 28 years old  
 moved to Springfield  
 \*he moved to Springfield when  
 he was 28 years old and . . .  
 became an attorney

LINCOLN STUDIED LAW BY  
HIMSELF, AND WHEN HE WAS  
28 YEARS OLD, HE MOVED  
TO SPRINGFIELD AND BE-  
CAME AN ATTORNEY.

gradually  
 became famous (and)  
 (He) gradually became famous  
 and . . .  
 finally  
 in 1860 (specific time)  
 United States of America's  
 to the presidency  
 was elected (passive)

GRADUALLY HE BECAME  
FAMOUS, AND FINALLY IN  
1860 HE WAS ELECTED PRESI-  
DENT OF THE UNITED  
STATES OF AMERICA. (ELECT-  
ED TO THE PRESIDENCY).  
DURING THE TIME LINCOLN  
WAS PRESIDENT HE MADE

"DŌREI KAIHŌO NO SENGĒN"  
O SHIMASHITA\

minami no shuu ni totte  
dorei wa  
keisaiteki ni  
hitsuuyoo deshita kara

SHIKASHI MINAMI NO SHUU  
NI TOTTE, DŌREI WA KEIZAI-  
TEKI NI HITSUYOO DESHITA  
KARA KONO SENGĒN NI  
HANTAI SHIMASHITA\  
SONO TAME, SEN-HAPPYAKU  
RŌKUUJUU-ICHI-NEN NI NAM-  
BOKU SENSŌO GA ŌKOTTE,  
MINAMI NO SHUU TO KITA  
NO SHUU GA TATAKAIMASHI-  
TA\

KITA NO SHUU DEWA KOO-  
GYŌO GA SAKAN DE MINAMI  
WA NOOGYŌOKOKU DESHITA\

kono sensō wa  
yōnenkan  
tsuzukimashita  
ga

THE FAMOUS "DECLARATION  
TO EMANCIPATE THE  
SLAVES."

for the southern states  
as for the slaves (nom. case)  
from the standpoint of economy  
because (they) were necessary

HOWEVER, FOR THE SOUTH-  
ERN STATES, THE SLAVES  
WERE NECESSARY ECONOM-  
ICALLY, SO THEY OPPOSED  
THIS PROCLAMATION.

DUE TO THIS, THE CIVIL WAR  
STARTED (BROKE OUT) IN  
1861 AND THE SOUTHERN  
STATES AND THE NORTHERN  
STATES FOUGHT.

IN THE NORTHERN STATES,  
INDUSTRIES WERE FLOUR-  
ISHING, AND THE SOUTH  
WAS AN AGRICULTURAL  
COUNTRY.

as for this war (nom. case)  
four years  
continued  
but (conj.)

\*kono sensoo wa yonenkan  
tsurukimashita ga . . .  
tootoo  
kita no shuu ga katte  
minami no shuu ga makemashita

KONO SENSOO WA YONENKAN  
TSUZUKIMASHITA GA TOO-  
TOO KITA NO SHUU GA KAT-  
TE, MINAMI NO SHUU GA  
MAKEMASHITA.  
KONO SENSOOCHUU KITA NO  
HITOTACHI MO MINAMI NO  
HITOTACHI MO TAIHEN  
KOMARIMASHITA.

hajime no uchi wa  
minami no shuu no hitotachi ni  
yoku omowaremasen deshita

DESU KARA, LINCOLN WA  
HAJIME NO UCHI WA MINAMI  
NO SHUU NO HITOTACHI NI  
(WA) YOKU OMOWAREMASEN  
DESHITA.  
MATA, ARU HITOTACHI KARA  
(WA) WARUKU IWAREMASHI-  
TA.

\*This war continued for four  
years but . . .  
finally  
northern states won (and)  
southern states lost

THIS WAR LASTED FOUR  
YEARS, BUT FINALLY THE  
NORTHERN STATES WON  
AND THE SOUTHERN STATES  
LOST.  
DURING THIS WAR THE  
NORTHERN PEOPLE AND THE  
SOUTHERN PEOPLE WERE  
GREATLY TROUBLED.

at the beginning  
by the people of the southern  
states (agent of action)  
was not well thought of

FOR THIS REASON, IN THE  
BEGINNING LINCOLN WAS  
NOT WELL THOUGHT OF BY  
THE PEOPLE OF THE SOUTH-  
ERN STATES.  
AGAIN (FURTHERMORE), HE  
WAS ILL-SPOKEN OF BY SOME  
PEOPLE (NOT WELL SPOKEN  
OF).

SEN-HAPPYAKU ROKUJUJŪ-  
GO-NEN SHIGATSU JUUYOKKA  
NO BAN FORD-ZA DE SHIBAI  
O MITE ITA TOKI JOHN BOOTH  
TO IYU MONO NI PISUTORU  
DE ATAMA O UTAREMASHITA.

chikaku no ie e  
okurarete  
\*chikaku no ie e okurarete . . .

isha no teate o ukemashita  
keredomo  
\*isha no teate o ukemashita  
keredomo . . .

LINCOLN WA SUGU (NI)  
CHIKAKU NO IE E OKURARE-  
TE, ISHA NO TEATE O UKU-  
MASHITA KEREDOMO, YOKU-  
ASA SHICHI-JI HAN NI NAKU-  
NARIMASHITA.

(ON THE) NIGHT OF APRIL 14,  
1865, WHEN (HE) WAS WATCH-  
ING A PLAY AT THE FORD  
THEATER, HE WAS SHOT (IN  
'THE) HEAD WITH A PISTOL  
BY A FELLOW CALLED JOHN  
BOOTH.

to the nearby house  
was sent and (passive)  
\*(he) was sent to a nearby house  
and . . .  
doctor's care received  
however . . .  
\*(he) received the doctor's care  
but . . .

LINCOLN WAS SENT (TAKEN)  
TO A NEARBY HOUSE IMME-  
DIATELY AND RECEIVED  
DOCTOR'S TREATMENT, BUT  
HE PASSED AWAY AT 7:30 ON  
THE FOLLOWING MORNING.

## Vocabulary List from the Lesson

Amerika	(n.) U.S.A.
Gasshuukoku	
gun	(n.) county
umareru	(v.i.) to be born (n.c.v.)
umaremashta	(polite past of umareru) was born Tookyoo (place) de umaremashta.
kodomo	(n.) child
gakumon	(n.) studies
hijoo ni	(adv.) very; same meaning as taihen
bimboo	(n.) poor (in the sense of material wealth)
ikemasen	(n.) cannot go; negative potential form of iku (See I.C. & G.N.)
shikashi	(conj.) however, but, nevertheless

tomodachi	(n.) friend
wakai	(adj.) young
ikka	(n.) a family
yatou	(v.t.) to hire
yatowareru	(passive form of yatou) to be hired (See I.C. & G.N.)
yatowarete	("te" form of yatowareru used con-nectively) . was hired and .
hataraku	(v.i.) to work
hataraitari	(alternate action form of hataraku— See I.C. & G.N.)
mata	(conj.) again
shoonin	(n.) businessman, tradesman
shoobai	(n.) business; shoobai suru—to do business
nijuuhassai	(n.) nijuuhachi—28; sai is the classifier used to count age of animate beings. Hassai is the phonetic change.
jibun de	by oneself
hooritsu	(n.) law
utsuru	(v.i.) to move (location)
bengoshi	(n.) attorney, lawyer
dan-dan	gradually
yuumei	(n.) famous; yuumei na (adj.)
tootoo	finally
daitooryoo	(n.) president, or presidency (of a nation)
erabareru	(passive form of erabu—to elect), to be elected (See I.C. & G.N.)
okoru	(v.i.) to start, to break out
okotte	("te" form of okoru, used connec-tively). broke out and.



tatakau	(v.i.) to battle, to engage in war, to fight (in the sense of "to battle" or "engage in war," postposition to is used after the object one fights "against." Beikoku to tatakau.)
dorei	(n.) slaves
kaihoo	(n.) emancipation
sengen	(n.) proclamation; sengen suru (Chi. v.)—to proclaim
. ni totte	for (used in the sense of "as far as the southern states are concerned. .")
hitsuyoo	(n.) necessary
hantai suru	(Chi. v.) to oppose (takes the postposition ni when used to oppose something: sono hanashi NI hantai suru).
tsuzuku	(v.i.) to continue, to last, to extend
sakan	(n.) flourishing, thriving
sensoochuu	(n.) during the war. Suffix chuu (or fuu) means "during the period," e.g., natsujuu—during the summer; ichitiichijuu—throughout the entire day. Learn which suffix to use by association.
hajime	(n.) the beginning, the lead, the first
hajime ni	in the beginning
tachi	(suffix) denotes plural; usually Japanese nouns do not have number, but pronouns such as watakushi, ano kata, kono hito, sono hito, anata, ano onna no hito, etc., are singular. In order to show plural of such words, tachi is added, (ra: less polite)
omowareru	(passive form of omou—to think) to be thought of

omowaremasen	(polite neg. past) was not well thought of
deshita	
iwareru	(passive form of iu—to say) to be spoken of
iwaremashita	(polite past of iwareru)
aru toki	one time, once upon a time, once
-za	(suffix) denotes a theatre
mono ni	(p.p.) Here ni is used to introduce an "agent of action," or that which acted upon the subject. (See I.C. & G.N.)
atama	(n.) head
utareru	(passive form of utsu—to shoot, hit, strike, administer a blow) to be hit—See I.C. & G.N.
utaremashita	(polite past of utareru) was shot
mono	(n.) a person, a fellow
sugu (ni)	(adv.) at once, immediately, promptly
okurareru	(passive form of okuru—to send) to be sent
okur arete	("te" form, used connectively). was sent and .
isha	(n.) doctor
teate	(n.) treatment
teate o suru	(Chi. v.) to give treatment
teate o ukeru	to receive treatment, to be treated (medically)
teate o	(polite past) received treatment
ukemashita	

yokuasa	(n.) following morning. (Yoku is a prefix meaning "following." yohuban, yokujitsu, yokunen, etc.)
nakunaru	(v.i.) to pass away (in the sense of "to die"; it is used only in connection with the death of a human being.)
nakunarimashita	(polite past of nakunaru) died

### Additional Vocabulary

byooiin	(n.) hospital
byooki	(n.) illness
kusuri	(n.) medicine
senkyo	(n.) election
senkyo suru	(Chi. v.) to elect
seiji	(n.) politics
seijika	(n.) politician; ka indicates the person
seijiteki	(adj.) political
seijigaku	(n.) political science; gaku shows study
shikaru	(v.) to scold
shinu	(v.) to die

### Important Construction and Grammar Notes

**PASSIVE VOICE:** The verb is in the active voice when the subject does the acting. Conversely, when the subject is acted upon, the verb is in the passive voice.

The Japanese passive voice is formed by adding reru to the first, or the negative base of the yodan verb (c.v.), and rareru to the stem of the ichidan verb (n.c.v.):

erabu eraba-reru (was elected)

miru mi-rareru (was seen)

The passive forms of the irregular verbs suru and kuru are:

sa-reru ko-rareru

Therefore:

1st BASE of C.V.	+	RERU		
STEM of N.C.V.	+	RARERU	=	PASSIVE

The resulting passive verbs are conjugated as non-conjugating (eru) verbs:

erabareru

erabaremasu

erabaremashita

erabaremasen deshita

erabareta

etc.

Note the active and passive voice in the following examples:

1. Booth ga Lincoln o Booth shot Lincoln,  
uchimashita. (active)
2. Lincoln wa Booth ni pisutoru Lincoln was shot with a  
de utaremashita. pistol by Booth.

NI: This has the meaning of "by..." Ni as used here is often referred to as the postposition which introduces the "agent of action" or that which acts upon the subject.

1. Lincoln wa pisutoru de Lincoln was shot with a  
utare mashita. pistol.

In this example *de* introduces the instrument used in this act. Make the distinction between this and the "agent" of action given below (see below for more examples of this).

2. Lincoln wa Booth ni pistoru de Lincoln was shot with a  
utare mashita. pistol by Booth.
3. Watakushi wa sensei ni I was scolded by the  
shikara-reta. teacher.

The following passive patterns should be memorized:

1. 

SUBJECT	WA	VERB
who		what happened

Doroboo WA utare mashita.  
(The robber was shot.)

2. 

SUBJECT	WA	AGENT	NI	VERB
who		by whom		what happened

Doroboo WA junsu NI utare mashita.  
(The robber by the police was shot.)

3. 

SUBJECT	WA	AGENT	NI	INSTRUMENT	DE	VERB
who		by whom		with what		what happened

Doroboo WA junsu NI pistoru DE utare mashita.  
(The robber by the police with a pistol was shot.)

4. 

SUBJECT	WA	AGENT	NI	INSTRUMENT	DE	OBJECT	O	VERB
who		by whom		with what		what		what happened

Doroboo WA junsu NI pistoru DE ashi O utare mashita.  
(The robber by the police with a pistol (in) the leg was shot.)

**Note:** (a) The "agent" and the "instrument" can be interchanged. The basic rule that the subject should come at the beginning and the object next to the verb should be adhered to.

(b) **DO NOT** use passive form unless it is desired to emphasize the subject as the recipient of the action. Notice the difference in the following expressions:

- i. The horse kicked me. (In this sentence, "the horse" is the subject and "me" is the object.)—*Uma wa watakushi o kerimashita.*
- ii. I was kicked by a horse—*Watakushi wa uma ni kerare mashita.*  
(This places emphasis on the subject receiving the kicking.)

Do not confuse "agent of action" with "by means of" or "with." Study the following examples:

1. Dare ga Lincoln o pisutoru Who shot Lincoln with a  
de uchimashita ka. pistol?
2. Booth to iu mono ga Lincoln A fellow called Booth shot  
o pisutoru de uchimashita. Lincoln with a pistol.
3. Lincoln wa dare ni pisutoru By whom was Lincoln shot  
de utaremashita ka. with a pistol?
4. Booth to iu mono ni Lincoln Lincoln was shot with a  
wa pisutoru de utaremashita. pistol by a fellow called  
Booth.
5. Dare ga uchimashita ka. Who shot (Lincoln)?
6. Booth ga uchimashita. Booth did.
7. Dare ga utaremashita ka. Who was shot?
8. Lincoln ga utaremashita. Lincoln was shot.
9. Nan de utaremashita ka. With what was (he) shot?
10. Pisutoru de utaremashita. (He) was shot with a pistol.
11. Dare ni utaremashita ka. By whom was (he) shot?
12. Booth ni utaremashita. (He) was shot by Booth.

ANOTHER USAGE OF PASSIVE FORM: This form is also used to indicate a situation where an action is indirectly inflicted on the subject, the indirect result of an act done by some other person's action. Unlike the normal usage where a transitive verb is used and the action is directly inflicted on the subject, in this example the intransitive verb is used, and the subject is suffering the consequence of this action.

A similar expression in English is "The motor went dead on me, and I was stuck." "The workers walked out on me, so I closed shop," etc.

1. Benkyoochuu Tanaka-san ni korarete komarimashita.  
During (my) study Mr. Tanaka came and I was distressed.  
(meaning I suffered the consequence of his visit).

2. Ichiban isogashii toki ni (watakushi wa) jochuu ni derarete komatta.  
(During) the busiest time, the maid walked out on me, and I was in trouble.

POTENTIAL FORM (the short form): In Chapter 10 one form of the potential form was introduced.

The 4th base of the yodan verb (c.v.) is the short potential form meaning "to be able." The short potential form of hanasu (to speak) is as follows:

1.           sa  
         shi  
         shi  
hana       su  
         SE... *hanasemasu* or *hanaseru* (can speak)

Hanaseru means "to be speakable" or "to be able to be spoken"; kakeru, "to be able to be written." In translation, however, Nihongo ga hanaseru—"Japanese language is speakable," kanji ga kakeru—"Kanji is writeable" should be "I can speak Japanese" and "I can write kanji."

2.           ka  
         ki  
         ku  
ka       KE... *kakemasu* or *kakeru* (can write)

The resulting verbs are handled as non-conjugating verbs: hanaseru, hanasemashi, etc. With ichidan verbs (n.c.v.), rareru is added to the stem.

1. mi + rareru—mirareru (can see)

## 2. tabe + rareru—taberareru (can eat)

Note that this form is the same as the passive form. Therefore, the meaning must be determined by the context.

Thus:

4th BASE of C.V. + RU (MASU)	= CAN . . . (Potential)
STEM of N.C.V. + RARERU	

GA FOR O: With potential forms constructed by verb conjugation, the objective postposition o of the koto ga dekiru form changes to ga or wa.

1. Anata wa gohan o taberu koto ga Are you able to eat  
dekimasu ka. cooked rice?  
Anata wa gohan ga taberare-masu Are you able to eat  
ka. cooked rice?
2. Anata wa hon o yomu koto ga Can you read a book?  
dekimasu ka.  
Anata wa hon ga yomemasu ka. Can you read a book?

TARI, TARI SURU: This construction is usually used in pairs to express alternate action when it is desired to show the subject "sometimes does (did) ., at another time does (did) ., " "at one time (I) did. and then (I) did ., " "now then." The two verbs ending in tari must always be followed by some form of suru which determines the tense of the whole sentence. Sometimes, one tari is used, but in this case other parallel acts are implied though not enumerated. The order of the action in this use is not important.

1. Watakushi wa gakusei no toki sara o arattaú gareeji de hataraxaxi shimashita.



(When I was a student, at one time I washed dishes, and at another time worked in a garage.)

2. Nichiyooobi ni tegami o kaitzñ terebi o mitari shimashita.  
(On Sunday I did such things as writing letters and watching T.V.)

Here the main idea is that these actions were done on Sunday, with no attempt to show in what order they were done.

When the order of action is consecutive, i.e., when the intent is to indicate the second action following the completion of the first act, use the "te" form (see p. 224).

1. Chooshoku o tabete gakkoo e ikimashita.
2. Nihon e itte Nihongo o benkyoo shimasu.

#### HOW TO FORM ALTERNATE ACTION:

1. First, form the abrupt past (simply change the "e" of the "te" verb to "a").
2. Add ri to the abrupt past.
3. Use it in pairs and complete the construction by using some form of the verb suru.

yomu —yonde—yonda—yondari  
taberu—tabete—tabeta—tabetari  
suru —shite —shita —shitari

#### Fluency Drill

In this drill, pay close attention to the use of the postposition. The word order of different parts need not be so definite—most of them are movable.

Doroboo wa utareta.

Doroboo wa ashi o utareta.

Doroboo wa junsu ni ashi o utareta.

Doroboo wa junsu ni pisutoru de ashi o utareta.

Doroboo wa sakuban junsu ni pisutoru de ashi o utareta.

Doroboo wa ie no mae de sakuban junsu ni pisutoru de ashi o utareta.

Doroboo wa ie no mae de sakuban ku-ji goro junsu ni pisutoru de ashi o utareta.

The robber was shot.

The robber was shot in the leg.

The robber was shot in the leg by the police.

The robber was shot in the leg with a pistol by the police.

The robber was shot in the leg with a pistol by the police last night.

The robber was shot in the leg in front of the house with a pistol by the police last night.

The robber was shot in the leg in front of the house with a pistol by the police last night about 9 o'clock.

Substitution Drill

(1st Base Verb)

UTA	}	+	RERU
KAKA			
OKURA			
DASA			
etc.			

(Stem of N.C.V.)

MI	}	+	RARERU
TABE			
SHIRABE **			
etc.			

(4th Base Verb)

KAKE	}	+	RU
ARUKE			
HANASE			
YOME			
etc.			

\*\* *shiraberu*—to investigate

## Exercises

1. The boy was scolded.      Otoko no ko wa shikarareta.
2. The boy was scolded by Otoko no ko wa sensei ni  
the teacher.      shikarareta.
3. The girl (onna no ko) was Onna no ko wa kerareta.  
kicked.
4. The girl was kicked by a Onna no ko wa uma ni  
horse.      kerareta.
5. Jiro was elected.      Jiroo wa erabareta.
6. Jiro was elected by the Jiroo wa seito ni erabareta.  
students.
7. I was seen.      Watakushi wa mirareta.
8. I was seen by the Watakushi wa koochoo ni  
principal (koochoo).      mirareta.
9. The cow (ushi) was sold.      Ushi wa urareta.
10. The cow was sold by the Ushi wa hyakushoo ni urareta.  
farmer.

Say the following 5 sentences 2 ways—the long form (..  
koto ga dekitnasu), and the short form (4th base + ru).

11. I can speak Japanese.      Nihongo o hanasu koto ga  
dekimasu.      Nihongo ga  
hanasemasu.
  12. I can write kanji.      Kanji o kaku koto ga  
dekimasu. Kanji ga kakemasu.
  13. He can buy a car.      Ano kata wa jidoosha o kau  
koto ga dekimasu.  
Ano kata wa jidoosha ga  
kaemasu.
  14. I cannot wait.      Matsu koto ga dekimasen.  
Matemasen.
  15. You cannot eat this.      Anata wa kore o taberu koto ga  
dekimasen.  
Anata wa kore ga  
taberaremasen.
  16. Last night I watched T.V. and read books.      Sakuban terebi o mitari hon o  
yon-dari shimashita.
  17. On Sundays I study and take a walk.      Nichiyoo ni benkyoo shitari  
sampo shitari shimasu.
  18. People are getting on and off the train.      Hitobito wa kisha ni nottari  
oritari shite imasu.
  19. He is walking back and forth.      Ittari kitari shite imasu.
  20. The children are standing and sitting.      Kodomotachi wa tattari  
koshikaketa-ri shite imasu.
  21. The people are drinking and eating.      Hitobito wa nondari tabetari  
shite imasu.
- Combine the following sentences, using te, and the 2nd base.
22. The northern states won.      Kita no shuu wa katte (kachi)  
The southern states lost.      minami no shuu wa  
makemashita.

23. He became a lawyer. He Ano kata wa bengoshi ni natte  
became famous. (nari) yuumei ni narimashita.
24. I received treatment. I Teate o ukete (uke) ie e  
went home by taxi. takushii de kaerimashita.
25. He studied political Seijigaku o benkyoo shite (shi)  
science. He became aseijika ni narimashita.  
politician.
26. Mr. Brown got up early, Brown-san wa hayaku okite,  
(and) ate breakfast. He choo-shoku o tabe, kembutsu  
went sightseeing. ni dekake-mashita.
27. The boy came at 7 Otoko no ko wa shichi-ji ni  
o'clock. He went home at kite, juu-ji ni kaerimashita.  
10 o'clock.

Translate into Japanese:

1. I was born in the city of Los Angeles, California, on July 4, 1930.

Note: In translating date, address, and other similar data, start from the general to more specific, e.g., 1930, July, 4, hour, minute, second.

2. Because I began studying Japanese two months ago, I cannot read kanji yet, but (I) can speak a little.

Note: Use the long and short potential forms in translating this.

3. My money was stolen and I was not able to buy the ticket. I was extremely troubled.

Note: The passive form is used to indicate the subject indirectly suffering the result.

4. Throughout the summer vacation, I occasionally read, and at other times I wrote a book.

Note: summer vacation—natsuyasumi

5. First I was scolded by my teacher. After I came home I was struck on the head by my brother.

6. The Pacific War broke out on December 7, 1941, and continued for four years. During this war, both the American people and the Japanese people were distressed.

Note: both—mo . . mo . (see p. 96).

7. In America, the President is elected by the people of 50 states once every four years.

8. The following day I went to the hospital in the town to receive treatment from the doctor.

Note: hospital (which is) in the town—"in the town" (relative clause) modifies "hospital," so:

a. machi ni aru byooiin

or

b. machi no byooiin—no takes the place of ni aru in a relative clause. Tokyo no tomodachi—this means "a friend who is in Tokyo."

9. I did not want to be sent to Formosa, but I was chosen by my company.

Note: "did not want to be sent"

to send—okuru

to be sent—okurareru

want to be sent—okuraretai

do not want to be sent—okuraretakunai

did not want to be sent—okuraretakunakatta

10. In the beginning, Japan imported many manufactured goods, but now Japan is an exporter. For Japan, foreign trade is necessary.

Note: exporter—yushutsukoku

Answer in Japanese:

1. Lincoln wa naze kodomo no toki gakkoo e ikemasen deshita ka.

2. Ima America de daigaku e iku no ni takusan okane ga irimasu ka.

Bengoshi ni naru no ni nan-nen gakkoo e ikanakereba narimasen ka.

3. Anata wa jidoosha ni hikareta koto ga arimasu ka.

Note: hiku—"to run over"

4. Amerika no daitooryoo wa dare ni erabaremasu ka. Amerikajin wa mainen daitooryoo o erabimasu ka.

5. Naze Namboku Sensoo ga okorimashita ka. Dochira ga katte, dochira ga makemashita ka.

6. Anata wa maiban rajio o kiitari terebi o mitari shimasu ka.  
Taitei nani o shimasu ka.

7. Kodomo no toki kara nakunaru toki made Lincoln ni tsuite  
hanashite kuda-sai.

Note: kara . . . made—"from. . . up to (until)"  
. ni tsuite—"concerning, about"

8. Naze John Booth to iu mono wa daitooryoo o pisutoru de  
uchimashita ka. Lincoln ga utareta toki nani o shite imashita  
ka.

9. Gakusei ga tabi-tabi eiga (movie) e ittari asondari suru to  
yoi gakusha (scholar) ni naru koto ga dekimasu ka.

10. "Dorei o kaihou suru sengen" wa keizaiteki ni daiji na  
sengen deshita ka. Seijiteki ni daiji deshita ka.

Put appropriate postpositions and conjunctions in the blanks:

1.  
Watakushi \_\_\_\_\_ gakkoo \_\_\_\_\_ sensei \_\_\_\_\_ shikararemashita.

2. Gakusei \_\_\_\_\_ sensei no hanashi \_\_\_\_\_ hantai shimashita.

3. Ano kata wa hokubu \_\_\_\_\_ umarete dan-dan  
yuumei \_\_\_\_\_ bengoshi \_\_\_\_\_ narimashita.

4. Ano seijika wa daitooryoo \_\_\_\_\_ erabaremashita \_\_\_\_\_  
sono shigoto \_\_\_\_\_ tekishite imasen.

5. Kyoo wa natsu \_\_\_\_\_ yoo \_\_\_\_\_ hi desu.



6. Haru \_\_\_\_\_ naru \_\_\_\_\_ atatakaku narimasu.
7. Anata \_\_\_\_\_ otoosan \_\_\_\_\_ dare \_\_\_\_\_ yatowarete imasu ka.
8. Anata \_\_\_\_\_ uchi \_\_\_\_\_ hachi-ji \_\_\_\_\_ itta toki  
dare \_\_\_\_\_ imasen deshita.
9. Watakushi wa ie \_\_\_\_\_ isha \_\_\_\_\_ teate \_\_\_\_\_ uketa ato de  
byooiin \_\_\_\_\_ okuraremashita.
10. Yokohama \_\_\_\_\_ fune \_\_\_\_\_ notte, higashi no  
hoo \_\_\_\_\_ Taiheiyo \_\_\_\_\_ wataru \_\_\_\_\_ San  
Francisco \_\_\_\_\_ tsukimasu.
11. Watakushi \_\_\_\_\_ gakkoo \_\_\_\_\_ ikemasen deshita  
\_\_\_\_\_ tomodachi \_\_\_\_\_ hon \_\_\_\_\_ karite benkyoo shimashita.
12. Eki no mae \_\_\_\_\_ aru kippu uriba  
\_\_\_\_\_ kippu \_\_\_\_\_ ni-mai katte hoomu (platform) no  
hoo \_\_\_\_\_ ikimashita.

Compose sentences using the following verbs in "alternate action" construction. Note the verb tense required.

1. (a) hon o yomimasu (b) tegami o kakimasu
2. (a) akeru (b) shimeru
3. (a) terebi o mimashita (b) rajio o kikimashita
4. (a) biiru (beer) o (b) (o) sushi o tabeta  
nonda
5. (a) hashitte imasu (b) tonde imasu (tobu—jump)
6. (a) naite iru (b) waratte iru (warau—laugh)  
(naku—cry)

7. (a) shikararemashita (b) homeraremashita komeru—  
praise)
8. (a) tatsu (b) koshikakeru
9. (a) tabeta (b) nonda

CHAPTER 16  
TEISHAJOO—STATION

**NOUN O + VERB (of movement)** = **THROUGH ...**  
(action in space)

**"TE" VERB** +  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ARIMASU} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{IMASU} \end{array} \right.$  = **CONDITION (state of being)**

Brown-san wa	as for Mr. Brown (nom. case)
Nihon ni kite kara	after coming to Japan
isogashikute	being busy and
*Brown-san wa Nihon ni	*Mr. Brown, after coming to
kite kara isogashikute.	Japan, being busy
kembutsu suru	to do the sights
kembutsu suru hima	time to go sightseeing (rel. cl.)
*kembutsu suru hima ga	*no time to go sightseeing
arimasen	
BROWN-SAN WA NIHON SINCE MR. BROWN CAME	
NI	TO
KITE	KARA JAPAN, HE HAS BEEN
ISOGASHIKUTE	BUSY
KEMBUTSU SURU HIMA	AND HAD NO TIME TO GO
GA	
ARIMASEN DESHITA.	SIGHTSEEING.
ashita kara	from tomorrow
natsuyasumi ga	summer vacation (nom. case)
hajimaru	begins
node	because
*ashita kara natsuyasumi ga	*because summer vacation
hajimaru node.	begins (from) tomorrow

Kyoto kembutsu ni for (the purpose of) Kyoto sight  
dekakeru

dekakeru tsumori seeing to depart  
intend to depart

\* Kyoto kembutsu ni \*intend to go Kyoto sightseeing  
dekakeru  
tsumori desu

ASHITA KARABECAUSE SUMMER VACA  
NATSUYASUMI  
GA HAJIMARU NODE TION BEGINS TOMORROW,  
KYOTO HE  
KEMBUTSU NI IS PLANNING TO GO SIGHT  
DEKAKERU  
TSUMORI DESU. SEEING IN KYOTO.  
eki no annaijo de at the station's information desk  
tazunete imasu is asking  
IMA EKI NO ANNAIJO DE HE IS NOW ASKING AT  
THE  
TAZUNETE IMASU. STATION'S INFORMATION  
DESK.

(Brown): KOBE MADE NOWHERE CAN I BUY A  
NI- SECOND  
TOO NO KIPPU WACCLASS TICKET TO KOBE?  
DOKO DE  
KAEMASU KA.

(Clerk): GO-BAN NONUMBER FIVE WINDOW.  
MADO-  
GUCHI DESU.

(Brown): TSUGI NOWHAT TIME DOES THE  
KOOBE- NEXT

YUKI WA NAN-JI NIKOBE-BOUND TRAIN  
DEMASU LEAVE?

KA.

(Clerk): JUUNI-JIIT WILL LEAVE AT 12:25.  
NIJU-GO-

FUN NI DEMASU.

(Brown): SORE WA IS THAT AN EXPRESS OR  
KYUUKOO

DESU KA, TOKKYUU SUPER EXPRESS?  
DESU KA.

(Clerk): KYUUKOO DESU. IT IS (AN) EXPRESS.

(Brown): KOBE NI AT WHAT TIME DOES IT  
NAN-JI NI

TSUKIMASU KA. ARRIVE IN KOBE?

(Clerk): ASU NO ASA NO IT ARRIVES AT 6:40  
ROKU- TOMOR

JI YONJIPPUN NIROW MORNING, BUT IT AR  
TSUKIMASU

GA, SAN-NO-MIYA NIWARIVES AT SAN-NO-MIYA  
RO- AT

KU-JI SANJIPPUN NI 6:30.  
TSUKI

MASU.

chikagoro wa	nowadays
kisha ga	train (nom. case)
konde imasu	is crowded (state of being)
kara	because
*chikagoro wa kisha ga	*because the trains are crowded
konde	
imasu kara .	nowadays.

kippu ga

tickets

kaenai

cannot buy (potential)

kamo shiremasen

may

\*kippu ga kaenai kamo \*may not be able to buy tickets  
shiremasen

SHIKASHI CHIKAGORO HOWEVER, SINCE THE  
WA TRAINS

KISHA GA TAIHEN ARE VERY CROWDED  
KONDE NOWA

IMASU KARA KIPPU GADAYS, YOU MAY NOT BE  
KAE ABLE

NAI KAMO TO BUY A TICKET.  
SHIREMASEN.

(Brown): KONO KISHA NI CAN YOU RIDE ON THIS  
SHIMBASHI KARA NO TRAIN FROM SHIMBASHI?  
REM ASU  
KA.

keredomo

however

tsugi no

next (quasi adj.)

futsuu ressha nara

if it is regular train

\*keredomo tsugi no futsuu \*however, if it is the next  
ressha nara . regular train .

Shimbashi eki kara

from Shimbashi station

demo

even

noremasu

can get on

\*Shimbashi eki kara demo \*(You) can get on even from  
noremasu. Shimbashi station.

(Clerk): IIE, KYUUKOONO, THE EXPRESS DOES  
WA NOT

SHIMBASHI NIWASTOP AT SHIMBASHI, BUT  
 TOMARI- IF  
 MASEN. KEREDOMO IT IS THE NEXT REGULAR  
 TSUGI  
 NO FUTSUU RESSHA TRAIN, IT CAN BE  
 NARA BOARDED  
 SHIMBASHI EKI KARA EVEN FROM SHIMBASHI  
 DEMO STA  
 NOREMASU. TION.  
 (Brown): FUTSUU I DON'T WANT TO TAKE  
 RESSHA NI  
 WA NORITAKU AN ORDINARY TRAIN.  
 ARIMASEN.  
 TSUGI NO TOKKYUU DOES THE NEXT SPECIAL  
 WA  
 HIKONE 0 TOORIMASU EXPRESS TRAIN PASS  
 KA.

(THROUGH) HIKONE?

Hikone o  
 toorimasu

Hikone (action in space)  
 passes

(Clerk): HAI, HIKONE O YES, IT PASSES HIKONE,  
 TOORI BUT

MASU GADOESN'T STOP (THERE).  
 TOMARIMASEN.

(Brown): KOUBE MADE ONE SECOND CLASS TO  
 NITOO KOBE.

ICHI-MAI.

(Clerk): KATAMICHI IS IT ONE WAY OR ROUND  
 DESU KA

OOFUKU DESU KA. TRIP?

(Brown): KATAMICHI OI WOULD LIKE ONE WAY.  
O-

NEGAI SHIMASU.

(Clerk): SEN NIHYAKU IT IS 1200 YEN.  
EN DESU.

(Brown): KYUUKOO-KEN GIVE ME ALSO AN  
TO EXPRESS  
SHINDAI-KEN MO AND A SLEEPER TICKET.  
KUDASAI.

(Clerk): SHINDAI WA UE WILL THE UPPER BERTH  
DE II BE  
DESU KA. SHITA WA ALL RIGHT? THE LOWERS  
MOO

URIKIREMASHITA. ARE ALREADY SOLD OUT.

(Brown): SORE DEW AIN THAT CASE, SINCE IT  
SHIKA- CAN

TA GA ARIMASEN KARA NOT BE HELPED, THE  
UE UPPER

DE II DESU. WILL BE ALL RIGHT.

KOUBE-YUKI WAKOBE TRAINS ARE ON  
NAMBAN- WHAT

SEN DESU KA. TRACK NUMBER?

(Clerk): ROKU-BAN-SEN IT IS TRACK NUMBER SIX.  
DESU.

MADA JIKAN GA THERE IS STILL TIME.  
ARIMASU  
YO.

(Brown): AKABOO-SAN, REDCAP, PLEASE CHECK  
KONO



TORANKU                      DAKE ONLY THIS TRUNK, AND  
 AZUKETE,  
 TESAGE    KABAN    WA TAKE THE SUITCASE INTO  
 KISHA  
 NO            NAKA            E THE TRAIN.  
 MOCHI-KONDE  
 KUDASAI.

(Redcap): KASHIKOMARI- CERTAINLY.    IN    THAT  
    CASE,

MASHITA. SORE DEW A WILL YOU LEND ME THE  
 CHOTTO

KIPPU    O    KASHITE TICKET FOR A MOMENT,  
 KUDASAI.

TORANKU O AZUKE NISINCE I AM GOING TO  
 IKI-                                      CHECK

MASU KARA\*\*.                      THE TRUNK.

ANATA NO ZASEKI WA WHAT IS YOUR SEAT NUM  
 NAM-

BAN DESU KA.                      BER?

(Brown):                              IT IS NO. 21 OF CAR NO. 8.

HACHI-GOO-SHA NO  
 NIJU-ICHI-BAN DESU.

watakushi no kisha wa              my train (nom. case)

moo                                      already

kite imashita                          has come (state of being)

node                                      because (so)

\*watakushi no kisha wa              \*my train was already in, so .

moo kite imashita node .

ooisogi de                              in a great hurry

kaidan o	stairs (action in space)
hashitte agarimashita	ran and climbed

WATAKUSHI NO KISHAMY TRAIN WAS ALREADY  
 WA IN,  
 MOO KITE IMASHITASO I RAN UP THE STAIRS  
 NODE IN  
 OOSOGI DE KAIDAN OGREAT HASTE. THEY  
 HA- WERE  
 SHITTE AGARIMASHITA. ALL ALREADY LINED UP.  
 MIN  
 NA WA MOO NARANDE  
 IMA-  
 SHITA.

**\*\*kara** construction here, giving the reason, shows an afterthought. This pattern is used quite frequently in conversation—see p. 389 below.

### Vocabulary List from the Lesson

isogashii	(adj.) busy
isogashikute	("te" form of isogashii) busy and .
hima	(n.) free time (away from one's main preoccupation.)
kembutsu	suru time to do sightseeing; verb + hima
hima	means "time to verb"; Shimbun o yomu hima (time to read newspaper); terebi o miru hima (time to watch T.V.).
natsuyasumi	(n.) summer vacation
hajimaru	(v.i.) to begin (hajimeru—v.t.)
dekakeru	(v.i.) to leave (for a destination)
annaijo	(n.) information place, information desk.

tazuneru	(v.t.) to ask (use the postposition NI after the person to whom you are inquiring. Sensei NI ta-zunenasai.)
tazunete imasu	(prog, form) asking
ni-too	(n.) second class (too, a suffix indicating "class" or "grade," san-too—3rd class)
-ban	classifier for "number" Used after the numeral to indicate room number, telephone number, etc. namban—what number?
kyuukoo	(n.) express train
tokkyuu	(n.) super express train
tsuku	(v.i.) to reach (NI is used after the "place" where one arrives at. N.Y. NI tsuku.)
San-no-Miya	(n.) name of the station before Kobe.
shikashi	(conj.) however, but
komu	(v.i.) to be crowded (in reference to a "state" or "condition," use the progressive form—See I.C. & G.N.)
konde imasu	("te" + imasu, state of being) is crowded
shiremasen	kamo a form of expressing probability, doubt, or guess; maybe, possibly, probably, etc. (See I.C. & G.N.)
Shimbashi	(n.) name of a place near Tokyo.
noreru	(v.—potential form of noru—to ride, to get on) can get on
noremasu	(polite form of noreru)
futsuu	(n.) ordinary
ressha	(n.) train
demo	even (used after the noun it limits)

tooru	(v.i.) to pass through (use the postposition O after the area that is gone through. Tonneru O tooru.)
katamichi	(n.) one way
oofuku	(n.) round trip
o-negai shimasu	(idio.) "Please take care of this." "I would like to make this request."
-sen	railroad, streetcar line, track
namban-sen	what number line, what track (?)
shindai	(n.) bed, or sleeper on a train
shindai-ken	(n.) sleeper ticket; ken is a suffix meaning "ticket." Tokkyuu-ken—special express train ticket.
shikata ga arimasen	(idio.) "It cannot be helped."
ryoohoo	(n.) both, both sides
ii desu	all right, sufficient
akaboo	(n.) redcap
tesage kaban	(n.) suitcase, handbag
toranku	(n.) trunk
azukeru	(v.t.) to check (to put something in someone's care . . . . ni azukeru)
azuke ni ikimasu	go (in order) to check
mochi-komu	(v.t.) to take in, to take into . . . , carry in
mochi-konde	("te" of mochi-komu + kudasai) please
kudasai	take in .
kashikomarimashita	(idio.) certainly; "yes, I will accept (your request)"
chotto	(n.) a short space of time, a moment, a fraction of time

chotto no aida	(n.) for the duration of a short time, a short space of time, a moment
zaseki	(n.) seat
kasu	(v.t.) to lend (. o . . ni kasu)
kashite kudasai	("te" of kasu + kudasai) please lend me
kaidan	(n.) stairs
narabu	(v.i.) to stand in line
narande imashita	("te" + imasu, state of being)
	were lined up (See I.C. & G.N.)

### Additional Vocabulary

jikanhyoo	(n.) time table
shuppatsu	(n.) time of departure
jikan	
toochaku	(n.) time of arrival
jikan	
kaisatsu	(n.) ticket gate
guchi	
tonneru	(n.) tunnel
tekkyoo	(n.) bridge (made of steel)
tenimotsu	(n.) hand baggage department
toriatsukaijo	
hoomu	(n.) platform
norikaeru	(v.t.) to transfer, to change (a train, bus, etc.)
machiawashitsu	(n.) waiting room
okureru	(n.c.v.) to be late (use ni to specify what you are late for—kurasu ni okureru)
shokudoo-sha	(n.) dining car

shindai-sha (n.) sleeper, pullman  
 gesha suru (Chi. v.) to get off the train  
 Shinkansen This fast, modern train links Tokyo and Osaka.  
 The trains average 100 miles an hour on this  
 line. Shinkansen de Oosaka e iku.

## Important Construction and Grammar Notes

"O" USED AS "THROUGH": Another usage of O is:

NOUN + O + VERB OF MOTION
---------------------------

In this situation o signifies that the action occurred in space, that the movement was carried out along a certain length of area. Therefore, the verb used here will be one indicating movement covering space, such as tobu (fly), tooru (pass through), teataru (cross), noboru (climb), magaru (turn), etc.

sakamichi o noboru—climb an inclined road  
 hoteru no mae o tooru—pass in front of the hotel  
 kono michi o ikinasai—go on this road

Contrast this o with de showing specific place of action. If we were to indicate de by a circle O showing the locale where the action took place, action in space o could be represented by an arrow → signifying the ground covered by the movement of this action.

KAMO SHIREMASSEN: When kamo is immediately followed by the negative of shireru (to be known), or wakara (to understand, or to be known), the combined form expresses probability, doubt, or conjecture. It may be translated "may," "maybe," "perhaps," "possibly," etc.

### I. AS USED WITH NOUNS:

1. Ano hito wa gunjin Maybe he is a soldier. (Lit., whether kamo shiremasen. he is a soldier, it cannot be known.)

### II. AS USED WITH VERBS:

1. Asu kuru kamo shiremasen. He may come tomorrow (pres. tense).
2. Gakkoo e itta kamo Perhaps (he) went to school shiremasen. (past tense).
3. Uchi e konai\* kamo Possibly (he) won't come (to shiremasen. my) home (pres. neg.).
4. Kono inu wa mizu o This dog may want to drink nomitai kamo shiremasen. (some) water (desiderative form).
5. Komban kaisha e I may have to go to the ikanakereba naranai\* kamo company tonight ("must" shiremasen. form).

\* nai is an abrupt negative suffix attached to the first base of yodan verbs. See p. 309 for further explanation.

### III. AS USED WITH ADJECTIVES:

1. Eki wa tooi kamo shiremasen. The station may be far.
2. Kore wa oishikunai kamo This may not taste shiremasen. good.

In summary:

ADJECTIVE			
VERB	+	KAMO SHIREMASEN	= maybe . . .
NOUN			possibly . . .

\*Note: When there are two verbs in a sentence, i.e., one verb for the subordinate clause and another the principal, the first verb is given in an abrupt form and the final one in a polite form.

1. Nihon e iku hikooki de ikimasu.
2. Katamichi kippu o Anu nara oofuku kippu o kaimasu.

STATE OF BEING, or the expression showing that something is (or was) in a certain condition, such as "the door was open," "the light is on," "the toy is broken," etc., indicates that the subject is in a certain condition, or a certain status has come about. "The door is in the state of having been opened," or "the book is in a torn condition" is expressed by the following constructions:

- a. transitive verb 2 + arimasu
- b. intransitive 'verb + imasu

Note that Japanese, unlike English, has transitive and intransitive forms of the same verb. For example, the verbs "to open," "to turn on (a light)," and "to break" have the following two forms:

- to open    akeru (transitive)—open something
- aku (intransitive)—"something" opens
- to turn on tsukeru (transitive)—turn on something
- tsuku (intransitive)—"something" goes on
- to break    kowasu (transitive)—break something
- kowareru (intransitive)—"something" breaks

Usually, eru and su ending verbs are transitive. However, as in the last example, between su and eru, su indicates the transitive verb ending. It must also be noted that some verbs



are used only as transitive (kaku, yomu, etc.) and some only as intransitive (iku, neru, etc.).

Therefore using the "state of being" patterns given above, these 3 verbs can be expressed as follows:

- |                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| To wa akete arimashita.       | The door was open. (The door was in         |
| a. To wa aite imashita.       | the state of having been opened.)           |
| Denki wa tsukete arimasu.     | The light is on. (The light is in the state |
| b. Denki wa tsuite imasu.     | of having been turned on.)                  |
| Omocha wa kowashite arimasu.  | The toy is broken. (The toy is in the       |
| c. Omocha wa how arete imasu. | state of having been broken.)               |

\*See above p. 52 for explanation of transitive and intransitive verb.

There is, however, difference in usage. When a transitive verb + arimasu form is used, the meaning implied is that the condition was intentionally brought about by the subject. "The door was left open for me (when I got home last night)," in contrast to "The door was open last night. Who forgot to close it?" The former sentence implies that some member of the family purposely left the door open for you, so the transitive verb + arimasu (akete + arimashita) is used, while the second sentence indicates the door was left open due to someone's negligence, so that intransitive verb + imasu (aite +

imashita) must be used.

In this construction, though a transitive verb is used, the object of the verb is now the subject of the state of being that exists now. Therefore, it takes the nominative postposition *wa* or *ga*.

1. Tokei o naosu. Repair a watch.

Tokei wa naoshite arimasu. The watch is repaired.

2. Jidoosha o tomeru. Stop a car.

Jidoosha ga tomete aru. The car is stopped (parked).

Unintentional state of being construction is the same as the progressive form. The distinction must be made according to context.

In summary, one can say:

TRANSITIVE VERB	+ ARU	} STATE OF BEING
(naoshite aru)		
INTRANSITIVE VERB	+ IRU	}
(naotte iru)		
TRANSITIVE VERB	+ IRU	} PROGRESSIVE
(naoshite iru)		
INTRANSITIVE VERB	+ IRU	}
(naotte iru)		

**TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS:** The following is a list of some commonly used transitive verbs with their counterpart intransitive verbs. In using the transitive verb, bear in mind that this requires an object as "some action (transitive verb) is done to something or somebody (object)," while the intransitive verb implies "something happens (intransitive verb)."

## TRANSITIVE

akeru—(open something)

shimeru—(close something)

waru—(break something)

tomeru—(stop something)

hajimeru—(begin something)

ageru—(raise something)

tsuzukeru—(continue something)

ugokasu—(move something)

dasu—(send, put out something)

okosu—(wake someone)

otosu—(drop something)

kakusu—(hide something)

naosu—(fix something)

kowasu—(damage something)

tsukeru—(attach something)

(turn on something)

## INTRANSITIVE

aku—(open)

shimaru—(close)

wareru—(break)

tomara—(stop)

hajimaru—(begin)

agaru—(go up, rise)

tsuzuku—(continue)

ugoku—(move)

deru—(go out)

okiru—(get up)

ochiru—(drop, fall)

kakureru—(hide)

naoru—(get better)

kowareru—(break)

tsuku—(attach, go on)

## Fluency Drill

Kippu o kaimashita.

Kisha no kippu o kaimashita.

Madoguchi de kisha no kippu o kaimashita.

Ni-ban no madoguchi de Kyooto-yuki no kisha no kippu o kaimashita.

Ni-ban no madoguchi de kisha no kippu to shindai-ken o kaimashita.

Ni-ban no madoguchi de kisha no kippu to shindai-ken o ni-mai kaimashita.

Kinoo ni-ban no madoguchi de kisha no kippu to shindai-ken

1. The function  $f(x)$  is defined on the interval  $[0, 1]$  by the formula  $f(x) = x^2 + 2x + 1$ . Find the value of the function at the point  $x = 0.5$ .  
 2. The function  $f(x)$  is defined on the interval  $[0, 1]$  by the formula  $f(x) = x^2 + 2x + 1$ . Find the value of the function at the point  $x = 0.5$ .  
 3. The function  $f(x)$  is defined on the interval  $[0, 1]$  by the formula  $f(x) = x^2 + 2x + 1$ . Find the value of the function at the point  $x = 0.5$ .  
 4. The function  $f(x)$  is defined on the interval  $[0, 1]$  by the formula  $f(x) = x^2 + 2x + 1$ . Find the value of the function at the point  $x = 0.5$ .  
 5. The function  $f(x)$  is defined on the interval  $[0, 1]$  by the formula  $f(x) = x^2 + 2x + 1$ . Find the value of the function at the point  $x = 0.5$ .  
 6. The function  $f(x)$  is defined on the interval  $[0, 1]$  by the formula  $f(x) = x^2 + 2x + 1$ . Find the value of the function at the point  $x = 0.5$ .  
 7. The function  $f(x)$  is defined on the interval  $[0, 1]$  by the formula  $f(x) = x^2 + 2x + 1$ . Find the value of the function at the point  $x = 0.5$ .  
 8. The function  $f(x)$  is defined on the interval  $[0, 1]$  by the formula  $f(x) = x^2 + 2x + 1$ . Find the value of the function at the point  $x = 0.5$ .  
 9. The function  $f(x)$  is defined on the interval  $[0, 1]$  by the formula  $f(x) = x^2 + 2x + 1$ . Find the value of the function at the point  $x = 0.5$ .  
 10. The function  $f(x)$  is defined on the interval  $[0, 1]$  by the formula  $f(x) = x^2 + 2x + 1$ . Find the value of the function at the point  $x = 0.5$ .

2. I will open the door at Ku-ji ni to o akemasu.  
9:00.
3. The door is open. To wa aite imasu. To wa akete arimasu.
4. The toy broke. Omocha wa koware mashita.
5. I broke the toy. Omocha o kowashimashita.
6. The toy is broken. Omocha wa kowarete imasu.  
Omocha wa kowashite arimasu.
7. The street car stops in Densha wa hoteru no mae de  
front of the hotel. toma-rimasu.
8. Please stop the car in Hoteru no mae de kuruma o  
front of the hotel. tómete kudasai.
9. A car is stopped in front Hoteru no mae ni kuruma ga  
of the hotel. tomatte imasu.  
Hoteru no mae ni kuruma ga  
tómete arimasu.
10. The class (jugyoo) Jugyoo wa hachi-ji ni  
begins at 8:00. hajimarimasu.
11. The teacher begins the Sensei wa hachi-ji ni jugyoo o  
class at 8:00. hajimemasu.
12. The class has begun (is Jugyoo wa hajimatte imasu.  
in session).
13. I get up at 7:30 a.m. Shichi-ji han ni okimasu.
14. The landlady (obasan) Obasan wa gakusei o  
will wake the students. okoshimasu.
15. The students are up. Gakusei wa okite imasu.
16. I write my name in Nihongo de namae o kakimasu.  
Japanese.
17. I am writing my name Nihongo de namae o kaite  
in Japanese. imasu.

18. My name is written in Japanese. Nihongo de namae ga kaite arimasu.
19. It may be cold. Samui kamo shiremasen.
20. It may not be far. Tookunai kamo shiremasen.
21. He may not be a student. Gakusei de nai kamo shiremasen.
22. He may be a Japanese. Ano kata wa Nihonjin kamo shiremasen.
23. It may rain. Ame ga furu kamo wakarimasen.
24. He may come. Ano hito wa kuru kamo wakarimasen.
25. He may not come. Ano hito wa konai kamo wakarimasen.
26. He may not go to Japan. Ano hito wa Nihon e ikanai kamo wakarimasen.
27. I may go shopping. Kaimono ni iku kamo wakarimasen.
28. I have time to watch T.V. Terebi o miru hima ga arimasu.
29. I have time to play golf. Gorufu o suru hima ga arimasu.
30. I do not have time to take a walk. Sampo o suru hima ga arimasen.
31. I do not have time to read newspapers. Shimibun o yomu hima ga arimasen.
32. I do not have time to shop. Kaimono o suru hima ga arimasen.

Translate into Japanese:

1. If you buy a round trip ticket, it is cheaper.

Note: cheaper—motto yasui

2. Because the eight o'clock Osaka-bound train is crowded, let's take the next train.

Note: The verb "to take" has many uses in English. You take a vacation, a walk, a nap, a girl out, etc. In Japanese, toru simply means "to take something," so "to take a train or a cab"—ni noru is used.

3. The pullman tickets are sold out, so let's go by special express.

4. How many hours will it take by express train from here to Kobe? How many hours will it take by ordinary train ?

5. The express is faster than the ordinary train. The special express is the fastest, but it doesn't stop at Atami.

6. Because I was late for (my) Japanese language class, I was scolded by my teacher.

7. The departure time of this plane is 6:15 a.m. and the arrival time at Haneda airport is noon.

Note: noon—shoogo; airport—hikoojoo

8. You cannot take on your suitcase and trunk. You must check (them) after you buy the tickets.

9. a. Mr. Brown may be waiting (matsu) in the waiting room.  
b. This may be the dining car.  
c. The train may be late.

10. In order to go to Kobe, you must transfer at Osaka.

11. a. It is cloudy in the mountains.

b. It is clear in the town.

Note: (a) kumoru (v.i.) to become cloudy

hareru (v.i.) to become clear

(b) In these sentences "cloudy" and "clear" are referring to the state of condition.

(c) "In the mountains" is expressed as yama no hoo, hoo showing "in the general direction of. ."

c. The train is stopped at the railroad station.

d. Your name is not written on this trunk.

e. When I went to the bank it was already closed.

Imagine that you are a conductor of a train and the following questions are asked. How would you answer them in Japanese?

1. Kyuukoo to futsuu ressha dewa dochira ga hayai desu ka.

2. Tsugi no Kyooto-yuki no kisha wa nan-ji ni dete, nan-ji ni Kyooto ni tsuki-masu ka.

3. Kono ressha ni shindai-sha to shokudoo-sha ga arimasu ka.

4. Kono ookii toranku o kisha no naka e mochi-konde mo ii desu ka.

Note: "te" verb + mo ii desu—"It's all right if you .," "you may...." (Eigo o hanashite mo ii desu—You may speak English.)



5. Kono kisha wa Nagoya ni tomarimasu ka. Nampunkan tomarimasu ka.
6. Hiroshima e iku no ni Oosaka de nori-kaenakereba narimasen ka.
7. Oosaka kara hachi-ji ni deru Hiroshima-yuki no kisha wa futsuu desu ka.
8. Futsuu nara noritaku arimasen kara tsugi no kyuukoo wa nan-ji desu ka.
9. Sono kyuukoo wa konde imasu ka. Kyuukoo-ken o kau koto ga dekimasu ka.
10. Oofuku kippu to katamichi kippu dewa dochira ga yasui desu ka.
11. Hachi-ji no Hiroshima-yuki no kisha wa nan-ji ni Hiroshima ni tsukimasu ka. Nan jikan kakarimasu ka.
12. Oosaka kara Hiroshima made hikooki de ikeba ikura desu ka.
13. Oosaka-eki kara hikoojoo made basu ga arimasu ka.
14. Tsugi no eki de (o)bentoo (box lunch) o kau koto ga dekimasu ka.
15. Kono kippu de tochuu gesha suru koto ga dekimasu ka.

Note: tochuu—on the way, along the way  
tochuu gesha—get off the train before you reach the destination

You want to get the following information. How do you ask:

1. Whether there is a seat on the 9 o'clock train to Osaka.
2. Whether it is an ordinary train, express train, or special express.
3. What track the train leaves from.
4. How much a one-way ticket to Osaka is; how much a round-trip ticket costs.
5. At what ticket window you can buy a super express ticket to Osaka.
6. Whether you can get on this train from Yokohama, and how long this train stops there.
7. Whether you will have time to get off at Nagoya to buy lunch.
8. How much faster the special express train is than the express train.
9. The arrival time of this train in Osaka.
10. Whether this train has a pullman attached to it.
11. How much luggage you can carry on the train.

12. Whether there is a hotel near the Osaka station; how far it is from the station.

13. Whether you can get off the train at Nagoya and go on to Osaka the following morning with the ticket you have.

14. Whether there is a redcap because you have some luggage which you cannot carry yourself.

### Useful Expressions

#### Feelings (Kimochi)

I. sabishii—lonely

tanoshii—pleasant, delightful

ureshii—happy

kanashii—sad

omoshiroi—interesting, funny, amusing

These expressions are all adjectives; therefore, the following adjectival endings are possible:

a. Watakushi wa sabishikunai (arimasen) desu.

b. Kinoo wa taihen tanoshikatta desu.

c. Rainen Nihon e iku node ureshii desu.

d. Watakushi wa kanashiku narimasu.

e. Tanaka-san wa omoshiroi hito desu.

The suffix *garu* can be added to adjectives without the "i," making them verbs. It is used in describing a person other

than one's self to mean "to feel," "to get the feeling of. .," "to feel a certain way."

sabishi + garu—feel lonely

tanoshi + garu—feel happy

ureshi + garu—feel happy

II. ai suru—to love

yorokobu—to be glad, rejoice, be happy

okoru—to be angry

naku—to cry

warau—to laugh

odoroku—to be surprised, astonished

These are conjugating verbs with the following common suffixes attached to different bases:

a. Haha wa taihen yorokobimashita.

b. Watakushi wa okoritakunai desu.

c. Sensei ni warawaremashita.

d. Watakushi wa anata o ai shite imasu.

III. shimpai suru—to worry

anshin suru—to feel relieved (from worry)

gakkari suru—to be discouraged, disappointed

These verbs are Chinese verbs so they all conjugate by changing suru.

a. Chichi wa shimpai shimashita ga watakushi o miru to anshin shimashita.

b. Doozo anshin shite kudasai.

c. Shiken (examination) ni ochita (to fail) node gakkari shimashita.

# CHAPTER 17

## MOMOTARO

<div> <div>"TE"</div> <div>FORM OF</div> <div>VERB</div> </div> <div>+</div> <div> <div>AGERU</div> <div>MORAU</div> <div>KURERU</div> </div>	= EXCHANGE OF FAVORS (to do for you, for me, etc.)
---	---

<div> <div>5th BASE</div> <div>of</div> <div>VERB</div> </div> <div>+</div> <div>TO SURU</div>	= TRY TO.... ABOUT TO....
--	------------------------------

KONO HANASHI WATHIS IS A FAMOUS  
YUUMEI JAPANESE  
NA NIHON NO KODOMO CHILDREN'S STORY.  
NO

HANASHI DESU.

NIHON NO KODOMO WAALL THE JAPANESE  
MIN CHILD

NA KONO HANASHI OREN KNOW THIS STORY.  
SHITTE

IMASU.

- MUKASHI, MUKASHI LONG, LONG AGO AT A  
ARU TOKORO NI O JUS CERTAIN PLACE, THERE  
AN TO OBAASAN GALIVED AN OLD MAN  
SUNDE IMA-SHITA. AND AN OLD WOMAN.

kodomo ga nai

there was no child

node

because

\*kodomo ga nai node

\*because (they) did not have  
any children.

futari de

together

sabishiku

in loneliness

kurashite imashita

(they) were living

2. KODOMO GA NAI NODE HAVING NO CHILDREN,  
FUTARI DE SABISHIKU THEY LIVED TOGETHER  
KURASHITE IMASHITA. IN LONELINESS.
3. MAINICHI OJIISAN WA EVERY DAY THE OLD  
YAMA E TAKIGI O TORIMAN (WENT) TO THE  
NI, OBAASAN WA MOUNTAIN TO GATHER  
KAWA E SENTAKU NI FIREWOOD, AND THE  
IKIMASHITA. OLD WOMAN WENT TO

THE RIVER TO WASH.

obaasan ga

old woman (nom. case)

kawa de

at the river

sentaku o shite iru to

when (she) was washing

\*obaasan ga kawa de

\*when the old woman was

sentaku o shite iru to .

washing at the river

kawakami kara

from upstream

ookina momo ga

large peach (nom. case)

nagarete kimashita

came floating

4. ARU HI, OBAASAN GA ONE DAY WHEN THE  
KAWA DE SENTAKU OLD WOMAN WAS  
SHITE IRU TO, WASHING AT THE  
KAWAKAMI KARARIVER, A BIG PEACH  
OOKINA MOMO GA CAME FLOATING FROM  
NAGARETE UPSTREAM.  
KIMASHITA.

5. OBAASAN WA SONO THE OLD WOMAN  
MOMO O HIROTTE, PICKED UP THAT PEACH  
UCHI E AND TOOK IT HOME.  
KAE-RIMASHITA.

ojiisan ga

old man (nom. case)

yama kara

from the mountain

kaette kara	after returning
*ojiisan ga yama kara kaette kara.	*after the old man returned from the mountain .
obaasan ga	old woman (nom. case)
hoochoo de	with a knife
sono momo o	that peach
kiroo to suru to	tried to cut
*obaasan ga hoochoo de	*when the old woman tried
sono momo o kiroo to suru to.	to cut that peach with a knife

6. OJIISAN GA YAMAAFTER THE OLD MAN  
KARA KAETTE KARARETURNED FROM THE  
OBAASAN GAMOUNTAIN, THE OLD  
HOOCHOO DE SONOWOMAN TRIED TO CUT  
MOMO O KIROO TOTHE PEACH WITH A  
SURU TO MOMO GAKITCHEN KNIFE. THE  
FUTATSU NI WARETE,PEACH SPLIT IN TWO,  
NAKA KARA OOKINAAND A BIG BOY WAS  
OTOKO NO KO GABORN FROM THE  
UMAREMASHITA. INSIDE.
7. OJIISAN TO OBAASANTHE OLD MAN AND THE  
WA TAI SOOLD WOMAN WERE  
YOROKONDE, SONO KOOVERJOYED, AND  
NI MOMOTAROO TO IUNAMED THE CHILD  
NA O TSUKEMASHI-TA. "MOMOTARO."  
daiji ni carefully  
sodateraremashita was reared (passive)
8. MOMOTAROO WA DAIJIMOMOTARO WAS  
NI BROUGHT UP WITH  
SODATERAREMASHITA. GREAT CARE.



9. MOMOTAROO WAHE GREW UP  
 DAN-DAN OOKIKUGRADUALLY, AND  
 NATTE, TAISOOBECAME VERY STRONG.  
 TSUYOKU  
 NARI-MASHITA.

hito o koroshitari	sometimes (they) killed
	people
mono o nusundari	sometimes (they) stole
	things
shita node	because (they) did (these
	things)

10. CHOODO SONO KOROJUST ABOUT THEN,  
 ONI-GA-SHIMA KARA OGRES CAME FROM  
 TOKI-DOKI ONI GA OGRE ISLAND FROM  
 KITE, HITO O TIME TO TIME, AND  
 KOROSHITARI MONO OSOMETIMES KILLED  
 NUSUNDARI SHITA PEOPLE AND STOLE  
 NODE THINGS,

11. HITOBITO WASO THE PEOPLE, RICH  
 KANEMO-CHI MO AS WELL AS POOR,  
 BIMBOONIN MO, GROWNUPS AS WELL AS  
 OTONA MO KODOMO CHILDREN, WERE ALL  
 MO MINNA TAISOO GREATLY DISTRESSED.  
 KOMATTE IMASHITA.

soko de	whereupon
Momotaroo wa	Momotaro (nom. case)
oni o	ogres (obj. case)
seibatsu shiyoo to omotte	thinking of conquering

12. SOKO DE MOMOTAROO THEREUPON,  
 WA ONI O SEIBATSUMOMOTARO, THINKING  
 SHIYOO TO OMOTTE, OF CONQUERING THE

OJISAN TO OBAASAN OGRES, TALKED TO THE  
NI HANASHI-MASHITA. OLD MAN AND THE OLD  
WOMAN.

futari wa two (nom. case)  
taihen yorokonde to be very happy and  
\*futari wa taihen yorokonde \*two were very happy and .

obaasan wa old woman (nom. case)  
Momotaroo ni to Momotaro  
kibidango o dumpling (obj. case)  
koshiraete yarimashita made and gave (to him)

13. FUTARI WA TAIHEN THE TWO WERE VERY  
YOROKONDE, PLEASED, AND THE OLD  
OBAASAN WA WOMAN MADE SOME  
MOMOTAROO NI "KIBIDANGO" FOR HIM.  
KIBIDANGO O  
KOSHIRAETE  
YARIMASHITA.

14. MOMOTAROO GAMOMOTARO MADE  
SASSOKU SHITAKU O IMMEDIATE  
SHITE SUKO-SHI YUKU PREPARATIONS AND  
TO, WHEN HE WENT A  
SHORT DISTANCE,  
15. INU GA KITE . A DOG CAME AND .

tsuzuku—to be continued

### Vocabulary List from the Lesson

hanashi (n.) story, hanashi o suru (Chi. v.)— to tell  
a story

mukashi	(n.) long time ago
aru	certain; aru + noun, aru hito— a certain person
aru tokoro ni	at a certain place
futari de	by two, together
kurasu	(v.) to live, earn one's living, spend one's time (distinguish between sumu—to reside)
kurashite imashita	(past progressive) was living
aru hi	one day
takigi	(n.) firewood
toru	(v.t.) to take, gather
tori ni	in order to gather
sentaku (mono)	(n.) washing
sentaku o suru	(Chi. v.) to wash (clothing)
sentaku ni	(same as sentaku o ski ni) for the purpose of washing
kawakami	(n.) upstream
ookina	(adj.) same as ookii. (Other true adjectives, besides ookii and chiisai, do not appear in this form. Hence, chiisana is all right, but don't use this for other form adjectives.)
nagareru	(v.i.) to flow
nagarete	came floating
kimashita	
hirou	(v.t.) to pick up, find, gather
hirotte	("te" form of hirou, used conjunctively)—picked up and .
hoochoo	(n.) kitchen knife

kiru	(v.t.) to cut (though it has an "iru" ending, it is a conjugating verb)
kiroo to suru	try to cut (See I.C. & G.N.)
wareru	(v.i.) . ga wareru: to split, crack, break
warete	("te" form of wareru). broke and .
otoko	(n.) male, man
otoko no ko	(n.) a boy
taiso	very, very much
taiso yorokonde	rejoiced very much and. were overjoyed and
tsukeru	(v.t.) to attach, to put
na o tsukeru	(idio.) to name; literally, to attach a name, give a name
daiji	(n.) a matter of great importance, grave, serious
daiji ni	(adv.) with great care
sodateru	(v.t.) to raise, rear, bring up
sodateraremashita	(past passive of sodateru) was brought up
dan-dan	gradually, by degrees, step by step, fittle by little, increasingly, more and more
tsuyoi	(adj.) strong
tsuyoku	(adverbial form of tsuyoi)
choodo	exactly, just
oni	(n.) ogre
Oni-ga-Shima	(n.) Ogre Island
korosu	(v.t.) to kill
koroshitari	(alternate action form of korosu; see p. 275)
nusumu	(v.t.) to steal

nusundari	(alternate action form of nusumu; see p. 275)
hito	(n.) a person, people
hitobito	(n.) people (plural)
bimboonin	(n.) same as bimboo na hito—a poor person, opposite of kanemochi— —rich man
otona	(n.) an adult, a fully grown person as contrasted with kodomo— child
komaru	(v.i.) to be inconvenienced, to be troubled, to be distressed
komatte imashita	(state of being form of komaru, see p. 293)
soko de	thereupon
seibatsu suru	(Chi. v., archaic) to exterminate, conquer, subjugate
seibatsu shiyoo to omotte	to thinking of exterminating, wanting to subjugate (See I.C. & G.N.)
kibidango	(n.) a kind of dumpling
yaru	(v.t.) ni yaru, or ni.... o yaru—to give to. (See I.C. & G.N.)
yarimashita	(pol. past of yaru) gave
shitaku	(n.) preparation
shitaku o suru	(Chi. v.) to prepare

### Important Construction and Grammar Notes

"NAI," THE ABRUPT NEGATIVE SUFFIX: This can be derived by changing the . masen endings to ... nai, and the masen deshita endings to nakatta. The abrupt negative endings are attached to the first or the negative base of the

yodan verbs. With ichtdan verbs, use the stem. The bases for suru and kuru are shi and ko.. Hence:

POLITE NEGATIVE ABRUPT NEGATIVE

- |                     |                          |
|---------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. yomu yomimasen   | yomanai (1st base + nai) |
| 2. taberu tabemasen | tabenai (stem + nai)     |
| 3. suru shimasen    | shinai                   |
| 4. kuru kimasen     | konai                    |

- |                             |                                  |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. yomu yomimasen deshila   | yomanakatta (1st base + nakatta) |
| 2. taberu tabemasen deshita | tabenakatta (stem + nakatta)     |
| 3. suru shimasen deshita    | shinakatta                       |
| 4. kuru kimasen deshita     | konakatta                        |

There is no difference in meaning between the two—just the difference in the degree of politeness intended.

With the verb aru, nai is its opposite. Aru ka nai ka  
"whether there is, or whether there is not. "

Note that the first base of double vowel ending verbs will be wa instead of a single a, as in the case of most yodan verbs (c.v.).

<b>WA+NAI=kawana</b>	<b>WA+NAI=arawana</b>
i	i
<b>kau=KA+u</b>	<b>arau=ARA+u</b>
o	o

USE OF 5th BASE TO MEAN "TRIED TO...", "ABOUT TO."  
"—5th base of the verb can be used to give the following different meanings:

I. The abrupt future of the yodan verbs is what would be the 5th base with the long final vowel.

iku	ikoo	(let us go)
kaeru	kaeroo	(let us go home)

With the ichidan verbs (n.c.v.), the stem plus yoo:

taberu	tabeyoo	(let us eat)
neru	neyoo	(let us sleep)
mini	miyoo	(let us look)

The abrupt future of suru—shiyoo; of kuru—koyoo.

II. When to omou is added to the abrupt future of a verb, the combination expresses the idea: "thinking of doing something .," "with the intention of.."

5th BASE OF VERB + TO OMOU
----------------------------

1. Watakushi wa kaimono oThinking of doing some  
shiyoo to omotte depaato eshopping, I went to a  
ikimashita. department store.
2. Watakushi wa Chicago eThinking of going to  
ikoo to omotte kisha niChicago, I boarded a train.  
norimashita.

III. When to suru is added to the abrupt future of a verb, the combination expresses the idea that the act is attempted: "tried to...."

5th BASE OF VERB + TO SURU
----------------------------

1. Kiroo to shita. He tried to cut (it).
2. Doroboo wa uchi e hairoo toThe thief tried to enter  
shimashita. the house.

3. Otoko no ko wa okashi o toroo to The boy tried to take the  
shimashita. candy.

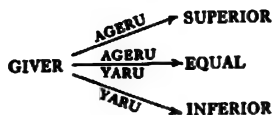
IV. 5th base of the verb + to suru also has the meaning of an act about to be done: "just about to...." Often this usage can be interpreted as the same as "tried to.. ." mentioned above. The distinction between "tried to.. ." and "about to.. ." must be made from context.

1. Uchi o deyoo to suru to When I was just about to  
tomo-dachi ga kimashita. leave the house, a friend  
came.
2. Denwa o shiyoo to shita toki When I was just about to  
ni, Brown-san ga kimashita. telephone, Mr. Brown came.

AGERU (YARU), MORAU (ITADAKU), KURERU  
(KUDASARU):

I. AGERU, "to give," is used when (1) the recipient is equal to, or (2) superior in social status to the giver, or (3) when expression of courtesy is felt necessary toward the receiver (see diagram below). Also, in common usage, ageru (and itadaku, explained in the next section) is used merely to make the entire statement more polite. YARU also has the same meaning, but the giving is done to someone equal to or lower in social status than the giver—to hand down to someone, or to animals or inanimate things.





... OBJECT (what) O (to whom) NI  $\begin{matrix} \swarrow \text{AGERU} \\ \searrow \text{YARU} \end{matrix}$

1. Watakushi wa kono jibiki O sensei NI AGEMASU.
2. Sensei wa hokokusho O koochoo NI AGEMASHITA.  
(The teacher report to the principal gave.)
3. Kono sakana O nako NI YARU.

In sentence 1, jibiki is the direct object, sensei is the indirect object; therefore, note the postpositions NI and O. This word order can be reversed.

... (to whom) NI + OBJECT (what) O  $\begin{matrix} \swarrow \text{AGERU} \\ \searrow \text{YARU} \end{matrix}$

4. Hana NI mizu O YARU  
(To flowers water give.)

II. MORAU (ITADAKU), "to receive." When (1) something is received from someone equal to or (2) superior to the receiver in social status, or (3) to express the feeling of gratitude in receiving something, ITADAKU is used. MORAU, as shown in the diagram, is used between equals, or when the subject receives from an inferior.



1. Watakushi wa Kurisumasu (Christmas) ni Suzuki-san kara (ni) rekoodo (record) o itadakimashita.
2. Anata wa oototosan kara (ni) nani o moraimashita ka.

III. KURERU means "give," but the recipient is in the first person only. "Gives to me" might be a better meaning for this verb. KUDASARU is the more polite form, when receiving from someone superior in status to you (see diagram below).



1. Sensei wa jibiki o (The) teacher gave me a kudasaimashi-ta (see below). dictionary.
2. Ootoo wa Kabuki no kippu o My brother gave me a kuremashita. Kabuki ticket.

Since kureru is used only when the first person is the recipient, it is not necessary to translate "me."

"The old man gave me some money." This sentence can be translated as follows, changing the subject:

1. Ojiisan wa okane o kuremashita. The old man gave me some money.
2. Watakushi wa ojiisan ni okane o I received money from moraimashita. the old man.

Kudasaru is the polite form of kureru, and is used in the same way. This verb conjugates as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{ra} \\ \text{*RI} + \text{MASU} \\ \text{kudasa} + \begin{array}{c} \text{ru} \\ \text{re} \end{array} \end{array}$$

\*However, in speaking, the "r" in *kudasarimasu* is dropped, and it is now pronounced *kudasaimasu*.

**EXCHANGE OF FAVORS:** When a favor is done for another, or when the subject receives a favor, the following formula is used:

"TE" VERB +  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{AGERU (YARU)} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{MORAU (ITADAKU)} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{KURERU (KUDASARU)} \end{array} \right.$

1. I will wait for you.
2. Dad bought the car for me.
3. Mr. Tanaka had a letter translated by my teacher.

These expressions indicate an act where a favor was exchanged:

1. I will do you the favor of waiting.
2. Dad did me the favor of buying a car.
3. Mr. Tanaka received a favor from my teacher by having a letter translated.

1. Watakushi wa matte agemasu.
2. Chichi wa jidoosha o katte kuremashita.  
Watakushi wa chichi ni jidoosha o katte moraimashita.  
(I, from my father, received the favor of car-buying.)
3. Tanaka-san wa sensei ni tegami o yakushite moraimashita.  
(yakusu—to translate)

### Fluency Drill

I  
Akete arimasu.

Mado ga akete arimasu.

Ni-kai no mado ga akete arimasu.

Ni-kai no ookii mado ga akete arimasu.

Atsui kara ni-kai no ookii mado ga akete arimasu.

Kyoo wa atsui kara ni-kai no ookii mado ga akete arimasu.

Senshuu kara atsui node ni-kai no ookii mado ga akete arimasu.

Senshuu no Kinyoo kara atsui node ni-kai no ookii mado ga akete arimasu.

Senshuu no Kinyoo kara atsui node ni-kai no ookii mado ga anata no tame ni akete arimasu.

Note: . no tame ni—for (the sake of).

It is open.

The window is open.

The upstairs window is open.

The large upstairs window is open.

Because it is hot, the large upstairs window is open.

Because it is hot today, the large upstairs window is open.

Because it has been hot since last week, the large upstairs window is open.

Because it has been hot since Friday of last week, the large upstairs window is open.

Because it has been hot since Friday of last week, the large upstairs window is open for you.

## II

Yonde agemasu.

Hon o yonde agemasu.

Anata ni kono hon o yonde agemasu.  
Komban anata ni kono hon o yonde agemasu.  
Watakushi wa komban anata ni kono hon o yonde agemasu.

(I) will read (for you).  
(I) will read a book (for you).  
(I) will read this book for you.  
(I) will read this book for you tonight.  
I will read this book for you tonight.

### III

Katte kuremasu.  
Terebi o katte kuremasu.  
Chichi wa terebi o katte kuremasu.  
Chichi wa Kurisumasu ni terebi o katte kuremasu.

(He) will buy (for me)  
(He) will buy a T.V. (for me).  
My father will buy a T.V. (for me).  
My father will buy a T.V. (for me) on Christmas.

### IV

Katte moraimasu.  
Terebi o katte moraimasu.  
Ano hito wa terebi o katte moraimasu.  
Ano hito wa otoosan ni terebi o katte moraimasu.  
Ano hito wa otoosan ni, Kurisumasu ni terebi o katte moraimasu.

(He) will receive (the favor of) buying.  
(He) will receive (the favor of) buying a T.V. set.  
He will receive (the favor of) buying a T.V. set.

He will receive (the favor of) buying a T.V. set from his father.

He will receive (the favor) of buying a T.V. set from his father on Christmas.

(He will have his father buy a T.V. set for him on Christmas.)

### Substitution Drill

*("Te" Verb)*

YONDE	} + {	AGERU
KAITE		MORAU
KATTE		KURERU
KITE		
etc.		

*(5th Base Verb)*

IKOO	} +	TO SURU
HANASOO		
HAIROO		
TABEYOO		
etc.		

### Exercises

Practice translating English to Japanese, Japanese to English:

In the following 15 sentences, interpret them as exchange of favor construction:

1. I will read this letter Kono tegami o yonde agemasu.  
(for you).
2. I will do the work Shigoto o shite agemasu.  
(for you).
3. I will write the kanji Kanji o kaite agemasu.  
(for you).
4. I will send this Kono kozutsumi o okutte agemasu.  
package (for you).
5. I will buy a Jibiki o katte agemasu.  
dictionary (for you).

6. I had him read the letter (for me).      Ano hito ni tegami o yonde moratta. Ano hito wa tegami o yonde kureta.
7. I had him do the work (for me).      Ano hito ni shigoto o shite moratta. Ano hito wa shigoto o shite kureta.
8. I had him write the kanji (for me).      Ano hito ni kanji o kaite moratta. Ano hito wa kanji o kaite kureta.
9. I had him send the package (for me).      Ano hito ni kozutsumi o okutte moratta. Ano hito wa kozutsumi o okutte kureta.
10. I had him buy a dictionary (for me).      Ano hito ni jibiki o katte moratta. Ano hito wa jibiki o katte kureta.
11. He read the letter (for me).      Ano hito ni tegami o yonde moratta. Ano hito wa tegami o yonde kureta.
12. He will do the work (for me).      Ano hito ni shigoto o shite morau. Ano hito wa shigoto o shite kureru.
13. He will write the kanji (for me).      Ano hito ni kanji o kaite morau. Ano hito wa kanji o kaite kureru.
14. He will send this package (for me).      Ano hito ni kozutsumi o okutte morau. Ano hito wa kozutsumi o okutte kureru.
15. He will buy a dictionary (for me).      Ano hito ni jibiki o katte morau. Ano hito wa jibiki o katte kureru.
16. I am thinking of going to Japan.      Nihon e ikoo to omotte imasu.
17. I am thinking of selling my car.      Kuruma o uroo to omotte imasu.

18. I am thinking of Hon o kakoo to omotte imasu.  
writing a book.
19. I have thought of Sensei ni naroo to omoimashita.  
becoming a teacher.
20. I have thought of Shigoto o yameyoo to omoimashita.  
quitting my job.
21. The dog tried to eat Inu wa niku o tabeyoo to shita.  
the meat.
22. The man tried to Otoko no hito wa ie ni hairoo to  
enter the house. shita.
23. I tried to read his Ano kata no tegami o yomoo to  
letter. shita.
24. The thief tried to sell Doroboo wa kuruma o uroo to  
the car. shita.
25. The policeman was Junsu wa doroboo o utoo to shita.  
about to shoot the  
thief.
26. When I was about to Ie o deyoo to shita toki.  
leave the house.
27. When I was about to Bangohan o tabeyoo to shita toki.  
eat supper.
28. When I was about to Kisha ni noroo to shita toki.  
get on the train .
29. When I was about to Densha o oriyoo to shita toki.  
get off the streetcar.
30. When I was about to Kippu o miseyoo to shita toki  
show my ticket.

Translate into Japanese:



1. Because my parents moved to Tokyo, I am living with my older sister, and I am lonesome. (In the principal clause consider "lonesome" as an adverb so this sentence should be translated as follows: ".. I, with my older sister, am lonesomely living.")

2. The train ticket which you picked up was the one I lost.

3. When I tried to buy a new car, my father opposed me.

4. This puppy was weak when he was born, but (it) gradually became strong.

5. In America both the rich and the poor can enter college if (they) study hard.

6. Because the teacher's wallet (saifu) was stolen, (he) is in trouble.

7. Have you ever eaten "kibidango?" No, I have never eaten it, but I would like to eat it once.

8. Why did Momotaro leave the old man and the old lady's home? He thought of exterminating the ogres.

9. When I was just about to (go to) sleep, the telephone rang (naru).

10. Use the abrupt form:

a. do not cut c. want to cut

b. did not cut d. wanted to cut

Answer in Japanese:

1. Jibun no kotoba de, Momotaroo no hanashi o shite kudasai:

Note: (a) jibun—oneself, himself jibun no kotoba—one's own words jibun no shigoto—one's own work

Ano otoko no ko wa jibun de tabemasu. (That boy eats by himself.)

(b) hanashi—(noun) a story

hanashi o suru—to tell a story

2. Naze ojiisan to obaasan wa sabishiku kurashite imashita ka.

3. Ojiisan no shigoto wa nan deshita ka. Obaasan no shigoto mo onaji deshita ka.

4. Anata ga ima sunde iru tokoro wa gakkoo no chikaku desu ka.

5. Anata wa jibun de sentaku o shimasu ka. Sentakuya e motte ikimasu ka.

6. Oni-ga-Shima ni sunde ita oni wa donna warui koto o shimashita ka.

7. Momotaroo ga oni o seibatsu shi ni iku to ojiisan to obaasan ni hanashita toki, futari wa hantai shimashita ka. Naze hantai shimasen deshita ka.

8. Anata wa doko de umarete, doko ni sunde imasu ka. Doko e Nihongo o ben-kyoo shi ni ikimasu ka.

9. Anata wa eiga e iku toki, itsu mo hitori de ikimasu ka.  
Tomodachi to ikimasu ka.

Note: hitori de—literally by one person or alone  
tomodachi to—to means "together with," e.g.,  
"I will go to Japan with my father."  
Watakushi wa chichi to Nihon e ikimasu.

10. Naze ojiisan to obaasan wa kono otoko no ko ni  
Momotaroo to iu namae o tsukemashita ka.

I. Make the (a) abrupt negative, (b) abrupt negative past, (c)  
polite negative past, of the following:

Example: (O)kane o yarimasu.

(a) (O)kane o yaranai.

(b) (O)kane o yaxanakatta.

(c) (O)kane o yarimasen deshita.

1. Watakushi wa washoku o tabetai desu.

2. Gogo sampo ni dekakemashita.

3. Kyooto de futsuka tomara tsumori desu.

4. Hyaku en de kono jibiki ga kaemasu.

5. Ano hito wa Nihongo o hanasu koto ga dekiru.

6. Sakuban shibai e iku koto ga dekita.

7. Gakkoo made sambyaku en kakatta.

8. Kyooto wa tooi desu.
9. Kurisumasu ni rajio o katte kureta.
10. Tookyoo de Kabuki o mira koto ga dekimashita.
11. Nihongo ga kaite arimasu.
12. Watakushi wa gunjin ni naritai.

II. Make the past of the following, and the negative past wherever possible:

1. Hayaku okite sampo o shimasu.
2. Koohii (coffee) o nomitai.
3. Kono tokei wa takai desu.
4. Nan-ji ni dekakemasu ka.
5. Maiban benkyoo shimasen.
6. Amai (sweet) mono o tabetaku naru.
7. (O)kane ga nai kara asobanai.
8. Kono hana o motte kaeru.

Miscellaneous Useful Expressions

The following super polite expressions #1-6 will be explained later on p. 344 so here commit to memory as idiomatic expressions.

1. OMEDETOO (gozaimasu) —Congratulations!

SOTSUGYOO, OMEDETOO —Graduation congratulations!

GO-KEKKON, OMEDETOO —Wedding congratulations!

2. MATA IRASSHAI—Come again.

DOOZO MATA IRASHITE KUDASAI (more polite)

3. YOKU IRASSHAIMASHITA—Welcome! I'm happy you came.

4. MATA O-ME NI KAKARIMASU—I'll see you again.

ASHITA O-ME NI KAKARIMASU—I'll see you tomorrow.

DEWA MATA (o-me ni kakarimasu)—I'll see you again.

5. O-KI O TSUKETE ITTE IRASSHAI—(literally, "be careful and go") Take care of yourself.

O-GENKI DE ITTE IRASSHAI—(Literally, "in fine spirits, go")

Both of these expressions are used as a parting comment wishing safe return, or in the same sense as "Bon Voyage!"

**Note:** KI O TSUKERU—to be careful, to pay attention

KI O TSUKETE KUDASAI—Please be careful.

KI O TSUKENASAI—Be careful!

ABUNAI (desu)—It's dangerous, look out!

6. O-MATASE ITASHIMASHITA—Sorry, I made you wait!

7. DAME DESU—no good, bad. This expression has wide usage, expressing general disapproval.

ANO HITO WA DAME DESU.

KONO MONO WA DAME DESU.

ASHITA WA DAME DESU.

8. DOCHIRA DEMO KEKKOO DESU.—Either one is all right.

DOCHIRA DEMO KAMAIMASEN.—Either one is all right.

CHAPTER 18  
MOMOTARO (continued)

**4th BASE OF VERB + BA** = IF...*(conditional form)*

1. "MOMOTAROO-SAN, "MOMOTARO, WHERE  
MO-MOTAROO-SAN, ARE YOU GOING?"  
DOKO E IRASSHAIMASU  
KA."
2. "ONI-GA-SHIMA E ONI O"TO OGRE ISLAND TO  
SEIBATSU NI. ." CONQUER THE  
OGRES."
3. "(O)KOSHI NI TSUKETA"THAT THING WHICH  
MONO WA NAN DESUIS ATTACHED TO  
KA." YOUR WAIST, WHAT IS  
IT?"
4. "NIHON-ICHI NO"THE BEST KIBIDANGO  
KIBI-DANGO." IN JAPAN."
5. "HITOTSU KUDASAREBA"IF YOU GIVE ME ONE,  
(O)TOMO SHIMASHOO." I WILL ACCOMPANY  
YOU."
6. MOMOTAROO WA INU NIMOMOTARO GAVE  
KIBIDANGO O HITOTSUONE KIBIDANGO TO  
YARIMASHITA. INU WATHE DOG. THE DOG  
YOROKONDE KERAI NIHAPPILY BECAME  
NARIMASHITA. (HIS) FOLLOWER.
7. SOREKARA AFTER THAT, WHEN  
MOMOTAROO TO INU GAMOMOTARO AND THE  
SUKOSHI IKU TO SARUDOG WENT A LITTLE  
NI AIMASHITA. SARU WA(WAY) THEY MET A  
INU TO ONAJI KOTO OMONKEY. THE

KIKIMASHITA. SOOSHITE MONKEY ASKED THE  
 SARU MO KERAI NISAME THING AS THE  
 NARIMASHITA. DOG. AND THE  
 MONKEY BECAME A  
 FOLLOWER ALSO.

8. TSUGI NI KIJ I MONEXT, A PHEASANT,  
 KIBIDANGO O MORATTE AFTER RECEIVING THE  
 KERAI NI NARIMASHITA. KIBIDANGO, BECAME  
 MOMOTAROO WA INU, HIS FOLLOWER, TOO.  
 SARU, KIJ I O TSURETE MOMOTARO  
 ONI-GA-SHIMA NI ACCOMPANIED BY A  
 TSUKIMASHITA. DOG, A MONKEY, AND  
 A PHEASANT,  
 ARRIVED AT OGRE  
 ISLAND.

Momotaroo ga	Momotaro (nom. case)
kuru no o	coming (obj. case)
mite	seeing
*Momotaroo ga kuru no o *seeing Momotaro come.	
mite.	
mon o	gate (obj. case)
shimemashita	closed
node	so
*mon o shimemashita node ""because they closed the	
	gate..
naka ni	inside
hairu koto ga dekimasen	was not able to enter
de-shita	

9. ONITACHI WA THE OGRES, UPON  
 MOMOTAROO GA KURU SEEING THE COMING  
 NO O MITE, MON OOF MOMOTARO,



SHIMEMASHITA    NODE CLOSED THE GATE SO  
 NAKA NI HAIRU KOTO(THEY) WERE UNABLE  
 GA                    DEKIMASEN TO GO INSIDE.  
 DESHITA.

soko de	whereupon
kiji wa	pheasant (nom. case)
tonde itte	went flying
*soko de kiji wa tonde itte	^whereupon the pheasant went flying and .
teki no yoosu o	enemy's condition (obj. case)
shirabemashita	examined
*teki no yoosu o	*he examined the enemy's condition
shirabemashita	

10. SOKO DE KIJU WA TONDE WHEREUPON,        THE  
 ITTE TEKI NO YOOSU O PHEASANT FLEW IN  
 SHIRABEMASHITA.                    AND OBSERVED THE  
    ENEMY'S CONDITION.

saru wa	monkey (nom. case)
mon o nobotte	climbed the gate
*saru wa mon o nobotte.	*monkey climbed the gate and .
naka e	inside
hairi	entered and .
*naka e hairi.	*(he) entered inside and

mon o	gate
akemashita	opened
SARU WA MON O	THE MONKEY
NOBOTTE NAKA E HAIRI	CLIMBED THE GATE,
MON O AKEMASHITA.	

WENT INSIDE, AND  
OPENED THE GATE.

11. MOMOTAROO TO INU MOMOTARO,  
WA ISSHO NITOGETHER WITH THE  
SEME-KOMIM A-SHITA. DOG, ATTACKED. THE  
KIJI WA TOBI-MA-WATTE PHEASANT FLEW  
ONI NO ME O AROUND AND PECKED  
TSUTSUKIMASHITA. (AT) THE OGRES' EYES.  
SARU WA ONI O THE MONKEY  
HIKKAKIMA-SHITA. SCRATCHED THE  
OGRES.

12. INU WA ONI NI THE DOG BIT THE  
KAMI-TSUKIMASHITA. OGRES. MOMOTARO  
MOMOTAROO WA ONI FOUGHT WITH THE  
NO TAI-SHOO TO LEADER OF THE  
TATAKAIMASHI-TA. OGRES.

Momotaroo wa	Momotaro (nom. case)
taihen tsuyoi node	because (he) was very strong
oni no taishoo wa	leader of the ogres
tootoo	finally
koosan shimashita	surrendered

13. MOMOTAROO WA MOMOTARO WAS SO  
TAIHEN TSUYOI NODE STRONG THAT THE  
ONI NO TAISHOO WA LEADER OF THE  
TOOTOO KOOSAN OGRES FINALLY  
SHIMASHITA. SURRENDERED.

moo	anymore
kesshite	never
warui koto o shimasen	will not do bad things
kara	because

*moo kesshite warui koto o	*because (we) will never
shimasen kara .	do any more bad things
yurushite kudasai	please pardon us

14. ONI NO TAISHOO WATHE LEADER  
 "MOO KESSHITE WARUI PLEADED, "PLEASE  
 KOTO O SHIMASEN FORGIVE ME, FOR I  
 KARA YURUSHITE WILL NEVER DO  
 KUDASAI" TO ITTE ANYTHING WRONG  
 IRO-IRO NA AGAIN," AND  
 TAKARA-MONO O PRODUCED VARIOUS  
 DASHITE TREASURES.  
 TANO-MIMASHITA. MOMOTARO FORGAVE  
 MOMOTAROO WA ONI O THE OGRES.  
 YURUSHITE  
 YARIMASHITA.

inu ga	dog (nom. case)
sono kuruma o	the cart (obj. case)
hiki	pulled
*inu ga sono kuruma o hiki.	*the dog pulled the cart and .

saru ga	monkey (nom. case)
ato o	behind (obj. case)
oshite	pushed
*saru ga ato o oshite.	*the monkey pushed (from behind) and.

kiji wa	pheasant (nom. case)
tsuna o	rope (obj. case)
hikimashita	pulled

15. TAKARAMONO O (THEY) LOADED MANY  
 TAKUSAN KURUMA NI TREASURES ON THE  
 TSUNDE CART AND STARTED

DE-KAKEMASHITA. INU OFF. THE DOG PULLED  
GA SONO KURUMA O THE CART, THE  
HIKI, SARU GA ATO O MONKEY PUSHED (IT)  
OSHITE, KIJU WA TSUNA AND THE PHEASANT  
O HIKIMASHITA. PULLED THE ROPE.

ojiisan to obaasan wa old man and old woman  
(nom. case)

Momotaroo no rusuchuu during Momotaro's absence  
shimpai shimashita worried

\*ojiisan to obaasan wa \*the old man and old  
woman were

Momotaroo no rusuchuu greatly worried during  
Momo

taihen shimpai shimashita ga. taro's absence but.

Momotaroo ga Momotaro (nom. case)

kaette kuru no o his return (obj. case)

miru to when (they) saw

\*Momotaroo ga kaette kuru \*when they saw Momotaro  
no o miru to . coming home.

taihen yorokobimashita greatly rejoiced

16. OJISAN TO OBAASAN THE OLD MAN AND  
WA MOMOTAROO NO OLD WOMAN WERE  
RUSUCHUU TAIHEN VERY WORRIED  
SHIMPAI SHIMASHITA DURING MOMOTARO'S  
GA MOMOTAROO GA ABSENCE, BUT WHEN  
KAETTE KURU NO O (THEY) SAW  
MIRU TO TAIHEN MOMOTARO'S RETURN  
YOROKOBIMASHITA. THEY WERE VERY  
HAPPY.

17. SOREKARA	MINNA AFTER	THAT
KOO-FUKU	NIEVERYONE	LIVED
KURASHIMASHI-TA.	HAPPILY.	

# Vocabulary from the Lesson

irassharu	(v.i.) to go, to come, superpolite form (see page 358)
irasshaimasu	(v.i.) superpolite, present form of irassharu. Corrupt form of irasshari + masu.
koshi	(n.) waist
(o)koshi	(n.) o is the honorific prefix.
mono	(n.) (concrete) thing
Nihon-ichi	(n.) number one in Japan; the best in Japan, equivalent to Nihon de ichiban. Also, sekai-ichi no dai-tokai (largest city in the world); Tookyoo-ichi no gekijoo (the best theater in Tokyo)
kudasareba	(conditional form of kudasaru—give me) if you give me (See I.C. & G.N.)
(o)tomo suru	(Chi. v.) to accompany
kerai	(n.) follower, servant
saru	(n.) monkey
onaji	(n.) same (used as an adjective—onaji hito, same person; onaji toki, same time)
koto	(n.) (abstract) thing
sorekara	and then
sukoshi	few (in quantity)
kiji	(n.) pheasant

tsureru (tsurete)	(v.t.) to take (someone) along (tsurete iku, to take someone to; tsurete iku, to take someone; tsurete kaeru, to take someone home.)
mon	(n.) gate
sokode	whereupon
tobu	(v.i.) to fly
teki	(n.) enemy
yoosu	(n.) condition, appearance
shiraberu	(v.t.) to investigate, research
shirabemashita	(pol. past of shiraberu) investigated
noboru	(v.t.) to climb
nobotte	("te" form of noboru used connec-tively) . . climbed and.
semeru	(v.t.) to attack
seme-komu	(v.t.) to attack and enter
seme-komimashita	(pol. past of semekomu)
mawaru	(v.i.) to turn, to go around
me	(n.) eyes
tsutsuku	(v.t.) to peck
tsutsukimashita	(pol. past of tsuttsuku) pecked
hikkaku	(v.t.) to scratch (maliciously)
hikkakimashita	(pol. past of hikkaku) scratched
kami-tsuku	(v.t.) to bite, causing harm (usually by animals, kamu—to bite)
kami-tsukimashita	(pol. past of kamitsuku) bit
taishoo	(n.) leader, head, or general
koosan suru	(Chi. v.) to surrender
kesshite	(adv.) never. (always used with negative verb)

yurusu	(v.t.) to forgive, o yurusu, to forgive someone.
yurushite kudasai	("te" form of yurusu + kudasai) please forgive me
dasu	(v.t.) to put out, produce
das Kite	("te" form of dasu used connectively) produced and .
tanomu	(v.t.) to request  (someone) ni (about) o tanomu
tanomimashita	(pol. past of tanomu)
kuruma	(n.) general term for vehicle—car, cart, etc.
tsumu	(v.t.) to load, (vehicle) ni (object) o tsumu
tsunde	("te" form of tsumu used connectively) loaded and .
dekakeru	(v.i.) to leave for, sampo ni dekakeru
dekakemashita	(pol. past of dekakeru) started (for)
hiku	(v.t.) to pull
hiki	(2nd base of hiku used connectively) pulled and .
osu	(v.t.) to push
oshite	("te" form of osu used connectively) pushed and .
tsuna	(n.) rope
rusu	(n.) absence
rusuchuu	(n.) during the absence
koofuku	(n.) happiness
koofuku ni	(adv.) happily

"BA" AS A CONDITIONAL FORM: So far, we have covered several ways of expressing "if" (or conditional form). Let us review them:

3rd BASE + TSUMORI = (I) intend to . . .
--

1. Boku wa aruku tsumori desu . . . I intend to walk.
2. Boku wa akeru tsumori desu . . . I intend to open.
3. Boku wa benkyoo suru tsumori desu . . . I intend to study.

1. Nihon e iku to, Nihongo o hanashimasu.

"Root form of the verb + to"—this form has a double meaning of "IF" or "WHEN." This is used only with the present tense (root form of the verb).

2. Nihon e iku nara, hikooki de ikimasu.

Nara can be used with a noun, verb, or adjective to express "IF." This form of making the conditional can be used with the past tense of the verb to form the past conditional.

Sono shigoto o shita nara If you did this work, don't do kore o shite wa ikemasen. this.

Kesa kusuri o nonda nara If you took (drank) medicine this yoku narimasu. morning, you will get well.

Kyonen hon o kaita nara If you wrote a book last year will koto-shi mo kakimasu ka. you write one this year too?

3. The third and most common way of forming a conditional is:

4th BASE OF YODAN VERB	+	BA	= IF + (verb) . . .
---------------------------	---	----	---------------------



or

STEM OF ICHIDAN VERB + REBA
--------------------------------

 = IF + (verb)...

sa  
shi  
dasu = DA su  
SE + BA = *daseba*  
so

ma  
mi  
yomu = YO mu  
ME + BA = *yomeba*  
mo

For ichidan verbs, the rule is as follows:

dekakeru dekake (stem) + REBA = dekakereba

miru mi (stem) + REBA = mireba

Examples:

1. Ima kaeba yasui desu. If (you) buy now it is cheap.
2. Ame ga fureba yasumimasu. If it rains I will stay away.
3. Kore o tabereba byooki ni nari-masu. If you eat this you will be sick.
4. Shigoto o sureba jidoosha ga kaemasu. If you work you will be able to buy a car.

"TARA" AS CONDITIONAL FORM: The fourth method of constructing a conditional is:

ABRUPT PAST OF VERB (... ta) + RA
--------------------------------------

The formation of "abrupt past" was already explained (see p. 174).

1. Kore o tabetara byooki ni narimasu.

## 2. Kyotoo ni tsuitara denwa shite kudasai.

Some ways in which this construction can be used are:

a. Aside from the ordinary function as a conditional, this form also introduces the past tense into conditional form.

Kesa Tanaka-san ga If Tanaka came this morning, he  
kitara gogo wa kimasen. will not come in the afternoon.

Kinoo abitaru kyoo wa ii If you did it yesterday, it's all right  
deshoo. today.

b. The tara form also has an additional use of "WHEN" in the past tense.

Kesa sensei no uchi e This morning when I went to the  
ittara dare mo imasen teacher's house there wasn't anyone  
deshita. (there).

Sakuban aisukuriimu o When I ate some ice cream last  
tabetara onaka ga itaku night I got a stomach ache.  
natta.

c. This form is also used to express subjunctive mood where a present condition is contrary to fact, or wishes.

Ima Nihon e itara sakura o If I were to go to Japan now, I  
miru koto ga dekimasu. could see the cherry blossoms.

Chichi ga itara watakushi wa If my father were here, I  
shigoto o shinakute mo ii. wouldn't have to work.

Whether tara is used in the sense of a, b, or c as explained above, will have to be determined by context.

NEGATIVE CONDITIONAL: "If you do not. is expressed as follows:

1. First, form the abrupt negative of the verb.

a. 1st BASE OF VERB + NAI (Nai is the abrupt negative suffix)

$RA + NAI = uranai$   
ri  
uru=U ru  
re  
ro

b. STEM OF  
NON-CONJ. + NAI      ORI (RU)—ORI + NAI = *orinai*  
VERB

2. Next, add the conditional suffixes, using the rules given above.

a. URANAI + TO

b. URANAI + NARA

c. URANA (I) + KEREBA = uranakereba

(In forming a "BA" negative conditional, the final "I" is dropped, and "KEREBA" is added.)

d. URANA + KATTARA = uranakattara

(abrupt past of *ai*-ending words is katta without the i)

Mada uranakattara watakushi      If he had not sold it yet,  
ga kaimasu.      I would buy (it).

EXAMPLES:

a. Benkyoo shinai to chichi ni If I do not study I will be  
shi-kararemasu.      scolded by father.

b. Anata ga ikanai nara If you are not going, I won't  
watakushi mo ikimasen.      go either.

c. Hayaku okinakereba osoku If you do not get up early, you  
nari-masu.      will be late.

- d. Ima kawanakattara takaku If you do not buy now, it will  
nari-masu. become expensive.

"IF" (CONDITIONAL) OF ADJECTIVES: The Japanese adjectives have the attributes of a verb in that they conjugate like a verb as explained below.

1. In forming the conditional of adjectives, we have already discussed the use of NARA (see p. 200).

a. Atsui nara mado o akenasai. If it is hot, open the window.

b. Yasui nara kaimasu. If it is cheap, I will buy it.

2. The second method is by the addition of KEREBEBA to adjectives without the last "i."

a. Takakereba kaemasen. If it is expensive, I cannot buy it.

b. Tookereba takushi de If it is far, I will go by taxi.  
ikimasu.

c. Muzukashikereba If it is difficult, I can't  
wakarimasen. understand.

KA TTARA can also be used to make a conditional following the rule explained for kereba.

a. Isogashikattara ii If you are busy, it's all right (don't  
desu. bother).

b. Tookattara If it is far, I can't go.  
ikemasen.

**FORMATION OF PAST OF ADJECTIVES:** Adjective + deshita is the pattern introduced earlier to make the past tense of adjectives.

muzukashii deshita—was difficult

yasui deshita—was cheap

1. The **NEGATIVE** of these are:

muzukashiku arimasen deshita

yasuku arimasen deshita

2. The **PAST** of adjectives is formed by the addition of **KATTA**:

muzukashi-katta

yasu-katta

3. The **PAST NEGATIVES** are:

muzukashiku-nakatta

yasuku-nakatta

The katta ending is abrupt, so desu is often added to give the polite ending. This pattern is used more commonly than the one mentioned above.

a. Shiken wa muzukashi-katta The examination was  
desu. difficult.

b. Eiga wa omoshiroku-nakatta The movie was not good.  
desu.

DESIDERATIVE "TAI": The ai ending of a desiderative is the same as the true adjective ending. Therefore, all the rules mentioned above with reference to the formation of conditional, negative, etc., are equally applicable. The yodan (c.v.) verb yomu, and ichidan (n.c.v.) verb taberu are given below for contrast.

### 1. Conditional of "tai"

yomitai nara—if you want to read

tabetai nara—if you want to eat

yomita-kereba— if you want to read tabeta-kereba—if you want to eat

yomita-kattara—if you want to read

tabeta-kattara—if you want to eat

### 2. Negative conditional of "tai"

yomitakunai nara—if you do not want to read

tabetakunai nara—if you do not want to eat

yomitaku-nakereba—if you do not want to read

tabetaku-nakereba—if you do not want to eat

yomitaku-nakattara—if you do not want to read

tabetaku-nakattara—if you do not want to eat

### 3. Past of "tai"

yomitai deshita—wanted to read

tabetai deshita—wanted to eat

yomita-katta—wanted to read

tabeta-katta—wanted to eat

#### 4. Negative past of "tai"

yomitaku arimasen deshita—I did not want to read.

tabetaku arimasen deshita—I did not want to eat.

yomitaku-nakatta—I did not want to read.

tabetaku-nakatta—I did not want to eat.

NO WA, NO O: When a verb is used as the subject of a sentence, no is used as a nominalizer, followed by a nominative postposition wa. The function of no in this case (and also in the following no o) is that it serves as a noun following the relative clause construction.

#### 1. "Smoking is bad for your health."

In analyzing this sentence, "smoking," a gerund, is the subject of this sentence. "Smoking" in Japanese is tabako o nomu. Therefore, in order to use this verbal phrase as a subject, it must be first nominalized as follows:

Tabako o nomu no—(this no may be interpreted as "the act of smoking.")

Therefore:

Tabako o nomu NO WA karada ni yoku arimasen.

#### 2. "It is difficult to write kanji."

The subject here is "it," but the true subject is "to write kanji" (is difficult). Therefore:

Kanji o kaku NO WA muzukashii desu.

3. "I saw a robber enter a house."

What did I see? The expression "a robber enter a house," therefore, is the object of "saw." "A robber enter a house" is Doroboo ga ie ni hairu.

Now, let us put these parts into the formula:

SUBJECT WA + OBJECT O + VERB

Watakushi wa doroboo ga ie ni hairu NO O mimashita.

4. "I did not know that John went to Japan."

John ga Nihon e itta NO O shirimasen deshita.

(The fact that John went to Japan, (I) didn't know.)

## Fluency Drill

I

Mimashita.

Otoko no ko o mimashita.

Otoko no ko ga torn no o mimashita.

Otoko no ko ga hon o torn no o mimashita.

Otoko no ko ga sensei no hon o toru no o mimashita.

Otoko no ko ga sensei no Nihongo no hon o toru no o mimashita.

(I) saw.

(I) saw a boy.

(I) saw a boy take

(I) saw a boy take a book.

(I) saw a boy take the teacher's book.

(I) saw a boy take the teacher's Japanese book.

II

Watakushi wa suki desu.

Watakushi wa okiru no ga suki desu.



Watakushi wa asa okiru no ga suki desu.

Watakushi wa asa hayaku okiru no ga suki desu.

Watakushi wa asa hayaku roku-ji goro okiru no ga suki desu.

Watakushi wa asa hayaku okite sampo suru no ga suki desu.

Watakushi wa asa hayaku okite kooen no naka o sampo suru no ga suki desu.

I like.

I like to get up.

I like to get up in the morning.

I like to get up early in the morning.

I like to get up early about 6 o'clock in the morning.

I like to get up early in the morning and take a walk.

I like to get up early in the morning and take a walk in the park.

## Substitution Drill

*(4th Base Verb)*

YOME	} + BA
KAKE	
IKE	
KAE	
etc.	

*(Stem of N.C.V.)*

MI	} + REBA
DE	
TABE	
NE	
etc.	

## Exercises

Translate the following 29 sentences using four different "conditional" constructions and then complete each sentence.

1. If you learn Japanese..  
a. Nihongo o narau to..

- b. Nihongo o narau nara..
- c. Nihongo o naraeba..
- d. Nihongo o narattara..
- 2. If you get up at 8 o'clock..
- 3. If you speak French..
- 4. If you ask (request) him..
- 5. If you leave home now..
- 6. If you close the window..
- 7. If you stand on the chair..
- 8. If you want to learn Japanese..
  - a. Nihongo o naraitai nara..
  - b. Nihongo o naraitakereba..
  - c. Nihongo o naraitakattara..
- 9. If you want to go..
- 10. If you do not buy now..
  - a. Ima kawanai to..
  - b. Ima kawanai nara..
  - c. Ima kawanakattara..
- 11. If you do not study tonight..

12. If the class does not begin  
at 9:00..
13. If you do not run fast.
14. If you do not tell the  
teacher
15. If you cannot come at  
9:00
- a. Ku-ji ni kuru koto ga  
dekinai to .
  - b. Ku-ji ni kuru koto ga  
dekinai nara.
  - c. Ku-ji ni kuru koto ga  
dekinakereba .
  - d. Ku-ji ni kuru koto ga  
dekinakattara.
16. If you cannot speak  
Japanese .
17. If you cannot live in  
Tokyo .
18. If you do not want to go
- a. Ikitakunai to .
  - b. Ikitakunai nara.
  - c. Ikitakunakereba .
  - d. Ikitakunakattara .
19. If you do not want to buy  
my car.
20. If you do not want to  
study tonight.
21. If you do not want to  
bring your dog

22. If the room is hot.
  - a. Heya ga atsui to .
  - b. Heya ga atsui nara .
  - c. Heya ga atsukereba .
  - d. Heya ga atsukattara .
23. If the teacher's house is far
24. If the book is difficult.
25. If the car is expensive .
26. If the car is not old .
  - a. Kuruma ga furukunai to
  - b. Kuruma ga furukunai nara .
  - c. Kuruma ga furukunakereba .
  - d. Kuruma ga furukunakattara.
27. If the room is not cold .
28. If the movie is not interesting .
29. If the story is not long .
30. The examination was Shiken wa muzukashikatta difficult. (desu).
31. The movie was Eiga wa omoshirokatta (desu). interesting.
32. The road was bad. Michi ga warukatta (desu).
33. The room was not Heya wa takakunakatta (desu). expensive.
34. The movie was not long. Eiga wa nagakunakatta (desu).

35. The necktie was not blue. Nekutai wa aokunakatta (desu).
36. I like to walk. Aruku no ga suki desu.
37. I like to climb mountains. Yama o noboru no ga suki desu.
38. I do not like to work. Shigoto o suru no ga kirai desu.
39. I do not like to go to school. Gakkoo e iku no ga kirai desu.
40. I saw him take (it). Toru no o mimashita.
41. I saw him leave. Dekakeru no o mimashita.
42. I saw the boy eat (it). Otoko no ko ga taberu no o mimashita.
43. It is easy to speak Japanese. Nihongo o hanasu no wa yasashii desu.
44. It is your work to load these books. Kono hon o tsumu no wa anata no shigoto desu.
45. It is expensive to go by airplane. Hikooki de iku no wa takai desu.
46. It is fun to climb Mt. Fuji. Fujisan ni noboru no wa omoshiroi desu.
47. It is difficult to write kanji. Kanji o kaku no wa muzukashii desu.
48. Walking is good for your health. Aruku no wa kenkoo ni ii desu.
49. Using chopsticks is difficult. Hashi o tsukau no wa muzukashii desu.
50. Learning kanji is not easy. Kanji o narau no wa yasashiku arimasen.

Translate into Japanese:

1. I waited for him 15 minutes, so I was late for work, (exchange of favor)

He did not wait for me, so I was late for work, (exchange of favor)

2. If you meet the principal in Tokyo, please give him my regards.

Note: Please give him my regards—yoroshiku itte kudasai.

3. The children had (some) dumplings made (for them) by (their) mother, and they happily started out.

Note: Children received the favor of

4. I saw the teachers and students eating lunch in the dining room (shokudoo).

Note: "Lunch" can be either chuushoku or (o)bentoo. (O)bentoo is used for a packed lunch, picnic lunch, etc.

5. It is difficult to speak Japanese like a person born in Japan.

Note: (a) (speak) like . —no yoo ni + verb

(b) The subject of this sentence is "to speak Japanese. born in Japan."

6. The enemy country finally surrendered after it had continued fighting hard for five years.

Note: "to continue fighting" is a compound verb, a combination of two verbs—"continue" and "fighting."

The formula in this case is:

2nd BASE  
of the + *tsuzukeru—tatahai-tsuzukeru*  
VERB  
"continue raining"—*ame ga furi-tsuzukeru*  
"continue studying"—*benkyoo shi-tsuzukeru*

7. The old man takes a walk every morning accompanied by his dog (taking along his dog).

8. I did not know (that) (the fact) you were bitten by a dog.

Note: . koto o shirimasen deshita.

9. When I went to your home during your absence, there was a car stopped in front of the house.

Note: Use 3 different ways of forming a "when" clause.

10. Because my boy's return was late, I was very worried, but when he telephoned I was relieved.

Note: my boy—*watakushi no musuko* (son)

Quite often, *uchi no* is used in the sense of "belonging to the family or household," e.g., *uchi no jidoosha*, or *uchi no jockuu* (our maid).

Translate into English:

First, form the past tense of the following sentences, and translate. Second, form the negative and translate. (Some are already in the negative form.)

Third, form the past negative and translate.

1. *Ie no mae ni inu ga imasu.*

2. *Watakushi wa daigaku o dete kara sensei ni naritai.*

3. Nihongo ga hanasenai.
4. Watakushi wa kurasu ni rajio o motte kimasen.
5. Kono eiga o Nihon de miru.
6. Sensei wa Amerika kara hikooki de kimasu.
7. Koko no sushi wa oishii desu.
8. Fude de kanji o kaku no wa muzukashii.
9. Tookyoo no fuyu wa atatakakunai.
10. Heya no denki wa tsuite imasen.
11. Kono inu wa sakana o taberu.
12. Mado ga aite inai.
13. Brown-san wa maiban Nihongo no benkyoo shimasu.
14. Brown-san wa komban shigoto o suru.
15. Gakusei wa aruite gakkoo e kuru.
16. Ima atarashii ootobai ga kaenai.
17. Chichi ni kuruma o katte morau.
18. Kodomo ni omocha o katte ageru.
19. Daigaku o dete kara sensei ni naru.



20. Natsuyasumichuu ni hon o yondari sampo o shitari suru tsumori desu.

Answer in Japanese:

1. Momotaroo no kerai wa nan-nin imashita ka. Ichiban hajime (first) ni kita no wa dare deshita ka.
2. Onitachi wa Momotaroo ga kuru no o miru to doo shimashita ka. Sugu ni koosan shimashita ka.
3. Kiji wa donna daiji na shigoto o shimashita ka.
4. Dare ga mon o nobotte mon o akemashita ka.
5. Anata wa saru ni hikkakareta koto ga arimasu ka. Anata wa inu ni kamitsukareta koto ga arimasu ka.
6. Oni wa koosan shita toki donna yakusoku o shimashita ka.
7. Ojiisan wa naze Momotaroo no rusuchuu shimpai shimashita ka.
8. Sekai-ichi no takai tatemono wa doko ni arimasu ka. Oosaka wa Nihon-ichi no daitokai desu ka.
9. Anata wa shiken o ukeru mae ni kesshite shimpai shimasen ka. Itsu anshin shimasu ka.
10. Anata wa tomodachi to chuushoku o taberu toki itsu-mo gochisoo shite moraimasu ka. Gochisoo shite agemasu ka.

Use the proper postpositions in the blank spaces: (Know why you are using the particular postposition.)

1. Watakushi wa Nihon ni ita toki Fujisan\_\_\_\_\_noborimashita.
2. Otoko no ko wa sensei\_\_\_\_\_shikarareta.
3. Kono taipuraitaa\_\_\_\_\_tomodachi\_\_\_\_\_azukemasu.
4. Nara-yuki no kisha wa Kyooto\_\_\_\_\_nori-kaenakereba narimasen.
5. Otoko no ko wa Nihongo no kurasu\_\_\_\_\_okuremashita.
6. Watakushi wa tanjoobi (birthday)\_\_\_\_\_chichi\_\_\_\_\_atarashii jidoosha\_\_\_\_\_katte moraimashita.
7. Anata wa sakuban hitori\_\_\_\_\_ (alone) eiga\_\_\_\_\_ikimashita ka. Tomodachi \_\_\_\_\_ikimashita ka.
8. Anata wa Nihon\_\_\_\_\_Tanaka-san\_\_\_\_\_aimashita ka.
9. Sensei wa seito\_\_\_\_\_yurushite yarimashita.
10. Tookyoo\_\_\_\_\_ichiban ookii hoteru no mae\_\_\_\_\_. takushii\_\_\_\_\_tomarimashita.
11. Asa hayaku okiru no\_\_\_\_\_muzukashii desu.
12. Akaboo wa jidoosha\_\_\_\_\_toranku\_\_\_\_\_tsumimashita.

13. Lincoln wa Booth \_\_\_\_\_ pisutoru \_\_\_\_\_ atama \_\_\_\_\_ utare mashita.
14. Kono kisha wa nan-ji \_\_\_\_\_ Kyooto \_\_\_\_\_ tsukimasu ka.
15. Tookyoo wa sekai \_\_\_\_\_ ichiban ookii tokai \_\_\_\_\_ narimashita.
16. Amerika wa Doitsu \_\_\_\_\_ yonenkan tatakaimashita.
17. Teki \_\_\_\_\_ hikooki wa machi no ue \_\_\_\_\_ tobi-mawarimashita.
18. Gekijoo no mae \_\_\_\_\_ watakushi \_\_\_\_\_ sensei to Tanaka-san \_\_\_\_\_ aimashita.
19. Otoko no ko wa inu \_\_\_\_\_ ashi \_\_\_\_\_ kami-tsukare mashita.

ANSWER: 1. O	8. DE, NI	15. DE, NI
2. NI	9. O	16. TO
3. O, NI	10. DE, DE, WA	17. NO, O
4. DE	11. WA	18. DE, WA, NI
5. NI	12. NI, O	19. NI, O
6. NI, KARA (NI), O	13. NI, DE, O	
7. DE, E, TO	14. NI, NI	

## POLITE AND ABRUPT FORMS

Study this chart which gives the polite and the abrupt, the affirmative and negative forms.

	PRESENT	PAST	PRESENT NEGATIVE (do not...)	PAST NEGATIVE (did not...)
<b>TODAY VERB</b> read	(Polite) yominsau (Abrupt) yomu	yomimashita yonda	yominsasen yomana	yomimashen yomanaikatta
<b>play</b>	(Polite) asobinsau (Abrupt) asobu	asobimashita asocda	asobinsasen asobana	asobimashen asobenakatta
<b>buy</b>	(Polite) kaiminsau (Abrupt) kau	kaimimashita katta	kaiminsasen kavana	kaimimashen kavanaikatta
<b>ICHIDAN VERB</b> see	(Polite) miminsau (Abrupt) miru	mimimashita mits	miminsasen minai	mimimashen minakatta
<b>eat</b>	(Polite) tabeminsau (Abrupt) taberu	tabemimashita tabeta	tabeminsasen tabenai	tabemimashen tabenakatta
<b>IRREG. VERB</b> come	(Polite) kinsau (Abrupt) kuru	kimashita kita	kinsasen konai	kinsimashen konakatta
<b>do</b>	(Polite) shimsau (Abrupt) suru	shimimashita shita	shimsasen shinai	shimsimashen shinakatta
<b>ADJECTIVE</b> large	(Polite) ookii desu (Abrupt) ookii	ookii deshita ookikatta	ookiku arimasen ookikunai	ookiku arimasen ookikunakatta
<b>cold</b>	(Polite) samui desu (Abrupt) samui	samui deshita samukatta	samuku arimasen samukunai	samuku arimasen samukunakatta
<b>DERIVATIVE</b> want to see	(Polite) mitai desu (Abrupt) mitai	mitai deshita mitakatta	mitaku arimasen mitakunai	mitaku arimasen mitakunakatta

## CHAPTER 19

### SUPERPOLITE AND HUMBLE FORMS\*

#### SUPERPOLITE AND HUMBLE ORDINARY FORM FORMS

1. SORE WA NAN DE Sore wa nan desu ka.  
(a) GOZAIMASU KA.  
(b) KORE WA TAIWAN KARA Kore wa Taiwan kara kita  
KITA TAKE NO FUDE DE take no fude desu.  
GOZAIMASU.
2. WATAKUSHI NO PEN GA Watakushi no pen ga soko  
(a) SOKO NI GOZAIMASU KA. ni arimasu ka.  
(b) HAI, GOZAIMASU. Hai, arimasu.
3. JIBIKI MO SOKO NI Jibiki mo soko ni arimasu  
(a) GOZAIMASU KA. ka.  
(b) HE, GOZAIMASEN. Iie, arimasen.
4. KONO HON WA Kono hon wa omoshiroi  
(a) OMO-SHIROO desu ka.  
GOZAIMASU KA.  
(b) IIE, AMARI OMOSHIROO Iie, amari omoshiroku  
GOZAIMASEN. arimasen.
5. NAZE KORE WA SONNA Naze kore wa sonna ni  
(a) NI TAKOO GOZAIMASU takai desu ka.  
KA.  
(b) KORE WA ATARASHUU Kore wa atarashii desu  
GOZAIMASU KARA, kara sukoshi takai desu.  
SUKOSHI TAKOO  
GOZAIMASU.

6. WATAKUSHI NO NOOTO Watakushi no nooto ga  
 (a) GA O-WAKARI NIwakarimashi-ta ka.  
 NARIMASHITA KA.\*\*
- (b) WAKARIYASUKU KAITE Wakariyasuku kaite  
 GOZAIMA SHITA KARA, arimashita kara, yoku  
 YOKU wakarimashita.  
 WAKARIMASHI-TA.
7. OKUSAMA WA DOCHIRA Okusama wa dochira e  
 (a) E O-DEKAKE NIdekake-mashita ka.  
 NARIMASHITA KA.\*\*
- (b) KYOO WA KAIMONO NIKyoo wa kaimono ni iku  
 IRASSHARU TOto itte imashita.  
 OSSHATTE IMASHITA.
8. ANATA NO Anata no o-tomodachi wa  
 (a) O-TOMO-DACHI WAmada New York ni imasu  
 MADA NEW YORK Nika.  
 IRASSHAIMASU KA.
- (b) HAI, TANAKA-SAMA WAHai, Tanaka-san wa New  
 NEW YORK DEYork de hataraitte imasu.  
 HATA-RAITE  
 IRASSHAIMASU.
9. OKUDA-SAMA WA MOO Okuda-san wa moo okite  
 (a) OKITE IRASSHAIMASUimasu ka.  
 KA.
- (b) OKUDA-SAMA WA MADA Okuda-san wa mada nete  
 NETE IRASSHARU YOOiru yoo desu.  
 DESU.
10. GO-SHUIIN WA DOCHIRA Go-shujin wa dochira e  
 (a) E OWE NI NARIMASHITA ikimashita ka.  
 KA.

- (b) GO-SHUIJIN WA Go-shuijin wa kinoo  
SAKU-JITSU HIKOOKI DE hikooki de Chicago e  
CHICAGO E O-TACHI NI tachimashita.  
NARIMASHITA.
- SORE DEWA KONO Sore dewa kono tegami o  
TEGAMI O O-WATASHI watashite kudasaimasen  
KUDASAIMASEN KA. ka.
11. KYOO DOCHIRA E OWE Kyoo dochira e ikimashita  
(a) NI NARIMASHITA KA. ka.
- (b) KYOO WATAKUSHI WA Kyoo watakushi wa  
AOYAMA NO HOO E Aoyama no hoo e  
MAIRIMASHITA. ikimashita.
12. GO-SHUIJIN WA ITSU Go-shuijin wa itsu kaette  
(a) KAETTE IRASSHAIMASU kimasu ka.  
KA.
- (b) SHUIJIN GA SAKUBAN Shuijin ga sakuban kaette  
KAETTE M AIRIMASHITA kimashita kara chotto uchi  
KARA CHOTTO UCHI made kite kudasaimasen  
MADE OIDE ka.  
KUDASAIMASEN KA.
13. KYOO OKUSAMA WA Kyoo okusan wa dochira e  
(a) DOCHIRA E OIDE DE ikimasu ka.  
GOZAIMASU KA.
- (b) KYOO WA DOCHIRA E Kyoo wa dochira e mo  
MO MAHUMASEN. ikimasen.
14. DOOSHITE SONO YOO NA Dooshite sonna koto o  
(a) KOTO O MAINICHI mainichi shimasu ka.  
NASAIMASU KA.
- (b) HAYAKU KONO Hayaku kono shigoto o  
SHIGO-TO O OETAI KARA oetai kara mainichi  
MAI-NICHI ITASHIMASU. shimasu.

15. BROWN-SAN                      WABrown-san wa dare to  
 (a) DONATA TO GO-ISSHO NIissho ni kono shigoto o  
     KONO      SHIGOTO      Oshimashita ka. (With  
     NA-SAIMASHITA KA.      whom did Mr. Brown do  
    this work?)
- (b) ANO KATA WA ANNAAno kata wa anna  
     MUZUKASHII KOTO Omuzukashii koto o hitori  
     HITORI                      DEde shimashita. (He did  
     NASAIMASHITA.      such a difficult thing  
    alone.)
16. DENWA O SURU JIKAN GADenwa o suru jikan ga  
 (a) GOZAIMASU KA.                      arimasu ka. (Is there time  
    to telephone?)
- (b) HE, HAYAKU KISHA NIHe, hayaku kisha ni  
     O-NORINASAI.                      norinasai.
17. HAYAKU KONO SHIGOTOHayaku kono shigoto o  
 (a) O SHITE ITADAKITAIshite morai-tai desu ga.  
     DESU GA.
- (b) GO-TSUGOO                      GATsugoo ga yokereba  
     YORO-SHIKEREBA                      komban shi-mashoo.  
     KOMBAN  
     ITASHIMASHOO.
18. TANAKA-SAN                      WATanaka-san wa hitori de  
 (a) O-HITORI      DE      KONOono shigoto o suru koto  
     SHIGOTO      O      NASARUGa dekimasu kashira. (I  
     KOTO      GA      DEKIMASUwonder if Mr. Tanaka can  
     KASHIRA.                      do this work alone.)
- (b) O-TETSUDAI      IT      ASHTetsudaimasu kara anshin  
     1-MASU                      KARAshite kudasai.  
     GO-AN-SHIN KUDASAI.



19. ANO KATA NO JI O Ano kata no ji o mita koto  
 (a) GORAN NI NATT A KOTO ga ari-masu ka. (Have you  
 GA GOZAIMASU KA. ever seen his writing?)  
 (b) IIE, MADA ICHIDO MO Iie, mada ichido mo mita  
 HAIKEN SHIT A KOTO WA koto wa arimasen.  
 GOZAIMASEN.
20. KYOOTO KARA KITA Kyooto kara kita kono  
 (a) KONO TEGAMI O GORAN tegami o mimashita ka.  
 NI NARIMASHITA KA.  
 (b) HAI, SAKUJITSU Hai, sakujitsu mimashita.  
 HAI-KENITASHIMASHITA.
21. NAKAJIMA-SAN ONakajima-san o shitte  
 (a) GO-ZONJI DE imasu ka.  
 IRASSHAI-MASU KA.  
 (b) HE, YOKU WA Iie, yoku shirimasen ga  
 ZONJI-MASEN GA Kyooto no imooto ga shitte  
 KYOOTO NO IMOOTO GA iru soo desu.  
 ZONJI-AGETE IRU SOO  
 DESU.
22. KOMBAN TSUGOO GA Komban tsugoo ga yoi  
 (a) YOROSHII NODE, UCHI kara, uchi made kite hoshii  
 MADE IRASHITE to omoimasu.  
 ITA-DAKITAI TO  
 ZONJI-MASU.
- (b) GO-ZONJI NO TOORI Shitte iru toori, haha ga  
 HAHA GA BYOOKI DE byooki desu kara  
 GOZAIMASU KARA ikemasen. (As you know,  
 MAIREMASEN. mother is sick, so I won't  
 be able to go.)
23. KONO SHUKUDAI WA Kono shukudai wa doo  
 (a) DOO SHITARASHITARA ii desu ka. (How

- YOROSHUU GOZAIMASU should I do this homework  
KA. ?)
- (b) SENSEI NO OSSHATTA Sensei no itta toori ni  
TOORI NI SHINASAI. shinasai. (Do as your  
teacher tells you.)
24. WATAKUSHI NO PEN O Watakushi no pen o  
(a) O-TSUKAI NI NATsukaimasen ka. (Won't  
RIMASEN KA. you use my pen?)
- (b) SORE DEWA CHOTTO Sore dewa chotto  
MANNENHITSU Omannenhitsu o karimasu.  
HAI-SHAKU IT  
ASHIMASU.
25. DONATA-SAMA DE Dare desu ka.  
(a) IRAS-SHAIMASU KA.
- (b) WATAKUSHI WA Watakushi wa Tanaka to  
TAÑARA TO iimasu.  
MOOSHIMASU.
26. DOKO DE O-MACHI IT Doko de machimashoo ka.  
(a) ASHIMASHOO KA.
- (b) DOOZO KOCHIRA EDoozo kochira e kite  
IRASHITE KUDASAI. kudasai.
27. KYOOTO E MAIRIMASU Kyooto e ikimasu ga  
(a) GA NANI-KA GO-YOO GAnani-ka yoo ga arimasu ka.  
GOZAIMASU KA.
- (b) KYOOTO E Kyooto e ittara ani no uchi  
IRASSHATTARA ANI NO e iki-nasai.  
UCHI E OWE NASAI.
28. IMA KOOGI O NASATTE Ima koogi o shite iru kata  
(a) IRASSHARU O-KATA WA wa dare desu ka. (Who is  
DONATA-SAMA DE the person who is lecturing  
GOZAIMASU KA. now?)

(b) ANO KATA WA DAIGAKU Ano kata wa daigaku  
KYOOJU NOkyooju no Tanaka-san  
TANAKA-SAN DE desu.  
GOZAIMASU.

29. GO-RYOOSHIN WARYooshin wa genki desu  
(a) O-GENKI DEka. (Are both of your  
IRASSHAIMASU KA. parents well?)  
(b) OKAGESAMA DE GENKIOkagesama de genki desu.  
DE GOZAIMASU.

30. MOO HIRUGOHAN O Moo hirugohan o  
(a) MESHIAGARIMASHITA tabemashita ka.

KA.

(b) IIE, MADA DElie, mada desu. Chuushoku  
GOZAIMASU. ni chuu-ka ryoori o tabetai  
CHUUSHOKU NI CHUUKA desu.  
RYOORI O ITADAKITAI  
DESU.

\* In order to gain proficiency in the use of this form of expression, try converting the ordinary forms on the right side into the Superpolite and Humble Forms.

\*\* The honorific prefixes, "O" and "GO," are hyphenated in this chapter to emphasize their usage in superpolite expressions.

Vocabulary from the Lesson

okusama	(n.) honorific term used for someone else's wife. For one's own wife use tsuma or kanai.
-sama	(suf.) more polite form of san.
(go)shujin	(n.) master (of a house, shop, etc.), husband; go is added to refer to someone else's husband or master.
tatsu	(v.i.) In addition to "stand," it also means to "depart, leave." Use postposition o to show where it departs from—Kyooto o tatsu.
o-tachi narimashita	ni(superpolite form of tatsu) departed.
dooshite	same as naze.
oeru	(v.t.) to finish, complete (Owaru is the intransitive verb.)
tetsudau	(v.t.) to help, to lend a hand
o-tetsudai itashimasu	(superpolite form of tetsudau—See I.C. & G.N.)
toori	"exactly as.... (usually used with a verb, hanashita toori—"exactly as I said")
koogi	(n.) lecture. However, when used as a Chinese verb, koogi suru, it means "to lecture."
(go)ryooshin	(n.) both parents. Go is added to refer to someone else's parents.
okagesama de.	(idio.) thanks to your consideration
tsugoo	(n.) convenience, conditions
tsugoo ga ii	"to be convenient"; this expression is used when referring to the convenience of one's schedule ; benri ga ii, which also means "convenient," is with reference to the physical convenience.

ryoori (n.) cooking; Chuuka ryoori—Chinese food.  
Ryoori suru—to cook. ryoorinin—a cook,  
ryooriya—a (Japanese) restaurant.

## Important Construction and Grammar Notes

SUPERPOLITE (HONORIFIC) AND HUMBLE FORMS have already been referred to in Chapter 10, p. 165. Here we will go into greater detail as to how to form this superpolite style of expression. Remember, however, that this is not archaic, or too formal, or no longer in use. A foreigner in Japan can get along quite well by speaking in the ordinary polite form emphasized throughout this book. On the other hand, he will have great difficulty in comprehending if he is not familiar with this form, since it is widely used among educated people, or by those in business catering to customers.

The honorific form is used to indicate respect or social grace by using more polite forms, or it may be used in speaking to a superior, either in age or in social status. This is not a hard and fast rule, since one often hears this style used where the sense of superior and inferior does not exist, e.g., a considerate mother talking to her own child, probably in the hope of instilling some manners. The humble form is used only of oneself (or, first person) showing humility, with the meaning, "I humbly say (do, etc.) .". The use of honorific form goes hand in hand with the use of humble— exalt the others but humble oneself is the principle.

It is not too helpful to attempt to give meaning to these expressions. It is more important to acquire the "feeling" for them. When using this form of expression, note that the

kinship terms (your father, uncle, etc.) must also conform to the polite usage as explained in the chart on p. 257. The other party is always exalted, but when referring to members of your own family, use the ordinary form.

Therefore, there are three styles to this expression:

1. Honorific: this category can be further differentiated between verbs which are already honorific in form (or "built in" honorific words) and the regular verbs converted into honorific form.

2. Humble.

3. Polite and Humble words.

These are explained below.

The following chart shows the more commonly used verbs with their honorific and humble equivalents. (The numbers below indicate the examples given in the text.)

VERB	PLAIN	HONORIFIC	HUMBLE (for 1st person only)
is, are (to be)		de gozaimasu	
		1a-b, 22b, 28a, 29a	
there is (are)	aru	ga gozaimasu	
		2a-b, 3a-b, 16a, 27a,	

		28b, 29b	
there (are)	is iru	irassharu, 8a	oru
go	iku	irassharu, 11a, 27b	lb, mairu, lib, 13b, 27a
come	kuru	irassharu, 26b	22a, mairu, 22b
do	suru	nasaru, 15a-b	itasu, 14b, 17b
		asobasu	
		agaru	
eat (drink)	taberu (nomu)	meshiagaru, 30a	itadaku, 17a, 30b
		agaru	
see	miru	goran ni	naru, haiken suru, 20b
		20a	
say, speak	iu	ossharu, 7b, 23b	moosu, mooshiageru,
			25b
wear	kiru	o-meshi ni	naru
know	shiru	go-zonji	desu, zonjiru, 22a
		22b	
			zonjiageru, 21b
sleep	neru	o-yasumi	ni
		naru	
give	yaru	ageru	sashiageru
receive	morau		itadaku
visit	tazuneru		agaru, ukagau
hear	kiku		ukagau, uketamawaru

**Note:** 1. Most honorifics are used when referring to someone higher in social status than the speaker, but there are verb

forms which are used for "things" as well as "persons." In this usage, they are more for politeness, e.g., de gozaimasu (for "things" and "persons"); ga gozaimasu (for "things").

2. These verbs, with the exception of zanjiru, ageru, sashiageru, and mooshiageru, are all yodan verbs (c.v.). This includes mairu. Gozaimasu is really masu attached to the 2nd base of gozaru, which is gozari + masu. However, in ordinary everyday conversation, the "r" has been omitted. Therefore, for the same reason, irasshaimasu and nasaimasu are more commonly used.

3. Haiken suru has the meaning of seeing something with a feeling of respect, or reverence. Therefore, you do not use this when referring to "seeing a movie, or a picture." When it is a special picture, however, you are gratefully acknowledging to the painter the opportunity afforded you. Then haiken suru is permissible.

4. Oide ni naru has the meaning of "to go" (see sentences 10a, 11a), "to come," or "to be" (same as imasu).

Oide de gozaimasu means "to go" (see sentence 13a).

Oide nasai is polite imperative meaning "go!" or "come!" (see sentence 27b).

Oide kudasai is the polite request, "please ..." (see sentence 12b).

O (GO) . NI NARU: With verbs that do not have honorific equivalents, the following formula can be used to form



honorific verbs. Remember that it is the verb which changes to express various degrees of politeness.

"O" + (GO)	2nd BASE of VERB (noun form)	NI NARU (or NASARU) NASAI—(Do . . .) KUDASAI—(Please . . .)
---------------	------------------------------------	---

kaku	—o-kaki	ni naru (or nasaru)
		kudasai (or kudasaru)
yomu	—o-yomi	ni naru (or nasaru)
		kudasai
kau	—o-kai	ni naru (or nasaru)
		kudasai
dekakeru	—o-dekake	ni naru (non-conjugating verb)
		kudasai

*O-kaki kudasai* is more polite than *kaitte kudasai*.

FUNCTION OF DOOZO—Doozo, meaning "please," is often used with the superpolite request form mentioned above.

1. Doozo o-hairi kudasai. Please come in.
2. Doozo o-kake kudasai. Please sit down.
3. Doozo o-machi kudasai. Please wait.
4. Doozo mado o o-shime kudasai. Please close the window.

Compare this form of request with the ordinary polite request discussed in Chapter 4.

It must be remembered that doozo alone does not make the polite request sentence, but it is the 2nd base + kudasai ending which gives this meaning.

In certain situations the use of doozo alone will give the full implied meaning. For example, someone knocks on the door and you say just, "Doozo!" meaning "Doozo o-hairi kudasai," or you motion to a chair and say to your guest, "Doozo," indicating "Doozo o-kake kudasai." In either instance, what

doozo is referring to is quite clear.

FIRST PERSON HONORIFIC: Following pattern is used to form honorific involving first person.

O	+	2nd BASE of Verb	+	SURU (ITASU)
---	---	---------------------	---	-----------------

 = (I) DO (verb)...

	<i>o-tsukuri shimasu.</i>	( <i>itashimasu</i> )
Watakushi ga	<i>o-yobi shimasu.</i>	( )
	<i>o-ai shimasu.</i>	( )
	<i>o-tasume shimasu.</i>	( )

Itasu is used for humble meaning.

Contrary to the principle that superpolite is used only for others, this pattern is used for first person only and gives polite tone to the sentence. Note, however, that this form is not applicable to all verbs. Learn by usage.

Now compare the following:

- a. Sensei ga o-mukae ni Teacher will meet  
narimasu. (someone).
- b. Watakushi ga o-mukae  
shimasu.

(a) is used in reference to someone else, while (b) is for first person.

PASSIVE AS HONORIFIC: Some passive forms of verbs can also be used to show the honorific. However, this expression is limited in usage.

1. Koochoo-sensei wa (Passive of kuru but used as mada korare-masen. honorific; "The principal has not come yet.")
2. Sensei wa nan to (Passive of iu; "What did the teacher iwaremashita ka. say?")
3. Kabuki e (Passive of iku; "Did you go to ikaremashita ka. Kabuki?")

**HONORIFIC FORMS OF NOUNS:** By attaching o (and sometimes go) to nouns the honorific forms of nouns can be formed.

o + noun	go + noun
o-furo —bath	go-byooki —illness
o-tearai —toilet	go-tsugoo —convenience
o-tegami—letter	go-fuufu —(married) couple
o-hashhi —chopsticks	go-chisoo —good food

There is no rule to indicate when one is preferable to the other—only through constant association will the student learn to understand the correct usage. However, in general, go is used with Chinese compound words, viz., go-benkyoo (studying), go-shimpai (worry), go-annai (guide), go-tsugoo (convenience), etc.

**IRASSHARU** has the meaning of iku, kuru, and iru—"to go," "to come," and "is" respectively. The distinction in meaning must be made from the context.

Dochira e irasshaimasu ka.	Where are you going?
----------------------------	----------------------

Kochira e irasshai.

Come here.

Sensei wa doko ni irasshaimasu Where is the  
ka. teacher?

When irassharu is used with the te form of the verb—te + irassharu— this is the same as te + imasu, the progressive form.

Benkyoo o shite irasshaimasu. He is studying.

Yasunde irasshaimasu. He is resting.

In summary:

iku, kuru	{honorific: <i>irassharu</i>
	{humble: <i>mairu</i>
iru	{honorific: <i>irassharu</i>
	{humble: <i>oru</i>

MESU: This is the honorific form having several uses—to wear, to catch a cold.

1. Nani o o-meshi ni narimasu ka.—What are you going to wear?

2. Sensei ga kaze o o-meshi ni narimashita.—The teacher caught a cold.

HONORIFIC ADJECTIVES can also be constructed by adding o.

o-atsui

o-hayai

o-isogashii

o-utsukushii

However, when these expressions are used in a statement, the "i" of the adjective is changed to "o" or "u" and pronounced either oo or uu depending on the endings as follows:

1. Kyoo wa hontoo ni atsui desu. Today is certainly hot.  
Kyoo wa hontoo ni (o)atsuu (o-atsui desu is also  
gozaimasu. used.)
2. Kono shinamono wa takai desu. These goods are  
Kono shinamono wa (o)takoo expensive, (or o-takai  
gozaimasu. desu.)
3. Shibai wa omoshiroi deshita. The play was  
Shibai wa omoshiroo interesting.  
gozai-mashita.

O and GO prefixes are not used with all nouns or adjectives. Indiscriminate usage of these may result in ludicrous statements.

DE GOZAIMASU is the honorific form of desu; the formula is as follows:

NOUN + DE GOZAIMASU

Kono kata wa watakushi no sensei de gozaimasu.

Kore wa watakushi no jibiki de gozaimashoo ka.

GOZAIMASU is the honorific form of ARIIMASU, showing existence of something. This is from gozaru, a conjugating verb, viz.,

ra  
 RI + MASU = gozaimasu  
 goza  
 ru  
 re  
 ro

MASU is added to the second base, but "r" has dropped from conversational usage—thus, GOZA(r)IMASU. (The omission of "r" as explained here occurs in other polite verb conjugations, e.g., IRASSHARU, OSSHA-RU, etc.)

This expression, like de gozaimasu mentioned above, is used for the purpose of politeness, disregarding the status concept.

Sensei no otaku wa dochira ni gozaimasu ka.  
 Kono heyra ni rajio ga gozaimasen.

TE GOZAIMASU: This form is equivalent to the state of being condition explained in Chapter 16.

"te" of transitive verb + gozaimasu arimasu = state of being

Nihongo ga kaite gozaimasu.

Mado ga akete gozaimasu.

KASHIRA used with the root form of the verb, noun, or adjective, expresses the doubt or uncertainty of the speaker. It has the meaning of "I wonder if (whether, how, etc.)..."

VERB

Arue ga furu kashira. I wonder if it will rain.

Kore wa taberareru kashira. I wonder if this is edible.

NOUN

Ano kata wa Nihonjin I wonder if he is a  
kashira. Japanese.

Kore wa dare no kashira. I wonder whose this is.

ADJECTIVE

Atsui kashira. I wonder if it is hot.

Muzukashii kashira. I wonder if it is difficult.

## Exercises

Use the honorific form in translating the following:

1. What are these? Kore wa nan de gozaimasu ka.  
(a)  
(b) These are Kore wa geta de gozaimasu.  
wooden clogs  
(geta).
2. What is the name Ano yama no namae wa nan de  
(a) of that mountain? gozaimasu ka.  
(b) That mountain is Ano yama wa Fujisan de gozaimasu.  
Mt. Fuji.
3. Where is the Kooshuu denwa wa doko ni gozaimasu  
(a) public phone? ka.  
(b) The phone is in Denwa wa heya no naka ni gozaimasu.  
the room.
4. Do you have Amerika no zasshi ga gozaimasu ka.  
(a) American  
magazines?  
(b) Yes we do. Hai, gozaimasu.
5. Where is Tanaka-kyooju wa doko ni  
(a) Professor irasshaimasu ka.  
Tanaka?

doko ni oide ni narimasu ka.

doko ni oide de gozaimasu ka.

(b) Professor Tanaka Tanaka-kyooju wa kyooshitsu ni is in the irasshaimasu. (or) Kyooshitsu ni oide ni classroom. narimasu. Kyooshitsu ni oide de gozaimasu.

6. Who is in the Donata ga heya ni irasshaimasu ka.

(a) room?

(b) Nobody is. Donata mo irasshaimasen.

7. Are you going to Ongakukai ni irasshaimasu ka.

(a) the concert?

. ni oide ni narimasu ka.

. ni oide de gozaimasu ka.

(b) Yes, I am going. Hai, mairimasu.

8. Are you coming Watakushi no uchi e irasshaimasu ka.

(a) to my house?

(b) No, I cannot lie, mairemasen.  
come.

9. What is Mr. Tanaka-sama no otoosama wa nani o

(a) Tanaka's father nasatte (shite) irasshaimasu ka.

doing now?

(b) He is not doing Nani-mo nasatte irassharanai soo desu.  
anything, I hear.

10. Where is he Ima doko ni o-tsutome ni natte

(a) working now? irasshaimasu ka.



- (b) He is working Daigaku ni o-tsutome ni natte  
(tsutomeru) at the irasshaimasu.  
university.
11. Have you eaten Chuushoku o moo  
(a) lunch yet? meshiagarare-mashita ka.  
(b) No, not yet. lie, mada itadakimasen.
12. What do you Nani o meshiagaritai desu ka.  
(a) want to eat?  
(b) I want to eat Chuuka ryoori o itadakitai desu.  
Chinese food.
13. Have you seen Tanaka-sama no e o goran ni  
(a) Mr. Tanaka's nari-mashita ka.  
picture?  
(b) Yes, I have. Hai, haiken shimashita.
14. What did the Sensei wa nan to osshaimashita ka.  
(a) teacher say?  
(b) The teacher said Sensei wa shiken ga aru to  
that there will be osshaimashita.  
an exam.
15. Did you say that Anata wa konai to osshaimashita ka.  
(a) you will not  
come?  
(b) Yes, I said so. Hai, soo mooshimashita.
16. What are you Sotsugyooshiki ni nani o o-meshi ni  
(a) going to wear for narimasu ka.  
graduation?  
(b) I will wear Kimono o kimasu.  
kimono.
17. Do you know Mr. Nara no Tanaka-sama o go-zonji desu  
(a) Tanaka of Nara? ka.

(b) Yes, I do know Hai, zonjiagete imasu.

(him).

18. Did you know Nihon ni irashita toki Tanaka-sama o

(a) Mr. Tanaka when go-zonji deshita ka.

you were in

Japan ?

(b) Yes, I knew him. Hai, zonjiagete imashita. Ano kata wa

He was my watakushi no sensei de gozai-mashita.

teacher.

19. Has he gone to O-yasumi ni narimashita ka.

(a) bed?

(b) Yes, he went to Hai, ku-ji ni o-yasumi ni narimashita.

bed at 9:00.

20. Has he returned Ano kata wa Hiroshima kara o-kaeri ni

(a) from Hiroshima? narimashita ka.

(b) Yes, he returned Hai, hachi-ji no kisha de o-kaeri ni

on the 8 o'clock narimashita.

train.

21. Have you read Tanaka-sama no hon o o-yomi ni

(a) Mr. Tanaka's narimashita ka.

book?

(b) No, I have not lie, mada yomimasen.

read it yet.

22. Did he meet the Ano kata wa Kyooto de koochoo sensei

(a) principal in ni o-ai ni narimashita ka.

Kyoto?

(b) Yes, he did. Hai, o-ai ni narimashita.

23. Shall I call the O-isha o o-yobi itashimashoo ka.

(a) doctor?

(b) Yes, please call Hai, sugu o-yobi kudasaimase.

immediately.

24. Shall I visit your Anata no go-ryooshin o o-tazune  
(a) parents? itashimashoo ka.

(b) Yes, please call Hai, o-tazune kudasaimase.  
on them.

25. Have you ever Anata wa Oosaka ni o-sumi ni natta  
(a) lived in Osaka? koto ga arimasu ka.

(b) No, I have not. lie, gozaimasen.

Translate into Japanese, using Honorific and Humble forms:

1. Have you ever been to Japan? No, but I would like to go once.

2. Our mistress went shopping at Daimaru, but she has not come home yet.

Note: Uchi (house) is often used to indicate "our" in the sense of "belonging to the household."

Uchi no jidoosha toa furui desu, or

Uchi no ko wa itazura (mischievous) de komarimasu.

3. What time shall I call you, and what time do you (want to) eat breakfast?

Note: O + YOB I + ITASU is the correct form for "to call." The humble form is used here because the speaker is in the first person.

Shokuji o suru means "to have (one's) meal." Remember that NASARU is the honorific form of SURU.

4. When are you going to read this letter? I would like you to return (it) tomorrow.

Note: The second sentence is requesting a favor. "Please give me the favor of. . ." Therefore, kaeshite itadakitai desu, or kaeskite itadakitoo gozaimasu.

5. There is a television (set) in my room, but (it) is not mine.

6. I would (like) to introduce this person. This person is my teacher.

7. When you go to Tokyo will you meet Professor Tanaka?

Note: Sensei is used after a name, not only when referring to a teacher, but also to anyone who is respected because of his special training or esteemed status in his community (doctors, lawyers, politicians, etc.). Kyooju is reserved for college professors only.

8. Do you know my master (boss) who is living in Kyoto now? No, I do not know him at all.

Note: Go-zonji desu is the honorific form for shitte iru, so it is used when referring to 2nd (you) or 3rd (he) person. For use by 1st person (I) zonjiru is used.

9. What time are you leaving tomorrow morning?

What time are you returning to the inn? And where are you going?

Note: "going," though in the progressive form, is used in the future tense, e.g., "I am going to Japan next month."

10. If you do not do exactly as your teacher says, you will be scolded.

Note: "If you do not do ..." is negative, conditional of nasaru, which is nasa + ra + nakereba.

Answer in Japanese, using both ordinary and superpolite (or humble) forms.

1. New York no natsu wa taihen o-atsuu gozaimasu ga Tookyoo wa ikaga de gozaimasu ka.

2. Sakuban (or yuube) benkyoo ga owatte kara terebi o goran ni narimashita ka.

Note: In answering this question do not use haiken suru, as explained above in I.C. & G.N.

3. Anata wa konogoro nan-ji ni o-yasumi ni narimasu ka. Hayaku o-yasumi ni naru no ga o-suki desu ka.

4. Anata no otoosan wa ima uchi ni irasshaimasu ka. Nan-ji ni o-shigoto e o-dekake ni narimasu ka.

5. Anata wa ikutsu kanji o go-zonji desu ka. Doko de Nihongo o benkyoo nasaimashita ka.

6. Anata wa rainen no natsu Nihon e irassharu tsumori desu ka. Hikooki de ikaremasu ka.

7. America ni yoi Nihongo gakkoo ga gozaimasu ka. Sore wa donna gakkoo de gozaimasu ka.

8. Anata no ryooshin no o-namae wa nan to osshaimasu ka. Go-ryooshin wa o-genki de irasshaimasu ka.

9. Anata wa ima Eigo o go-benkyoochuu desu ka.

Note: The usage of the suffix chuu here is "in the midst of.  
or "in the process of. ."

a. Ima shigoto-chuu desu (in the midst of work).

b. Denwa wa hanashi-chuu deshita (in the midst of conversation, or the line was busy).

10. Anata wa Tookyoo daigaku no kyooju ga kakareta rekishi no hon o o-yomi ni narimashita ka.

### Useful Expressions

#### At the Dinner Table (Shokutaku de)

1. HOST DOOZO TAKUSAN MESHIAGATTE  
would KUDASAI.—In persuading the guest to begin the  
say: meal, the host would say, "Please eat a lot."

2. GUEST ITADAKIMASU.—A term used when beginning  
would  
say: the meal. It has the meaning of "I am most  
grateful to receive this food."

3. HOST: O-KAWARIO (or MOO SUKOSHI) IKAGA  
DESU KA. The host, upon seeing that his guest is  
about ready for a refill on rice, sake, etc., would  
ask, "How about a refill (or a little more)?"

4. GUEST: MOO KEKKOO DESU. or MOO TAKUSAN  
DESU.—When the host offers another bowl of  
rice, sake, etc., and you wish to decline, it means,  
"I have had sufficient."

5. GUEST: GOCHISOO SAMA DESHITA.—"It was a  
delicious meal."

6. HOST: O-SOMATSU SAMA DESHITA. or  
O-SOMATSU DESHITA.—When the guest says,  
"Gochisoo sama deshita," the host replies, "It  
wasn't much."

SUPPLEMENT X

**INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN + KA**

Postpositions are normally omitted with the following expressions, except for doko-ka:

- itsu-ka —sometime (Watakushi wa itsu-ka Nihon e ikitai  
desu. I want to go to Japan sometime.)  
dare-ka —someone, (Dare-ka kono saifu o otoshimashita.  
somebody Someone dropped this wallet.)  
doko-ka —someplace, (Doko-ka e hirugohan o tabe ni  
somewhere ikimashoo. Let's go someplace to eat  
lunch.)  
nani-ka —something (Nani-ka tsumetai mono o kudasai.  
Please give me something cool.)  
ikura-ka —some (Ano kata wa ikura-ka Nihongo ga  
amount wakarimasu. He understands Japanese  
somewhat.)

**INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN + DEMO**

- itsu-demo —always, (Brown-san wa itsu-mo Nihongo o  
(itsu-mo) anytime hanashi-masu.—Mr. Brown always  
speaks Japanese.)  
dare-demo —anybody, (Amerika dewa dare-demo daigaku  
everybody e ikemasu. —In Amerika, anyone  
can go to college.)

doko-demo—anywhere, (Nihon niwa doko-demo honya ga  
(doko mo) everywhere arimasu. In Japan, there are  
bookstores everywhere.)

nan-demo —anything (Watakushi no inu wa nan-demo  
everything tabemasu. My dog eats anything.)

ikura-demo—any (Ikura-demo meshiagatte kudasai.  
amount Please eat any amount [as much as  
you want.])

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN + MO + NEGATIVE VERB
--

*Note: Postpositions are not necessary with the following expressions:*

itsu-mo\* —never (Sensei wa itsu-mo uchi ni imasen. The  
teacher isn't ever at home.)

dare-mo —nobody, (Atsumari ni dare-mo kimasen deshita.  
no one No one came to the meeting.)

doko-mo\*—nowhere (Nichiyooobi ni wa doko-mo mise ga  
aite imasen.

On Sunday, shops are not open  
anywhere.)

nani-mo —nothing (Tsukue no naka ni nani-mo arimasen.  
There is nothing in the desk.)

ikura-mo —no great (Okane wa ikura-mo kakarimasen. It  
amount doesn't cost much money.)

\* These words, when used with positive verb endings  
become:

itsu-mo + positive verb = always

doko-mo + positive verb = everywhere

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN + "TE" VERB + MO
--



itsu whenever, no (Fujisan wa itsu mite mo utsukushii  
te no matter when .desu. Mt. Fuji is beautiful no matter  
— when you see it.)

dare whoever, (Dare ga itte mo au koto ga  
te mo dekimasen. No matter who goes,  
— no matter who (you) will not be able to see (him).)

doko... wherever, (Doko de tabete mo ii desu.  
te mo no matter No matter where I eat, it's all right. It  
— where doesn't matter where I eat.)

nani... whatever, no (Nani o tabete mo oishii desu.  
te no matter what. No matter what I eat, it's delicious.)  
—

ikura .however much, (Ikura denwa o shite mo henji ga  
te no matter how arimasen.  
mo— much. No matter how much I telephone,  
there's no answer.)

USE OF KA AND DEMO WITH INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

Interrogative Pronouns	Int. Pro. + <i>ka</i>	Int. Pro. + <i>demo</i>	Int. Pro. + <i>mo</i> + positive verb	Int. Pro. + <i>mo</i> + neg. verb	Int. Pro. + "te" verb + <i>mo</i>
<i>itsu</i> (when)	sometime	always, anytime	always	never	whenever (no matter when)
<i>dare</i> (who)	someone, somebody	anybody, everybody	—	nobody, no one	whoever (no matter who)
<i>doko</i> (where)	someplace, somewhere	anywhere, everywhere	everywhere	nowhere	wherever (no matter where)
<i>nani, nan</i> (what)	something	anything, everything ( <i>nan</i> )	—	nothing ( <i>nani</i> )	whatever ( <i>nani</i> ) (no matter what)
<i>ikura</i> (how much)	some amount	any amount	any amount	no great amount	however much (no matter how much)

## Exercises

Translate into Japanese:

1. Nobody knows about Tanaka's return to Japan.

Note: about—no koto

2. Let us go somewhere to eat something warm.

3. a. This child takes everything home.

b. He knows everything about Japan, so ask him.

4. a. There are always many students at his house,

b. Please come anytime.

5. a. There are small shops everywhere in Japan,

b. I cannot go anywhere nowadays.

Note: nowadays—chikagoro, konogoro, imagoro

6. In America anybody can go to college if he studies hard.

Note: hard—yoku, or isshookenmei ni

7. I didn't do anything in class today.

8. I have a feeling that I met him somewhere, sometime.

Note: have a feeling—yoo na ki ga suru

9. Nobody said anything at the meeting (kai).

10. Nobody likes to work without resting.

Note: without resting, eating, buying, etc.—1st base of verb  
+ zu (ni)

Answer in Japanese:

1. Anata wa itsu-mo Nihongo o hanashimasu ka.
2. Anata wa itsu-ka Nihon e iku tsumori desu ka.
3. Kono gakkoo no chikaku ni doko-ka chuushoku o taberu tokoro ga arimasu ka.
4. America dewa dare-demo daigaku e iku koto ga dekimasu ka.
5. Anata wa washoku nara nan-demo tabemasu ka.
6. Kyoo anata no uchi e Nihon kara dare-ka kimasu ka.
7. Nihonjin wa dare-mo Eigo o hanashimasen ka.
8. Ichinichijuu nani-mo tabenakereba doo narimasu ka.

Note: doo narimasu ka—what will happen? (in the sense of "how will it turn out?")

doo narimashita ka—what happened?

doo shimasu ka—what will you do?

doo shimashita ka—what did you do?

9. Kono chihoo de wa doko-demo jidoosha o nagai aida tomeru koto ga dekimasu ka.
10. Anata wa Nichiyoo ni wa itsu-mo doko-ka e ikimasu ka.
12. Anata wa kyonen no natsuyasumi ni doko-ka e ikimashita ka. Doko-mo ikimasen deshita ka.
13. Anata wa maiasa nani-mo tabezu ni gakkoo e kimasu ka.

14. Ikura-demo gohan o taberu hito wa doo narimasu ka.

15. Anata wa Tanaka-san ni itsu-ka doko-ka de atta koto ga arimasu ka.

# CHAPTER 20

## DENWA NO KAIWA—TELEPHONE CONVERSATION FAMILIAR (ABRUPT) FORMS

<b>FIRST BASE</b> of <b>VERB</b>	+	<b>NAI DE</b> <b>ZU NI</b>	= WITHOUT.
--	---	-------------------------------	------------

<b>VERB</b> or <b>ADJ.</b>	+	<b>SHI</b>	= IN ADDITION TO . . .
----------------------------------	---	------------	------------------------

chuugaku jidai kara

from junior high  
school time

chuugaku jidai kara no yoi tomodachi

good friends from  
junior high school  
days

KIMURA-KUN TO YAMADA-

KIMURA AND  
YAMADA HAVE

KUN WA CHUUGAKU JIDAI

BEEN GOOD  
FRIENDS SINCE

KARA NO YOI TOMODACHI

JUNIOR HIGH  
SCHOOL DAYS.

DE ARU.

natsuyasumichuu

through the  
summer vacation

kuni e kaette

returned home and

\*Kimura-kun wa natsuyasumichuu kuni  
e kaette

\*Kimura was  
(returned) home  
through the  
summer vacation  
and.

chichi no shigoto o  
tetsudatte ita  
\*chichi no shigoto o tetsudatte ita ga.

father's work (obj.)  
was helping  
\*he was helping his  
father's work, but.

aki no gakki ga

fall semester  
(nom.)

hajimaru shi.

will begin,  
furthermore.

yooji ga dekita node

business came up,  
so.

\*aki no gakki ga hajimaru shi yooji  
ga dekita node .

""because the fall  
semester will  
begin, and  
furthermore,  
(some)  
business came up

itsu-mo yori hayaku

earlier than usual

KIMURA-KUN WA NATSU

KIMURA WAS  
HOME

YASUMICHUU KUNI E KAET

THROUGH THE  
SUMMER AND

TE CHICHI NO SHIGOTO O

WAS HELPING  
HIS FATHER

TETSUDATTE ITA GA AKI NO

(WITH HIS)  
WORK, BUT THE

GAKKI GA HAJIMARU SHI

FALL SEMESTER  
WILL BEGIN

YOOJI GA DEKITA NODE

(SOON) AND,  
FURTHERMORE,

ITSU-MO YORI HAYAKU TOO-

KYOO E DETE KITA.

YAMADA-KUN NO OTOOSAN

WA GINKOOIN DE UCHI WA

TOOKYOO NO KOOGAI NI ARU.

Tookyoo no aru daigaku ni

nyuugaku o kiboo shite

\*Tookyoo no aru daigaku ni

nyuugaku o kiboo shite.

rainen no sangatsu no

nyuugaku shiken

juken jumbichuu

KARE WA TOOKYOO NO ARU

DAIGAKU NI NYUUGAKU O

(SOME)

BUSINESS CAME  
UP

SO HE CAME  
OUT TO TOKYO  
EARLIER THAN  
USUAL.

YAMADA'S  
FATHER IS A  
BANKER AND  
(HIS) HOME IS  
IN A SUBURB OF  
TOKYO.

to a certain  
university in Tokyo  
desire entrance and  
\*(He) wished to  
enter a certain  
university in Tokyo  
and .

next year's March  
entrance  
examination  
in the midst of  
preparation for the  
examination

HE IS HOPING  
TO ENTER A  
CERTAIN  
UNIVERSITY IN

KIBOO SHITE IMA WA RAINEN

NO SANGATSU NO NYUU

GAKU SHIKEN NO JUKEN

JUMBICHUU DE ARU.

benkyoo bakari  
benkyoo bakari shite ita node .

shoo-shoo taikutsu shi

kaette kureba ii naa

NAGAI AIDA BENKYOO BAKA

RI SHITE ITA NODE SHOO-

SHOO TAIKUTSU SHI, HAYAKU

TOMODACHI NO KIMURA-

KUN GA KAETTE KUREBA II

NAA TO OMOTTE ITA.

TOKYO AND IS  
IN THE MIDST  
OF  
PREPARATION  
FOR NEXT  
MARCH'S  
ENTRANCE EX  
AMINATION  
NOW.

only study  
because (he) has  
been only studying

somewhat bored  
and

it would be good if  
(he) returns

BECAUSE HE  
HAD BEEN JUST  
STUDYING FOR  
A LONG

TIME, HE WAS  
SOMEWHAT  
BORED AND HE  
WAS THINK

ING IT WOULD  
BE NICE IF

HIS FRIEND  
KIMURA  
WOULD



denwa o kakeru  
denwa o kakeru tokoro

KIMURA-KUN WA YAMADA-

KUN NI DENWA O KAKERU  
TOKORO DE ARU.

K: MOSHI MOSHI, MITAKA NO

YAMADA-SAN NO DENWA  
BANGOO O SHIRITAI NO DESU GA.

KOOKANSHU:

O-MACHI KUDASAI.

MOSHI, YAMADA-SAN NO DENWA  
BANGOO WA MITAKA NO  
ICHI-ICHI-NI-NANA-BAN DESU.

K: ARIGATOO.

MOSHI, MOSHI, YAMADA-SAN NO  
OTAKU DESU KA.

COME HOME  
SOON.

to telephone  
on the point of  
telephoning

KIMURA IS  
ABOUT TO  
PHONE  
YAMADA.

HELLO, I  
WOULD LIKE TO  
KNOW THE  
TELEPHONE  
NUMBER OF MR.  
YAMADA IN  
MITAKA, BUT.

SHOO-SHOO PLEASE WAIT A  
LITTLE.

HELLO,  
YAMADA'S  
TELEPHONE  
NUMBER IS  
MITAKA 1127.

THANK YOU.

HELLO, IS (THIS)  
MR. YAMADA'S  
RESIDENCE?

JOCHUU: HAI, SAYOO DE YES, IT IS. WHO  
GO-ZAIMASU. IS THIS?

DONATA-SAMA DE  
IRAS-SHAIMASU KA.

K: KIMURA KENJI DESU. THIS IS KENJI  
YO-SHIO-SAN WA IRASSHAI-MASU KIMURA. IS  
KA. YOSHIO-SAN IN?

JOCHUU: HAI, IRASSHAIMASU. YES, HE IS.  
CHOTTO O-MACHI PLEASE WAIT  
KUDA-SAIMASE. A-WHILE. I WILL  
O-YOBIITASHI-MASU KARA. CALL HIM.

K: O-NEGAIITASHIMASU. PLEASE DO.

(The English translation of the following portion will be  
given at the end of this section.)

FAMILIAR FORM

ORDINARY POLITE FORM

1. Y: MOSHI, MOSHI, Moshi, moshi,  
KI-MURA-KUN KA. Kimura-kun desu ka.

HISASHIBURI DA NE. Hisashiburi desu ne.

KIMI, MADA TOOBUN Anata wa mada toobun  
kaette kora-

KAETTE KONAI TO OMOTTE renai to omotte imashita.  
ITA.

2. DOOSHITE SONNA NIDooshite sonna ni hayaku  
HAYAKU KAETTE KITA N'kaette ki-mashita ka.  
DA.

3. K: TOOKYOO GA Tookyoo ga koishiku natte  
KOISHI-KU NATTE KAETTE kaette ki-mashita.  
KITA.

KIMI WA ZUTTO BENKYOO Anata wa zutto benkyoo  
KAI. desu ka.

4. Y: UN, SOO DA YO. KIMI Hai, soo desu. Anata ga  
GA KUNI E KAETTE KARAKuni e kae-rarete kara  
DOKO E MO IKA-ZU NIdoko e mo ikazu ni  
BENKYOO SA. benkyoo desu.

SORE NI KONO ATSUSASore ni kono atsusa  
DAROO. deshoo.

SUKKARI KUSATCHAT-TA. Sukkari kusatte  
shimaimashita.

INAKA WA DOO DATTA. Inaka wa doo deshita ka.  
ATSUKATTA KA. Atsukatta desuka.

5. K: AIKAWARAZU DA. ASA Aikawarazu desu ka. Asa  
KARA BAN MADE OYAJI NOkara ban made chichi no  
TETSUDAI SASERARETE SA,tetsudai o saserarete  
BENKYOO NAN-KA SURUbenkyoo nado suru hima  
HIMA ZENZEN NAKATTA. ga zenzen arimasen  
deshita.

6. SUGOKU ISOGASHII N' DA. Taihen isogashii no desu.  
TEGAMI O KAKU HIMA GATegami o kaku hima ga  
NAKATTA GURAI DA. nai gurai deshita.

DA KARA ZUTTODesu kara zutto go-busata  
GO-BUSATA SHICHATTA. shite shimaimashita.

7. TOOKYOO WATookyoo wa gota-gota  
GOTA-GOTA SHITE IRU GAshite imasu ga yahari  
YAHARI TOOKYOO NO HOOTookyoo no hoo ga ii desu  
GA II NE. ne.

8. Y: SOO KA NE. KIMI OSoo desu ka ne. Anata o  
URAYAMASHIKU OMOTTE urayamashiku omotte  
imashita. Inaka no

ITA N' DA. INAKA NO nombiri shita seikatsu ga  
NOMBIRI SHITA SEIKATSU dekimasu no de.  
GA DEKITE SA..

9. SORE WA SOO TO, KIMI Anata wa choodo ii toki ni  
CHOO DO II TOKI NI DETE dete kite kuremashita.  
KITE KURETA YO.

10. SUUGAKU NO SHUKU-DAI Suugaku no shukudai desu  
NAN DA GA WAKA-RANA I ga waka-ranai tokoro ga  
TOKORO GA TAKUSAN ATTE takusan atte maitte  
MAI-TCHATTA. shimaimashita.

11. TESUDATTE KURENAI Tetsudatte kuremasen ka.  
KAI.

K: UN, II YO. Hai, ii desu.

12. Y: SOSHITE, TENKI MO II Soshite, tenki mo yoi shi  
SHI DOKO-KA E IKOO JA NAI doko-ka e ikoo dewa  
KA. ASU NO ASA WA arimasen ka. Asu no asa  
ISOGASHII KAI. wa o-isogashii desu ka.

13. K: IYA, BETSU NI. ORE MO Ie, betsu ni. Watakushi  
KIMI O SASOI-DASOO mo anata o o-sasoi shiyoo  
to omotte (o)denwa o

TO OMOTTE DENWA SHITA shimashita. Doko e  
N' DA YO. DOKO E IKOO KA. ikimashoo ka.

14. Y: ANO NE, HITOMAZU Ano, hitomazu watakushi  
BOKU NO UCHI E KITE no uchi e kite kuremasen  
KURENAI KAI. CHUU-SHOKU ka. Chuushoku demo  
DEMO ISSHO NI TABETE issho ni tabete kara  
KARA DOKO-KA E doko-ka e  
DEKAKEYOO. deka-kemashoo.

15. K: JAMA JA NAI KA. ASU Jama dewa arimasen ka.  
WA DOYOوبي DE MINNA IE Asu wa do-yoobi de  
NI IRU N' DAROO.

minasan ie ni orareru no  
deshoo.

16. Y: SONNA SHIMPAI IRAN Sonna shimpai wa  
SA. irimasen.

ENRYO SEZU NI KOI YO. Enryo sezu ni kinasai.  
OFUKURO NI NANI-KA Haha ni nani-ka gochisoo  
GOCHISOO TSUKUTTE o tsukutte moraimasu kara  
MORAU KARA.

17. K: NAN-JI GORO GA II Nan-ji goro ga ii desu ka.  
KAI.

18. Y: SOO DA NE. JUU-JI Soo desu ne. Juu-ji goro  
GORO, DOO DA. wa ikaga desu ka.

19. K: ASA NO UCHI CHOTTO Asa no uchi chotto  
GAKKOO NI YORU KARA gakkoo ni yorimasu kara  
SUKOSHI OSOKU NARU sukoshi osoku naru kamo  
KAMO SHIRENAI GA.. shiremasen ga....

20. Y: JA, MATTE IRU YO. Dewa, matte imasu. Koko  
KOKO E KURU MICH SHITTE e kuru michi wa shitte  
IRU DAROO. imasu deshoo.

21. K: UN, SHITTE IRU YO. .Hai, shitte imasu.  
NI-SAN-KAI ITTA KOTO GA Ni-san-kai itta koto ga  
ARU KARA. MITAKA NO arimasu kara.. Mitaka  
EKI KARA CHIKAKATTA NE. no eki kara chikakatta  
desu ne.

22. Y: SOO DA YO. Soo desu.  
WAKARA-NAKATTARA Wakaranakattara denwa  
DENWA KURE YO. .kudasai. Mukae ni  
MUKAE NI IKU KARA. ikimasu kara.  
K: JA, MATA. Dewa, mata.

TRANSLATION

1. Y: Hello, is this Kimura? It's been a long time, hasn't it? I thought you weren't coming home for some time yet.

2. Why did you return so soon?

3. K: I became homesick for Tokyo and came back. Have you been studying all along?

4. Y: Since you went home I've been studying without going anywhere.

And this heat!

I'm completely disgusted.

How was the country?

Was it hot?

5. K: Same as usual. I was made to help my father from morning till night and I did not have any time to study.

6. It was terribly busy      didn't have time to write any letters.  
Therefore, I have completely neglected to write.

7. Tokyo is confusing, but Tokyo is better after all.

8. Y: Is that right? I was feeling envious of you, being able to live a carefree country life.

9. Incidentally, you returned just in time.

10. About the math homework, there are many points that I do not understand. I'm completely stupefied.

11. Won't you help me? K: O.K.

12. Y: And since the weather is good, shouldn't we go somewhere?

Are you busy tomorrow morning?

13. K: No, not especially. I, too, telephoned with the intention of asking you out.

Where shall we go?

14. Y: Say, won't you come to my house first? Let's eat lunch together and go someplace.

15. K: Won't I be in the way? Tomorrow is Saturday and probably everybody will be home.

16. Y: There is no need for such concern. Don't hesitate, and come on. I'll have my mother prepare something good.

17. K: What time shall we make it?

18. Y: Let me see. About 10 o'clock, how about it?

19. K: In the morning I'll drop by at school for awhile, so I may be a little late.

20. Y: Then, I'll be waiting. You know the way to get here, don't you?

21. K: Yes, I do, since I've been there two or three times. It was near Mitaka station, wasn't it?

22. Y: That's right. If you can't figure it out, give me a call. I'll come after you.

K: Then, I'll see you later.

The above conversation, when carried on between two girl friends, will be as follows. Notice the endings and the use of "emphasizing particles." The tendency is toward the use of milder sounding endings. Also note the intonation mark (—) placed at the end of the sentence to indicate the pitch.

1. Y: MOSHI MOSHI, KIMURA-SAN. HISASHIBURI NE. ANATA,  
MADA TOOBUN KAETTE KONAI TO OMOTTE ITA WA YO.  
DOOSHITE SONNA NI HAYAKU KAETTE KITA NO.
3. K: TOOKYOO GA KOISHIKU NATTE KAETTE KITA WA. ANA-  
TA WA ZUTTO BENKYOO.
4. Y: EE, SOO YO. ANATA GA KUNI E KAETTE KARA DOKO E  
MO IKANAI DE BENKYOO YO.  
SORE NI KONO ATSUSA DESHOO.  
SUKKARI IYA NI NATCHATTA WA.  
INAKA WA DOO.  
ATSUKATTA.
5. K: AIKAWARAZU YO. ASA KARA BAN MADE CHICHI NO TE-  
TSUDAI O SASERARETE NE—BENKYOO NANKA SURU  
HIMA ZENZEN NAKATTA WA. SUGOKU ISOGASHII NO  
YO. TEGAMI O KAKU HIMA GA NAKATTA GURAI YO.  
DAKARA ZUTTO GO-BUSATA SHICHATTA WA.
7. 'TOOKYOO WA GOTA-GOTA SHITE'RU KEDO YAHARI TOO-  
KYOO NO HOO GA II WA.
8. Y: SOO. ANATA O URAYAMASHIKU OMOTTE ITA NO YO....  
INAKA NO NOMBIRI SHITA SEIKATSU GA DEKITE.



9. SORE WA SOO TO, ANATA CHOODO II TOKI NI DETE  
KITE KURETA WA.
10. SUUGAKU NO SHUKUDAI DA KEDO, WAKARANAI TO-  
KORO GA TAKUSAN ATTE NE—KOMATCHATTA NO YO.
11. TETSUDATTE KURENAI.  
K: EE, II WA YO.
12. Y: SOSHITE, TENKI MO II SHI DOKO-KA E IKANAI.  
ASU NO ASA ISOGASHII.
13. K: IIE, BETSU NI. WATASHI MO ANATA O SASOI DASOO TO  
OMOTTE DENWA SHITA NO YO. DOKO E IKU NO.
14. Y: ANO NE, HITO MAZU WATASHI NO UCHI E KITE KURE-  
NAI.  
CHUUSHOKU DEMO ISSHO NI TABETE KARA DOKO-KA  
E IKANAI.
15. K: JAMA JA NAI. ASU DOYOO DE MINNA UCHI NI IRASSHA-  
RU N' DESHOO.
16. Y: SONNA SHIMPAI IRANAI WA YO. ENRYO SHINAI DE KITE  
YO.  
HAHA NI NANI-KA GO-CHISOO TSUKUTTE MORAU  
KARA...
17. K: NAN-JI GORO GA II.
18. Y: SOO NE. JUU-JI GORO DOO.
19. K: ASA NO UCHI CHOTTO GAKKOO NI YORU KARA SUKO-  
SHI OSOKU NARU KAMO SHIRENAI KEDO.
20. Y: JA, MATTE'RU WA YO. KOKO E KURU MICHU SHITTE IRU  
WA NE.
21. K: EE, SHITTE IRU WA YO. NI-SAN-KAI ITTA KOTO GA ARU  
KARA. MITAKA NO EKI KARA CHIKAKATTA WA NE.
22. Y: SOO YO. WAKARANAKATTARA DENWA CHOODAI MUKAE  
NI IKU KARA.  
K: JA, MATA.

## Vocabulary List from the Lesson

jidai (n.) period, era, days. Meiji Jidai— Meiji Period

kuni	(n.) country, place of birth, rural area
tetsudau	(v.t.) help, assist
gakki	(n.) semester, school term (kongakki —this semester; sengakki—last semester; raigakki—next semester)
shi	(conj.) furthermore, in addition to (See I.C. & G.N.)
yooji	(n.) business, errand
yooji ga	business came up
dekiru	
itsu-mo	than always, than usual
yor.	
koogai	(n.) suburb
nyuugaku	(n.) school entrance
nyuugaku	(n.) entrance examination
shiken	
nyuugaku	(Chi. v.) enter school
suru	
kiboo	(n.) hope, desire
kiboo suru	(Chi. v.) hope (for), look forward to
juken suru	(Chi. v.) to take a test
jumbi	(n.) preparation
jumbi suru	(Chi. v.) prepare; no jumbi suru —prepare for.
juken jumbi	(n.) preparation for an examination
juken	in the midst of preparation for an exam
jumbichuu	
bakari	(suf.) only, just
taikutsu	(Chi. v.) be bored, weary
suru	

shoo-shoo (same as sukoshi) little, few  
 ba ii naa if . it would be nice (See I.C. & G.N.)  
 denwa o (same as denwa o to telephone suru)  
 kakeru  
 tokoro at the time . ., just when . ., (See I.C. & G.N.)  
 hisashiburi (idio.) after a long time (interval, silence)  
 toobun for some time, for a while  
 koishii (adj.) long for, love for  
 koishiku to get a feeling for  
 naru  
 un informal of hat (yes)  
 kusatchatta (v.) same as kusatte shimaimashita; (See I.C. & G.N.)  
 completely disgusted, gloomy, depressed.  
 inaka rural area, country  
 oyaji (n.) familiar form of father, used by men only.  
 tetsudai (causative, passive form of suru) was made  
 saserarete to help  
 nan-ka such things as, among other things  
 (nado)  
 sugoi (adj.) horrible, terrible, tremendous  
 sugoku (adv.) terribly, tremendously  
 gurai to the extent, to the same degree as .  
 go-busata (Ch. v.) neglect to write, neglect to call  
 suru  
 shichatta (same as shite shimaimashita) did it completely  
 gota-gota confusion, trouble  
 gota-gota (Chi. v.) confusing, be upset  
 suru  
 urayamashii (adj.) envious

nombiri	(Chi. v.) relax, feel at leisure
suru	
seikatsu	(n.) life, existence; seikatsu suru—to live
suugaku	(n.) mathematics
mairu	(v. i.) tired, upset
ore	(pro.) I, familiar for watakushi, used by men only.
sasou	(v. t.) invite, ask
sasoi-dasu	(compound verb) invite out, ask out
ano ne	(expression used to call attention of the listener) Say!
jama	(n.) hindrance, obstacle, nuisance
jama suru	(Chi. v.) stand in the way, obstruct
enryo	(n.) hesitation, modest
enryo suru	(Chi. v.) refrain from, be modest
yoru	(v. i.) drop by, call at; place + ni yoru—call at.
mukaeru	(v. t.) meet, call
mukae	ni go to meet, go to pick up
iku	
ofukuro	(n.) familiar form of "mother," used by men only.

### Important Construction and Grammar Notes

**FAMILIAR (ABRUPT) FORM:** Throughout this book the polite form of speech (masu and desu endings) has been emphasized because this form is polite enough to express respect and courtesy, but not so polite that it is awkwardly out of place. Since Japanese society is a polite one, the language reflecting this is very refined. In the previous chapter the honorific (or superpolite form) was introduced. Formality

signifies certain social distance, or lack of intimacy between the speakers. However, there is an area where such formality may be dispensed with and the exchange is conducted on a "familiar," intimate basis, such as between members of the same family, although a mother will often continue to use the polite form, between social superiors talking to inferiors, or among close friends. The same form of familiar speech patterns are not used in all the relations mentioned here. A father, talking to other members of the family, may use the familiar form, but this would not be the same as the form used among male friends. Again, this would differ when female friends are involved. Therefore, great caution must be exercised when using this pattern because it can easily create embarrassing moments for those who are on the receiving side, while the speaker may be innocently unaware of his mistakes. In this chapter, the familiar form used among male friends is introduced first, followed by conversation between female friends.

This lesson is introduced here mainly to familiarize the reader with this form of expression when he hears it, rather than to teach it for general conversational use. The understanding of the underlying "feeling" of familiarity is too difficult to explain and adequately illustrate. Improper usage at an inopportune moment may sound too familiar and abrupt, and often impolite.

**CONCLUDING PARTICLES (shuujoshi):** The difference between male and female familiar forms is mainly in the usage of "concluding particles," viz., *ne*, *no*, *yo*, *wa*, etc., as explained below.

- I. a. *YO* is used to emphasize, to point out.
  1. *Mada hachi-ji yo.*
  2. *Ii yo.*
  3. *Ano hito da yo.*

... *NO YO* ending used by women only

  1. *Wakaranai no yo.*
  2. *Asu korarenai no yo.*

... *WA YO* (women only)

  1. *Moo kaetta wa yo.*
  2. *O-kane nai wa yo.*
- b. *YO* used with a verb to command or encourage
  1. *Ike yo.*
  2. *Yamenasai yo.*
- c. *YO* used with the 5th base to invite, to coax
  1. *Hayaku ikoo yo.*
  2. *Tabeyoo yo.*
- II. a. *WA* is used to emphasize lightly, used more often by women to moderate what has been said so that it will not sound too harsh.
  1. *Soo omou wa.*
  2. *Ikutaku nai wa.*
- b. ... *WA NE* (women only) for mild exclamatory remark
  1. *Suteki da wa ne.* (Isn't it wonderful?)
  2. *Yoku irasebaimashita wa ne.*
- III. a. *SA* is used to lightly dismiss a statement or something that is so obvious to the speaker that there is no need to talk further about it.
  1. *Kare wa dame sa.*
  2. *Yasashii mono sa.*
- b. *SA*, when used with an interrogative word, restates a question.
  1. *Doko e iku no sa.* (Where are you going, huh?)
  2. *Nani sa kore.* (What is this, anyway?)
- c. *SA* is used to emphasize a point in order to call attention.
  1. *Da kara sa...* (for this reason...)
  2. *Kimi sa moo sukoshi ki o tsukero.* (YOU should be more careful.)
- IV. a. *NE* is used at the end of a statement to demonstrate light exclamation.
  1. *Kono heya, ii heya ne.*
  2. *Komatta hito ne.* (He certainly is a troublesome person.)
- b. *NE* is used for light insistence, for light emphasis.
  1. *Watakushi wa soo omoimasu ne.*
  2. *Nihonjin o mita toki ureshikatta ne.*
- c. *NE* is used to ask for agreement with you, or when asking for response.
  1. *Hachi-ji no kiaba desu ne.*
  2. *Hontoo ni irasehai ne.*
- d. *NE* is also used to emphasize, or merely as a pausing word.
  1. *Kimi ne dekiru kai.*
  2. *Sore wa ne chigau yo.*
  3. *Kema ne watakushi wa ne...*

- v. a. *NO* is used by women to lightly conclude.
  1. Tabetaku nai *no*.
  2. Ashita yasumi *desu no*.
  3. Anata ga warui *no*.
  4. Wakaranai *no yo*.
  5. Kinoo dashita *no yo*.
- b. *NO* is used to ask a question.
  1. Kore kimi *no* (?)
  2. Kore kureru *no* (?)
  3. Mada bangohan taberarenai *no* (?)
- vi. a. *ZE* is used by men to call attention in a friendly manner.
  1. Kore oishii *ze*.
  2. Hayaku kaeroo *ze*.
- b. *ZE* is also used to show confidence of the speaker.
  1. Ammari ate ni naranai *ze*. (He isn't too reliable.)
  2. Kimi ga warui *n' da ze*.
- vii. a. *ZO* is used by men to convince someone of something.
  1. Omoishiroi *zo*.
  2. Nani ka aru *zo*.
- b. *ZO* is used to emphasize, to warn, to call attention to something.
  1. Kare keikan (police) *da zo*.
  2. Koko wa abunai *zo*.

WOMEN'S SPEECH PATTERNS: Some of the characteristic features of the informal and formal speech patterns used by women may be listed as follows:

### I. Frequent use of "te" form of ending

- a. Ano mise wa takakutte *yo*. (emphatic ending)
- b. Okusan wa nan to itte? (interrogative)
- c. Hayaku irashite. (request)

### II. Use of "concluding particles" *wa*, *yo*, *no*, *na*, *ne* (explained above)

- a. Ikimasu *wa*.
- b. Komaban ikenai *no*. Naze *desu no*?
- c. Kore wa watakushi *no yo*.
- d. Shizuka *ne*.

### III. Questions ending with a noun

- a. Dare?

b. Sore nani?

c. Hontoo? (Is it true?)

IV. Common use of intonation in expressing one's feeling (examples given on pages 380-382)

ABRUPT ENDINGS: Another feature of the familiar form is the abrupt endings of sentences. The following chart shows these endings.

ABRUPT ENDINGS

	PRESENT	(neg.)	PAST	(neg.)
<b>VERBS</b>				
read	yomu	yomanai	yonda	yomanakatta
write	kaku	kakanai	kaite	kakanakatta
eat	taberu	tabenai	tabeta	tabenakatta
do	suru	shinai	shita	shinakatta
come	kuru	konai	kita	konakatta
there is	aru	nai	atta	nakatta
standing	tatte iru	tatte inai	tatte ita	tatte inakatta
walking	aruite iru	aruite inai	aruite ita	aruite inakatta
<b>ADJECTIVES</b>				
hot	atsui	atsukunai	atsukatta	atsukunakatta
far	tooi	tookunai	tookatta	tookunakatta
big	ookii	ookikunai	ookikatta	ookikunakatta
<b>NOUNS</b>				
(It is) a book	hon da	hon ja nai	hon datta	hon ja nakatta
(He is) a Japanese	Nihonjin da	Nihonjin ja nai	Nihonjin datta	Nihonjin ja nakatta

OMISSION OF POSTPOSITIONS AND USE OF CONTRACTIONS: In the examples given in the text of this chapter, the reader may have noticed the omission of postpositions. The speech tends to become slovenly and imprecise and the postpositions (usually wa and o) are often ignored.

a. Kimi mita ka.

b. Kimi bangohan tabeta ka.



For the same reason, the contractions of words occur more frequently.

. ja is the contraction of . de wa.

. janai is the contraction of . . detca arimasen.

. chatta is the contraction of . te shimatta.

. n' da is the contraction of . no desu.

**WORD ORDER:** Often the word order, viz., the subordinate clause + principal clause, is reversed (see sentences 8, 16, 21, and 22). However, this is a feature common not only in familiar forms but in all colloquial expressions. The subordinate clause is often attached as if an afterthought. Instead of saying:

a. Ame ga futte iru kara ikimasen.

b. Anata ga iku nara watakushi mo ikimasu.

In colloquial form one may say:

a. Ikimasen—ame ga futte iru kara.

b. Watakushi mo ikimasu—anata ga iku nara.

**OMISSION OF "DESU KA":** In sentences 1 and 12, the questions are asked without desu ka. Compare the 3 levels of politeness given in the following examples:

	FAMILIAR		POLITE	SUPERPOLITE
	<i>Men</i>	<i>Women</i>		
"Is this Kimura?"	Kimura-ioun ka. Kimura-ioun kai.	Kimura-san?	Kimura-san desu ka.	Kimura-san de gozaimasu ka.
"What is it?"	Nani ka.	Nani?	Nan desu ka.	Nan de gozaimasu ka.
"Is it expensive?"	Takai ka. Takai kai.	Takai?	Takai desu ka.	Takoo gozaimasu ka.
"Do you want to go?"	Ikita ka. Ikita kai	Ikita?	Ikita desu ka.	Ikitoo gozaimasu ka.

The question form used by women is given by the rise in intonation at the end of the word.

USAGE OF "DA": da is the familiar form of desu used more often by men. In sentences 1, 5, 6, and 8, examples of this usage are given.

	FAMILIAR		POLITE	SUPERPOLITE
	<i>Men</i>	<i>Women</i>		
"It's been a long time, hasn't it!"	Hissahiburi da ne.	Hissahiburi ne.	Hissahiburi desu ne.	Hissahiburi de gozaimasu ne.
"Telephone!"	Denwa da yo.	O-denwa yo.	O-denwa desu.	O-denwa de gozaimasu.
"This is (the) teacher's"	Sensei no da.	Sensei no yo.	Sensei no desu.	Sensei no de gozaimasu.

Datta is the past form of da; its formal equivalent is deshita.

	FAMILIAR		POLITE	SUPERPOLITE
	<i>Men</i>	<i>Women</i>		
"It was a boy."	Otoko no ko datta (yo).	Otoko no ko datta wa.	Otoko no ko deshita.	Otoko no ko de gozaimashita.
"It was Sunday."	Nichiyoubi datta (yo).	Nichiyoubi datta wa.	Nichiyoubi deshita.	Nichiyoubi de gozaimashita.

SHI: Used with the root form of verbs as well as adjectives, this form is used to bind two clauses together and mean "in addition to" or "moreover." It is used to describe a situation more fully by saying "not only. but also ..."

VERB:

Kyoo wa ame ga futte iru shi It's raining today; moreover, I  
shigoto ga takusan aru shi have lots of work, so I will not  
doko e mo ikimasen. go anywhere.

Brown san wa Nihongo ga Brown can not only speak  
hanaseru shi kanji mo yoku Japanese, he can write kanji  
kakeru. well.

ADJECTIVE:

Kono jidoosha wa chiisai shi This car is small; furthermore,  
yasui kara kaimasu. it is cheap, so I'll buy it.

NOUN:

Kyoo wa Nichiyoo hi da shi Today is Sunday; moreover,  
ashita wa yasumi da ka tomorrow is a holiday, so I'll  
yama e ikimasu. go to the mountains.

CHATTA (.. TE SHIMATTA): Shimatta is the past form  
of shimau, which indicates completion or finality of an action.

tabete shimau	eat it up
yonde shimatta	read it through
tsukatte shimatta	used it all up
utte shimaimashita	sold it (and) now gone
POLITE	FAMILIAR
yonde shimatta	yonjatta
tsukatte shimatta	tsukatchatta
utte shimatta	utchatta

ZU NI (or NAI DE): These negative suffixes are  
added to the negative stem of the verb—the first base—and  
gives the meaning of "... without..."

1. Nani-mo kawazu ni kaetta. I returned without buying  
Nani-mo kawanai de kaetta. anything.
2. Chooshoku o taheza ni itta. I went without eating  
Chooshoku o tabenai de breakfast.  
itta.
3. Benkyoo sezu ni gakkoo e I went to school without  
itta. studying.  
Benkyoo shinai de gakkoo e  
itta.

Note that in this usage "without. ." is the subordinate clause which must come first, followed by the principal clause.

BA II NAA: This familiar form is used by men only. Literal translation of this construction is "if. it would be nice," expressing a desire, or an aspiration.

Hayaku If it becomes vacation soon, it would be nice.  
yasumi ni (Won't it be wonderful if it becomes vacation  
nareba ii naa. soon!)

Jidoosha ga It would be nice to have a car.  
areba ii naa.

Sensei ga I wish the teacher would come.  
kureba ii naa.

Shiken ga I hope the exam will be easy.  
yasashikereba  
ii naa.

CAUSATIVE FORM: This form of expression is used to show the subject making, or causing, someone to do something. Study the following sentences to understand how and when this expression is used.

1. I made the taxi wait.

2. The mother made the boy eat the fruit.

In the first sentence "I" caused the "taxi" to "wait" and in the second "the mother" caused the "boy" to "eat."

Hence, the causative form of the verb is used.

1st BASE OF YODAN VERB + SERU
----------------------------------

Causative forms for matsu, kaku, yomu are:

ta + SERU—make (someone) wait  
chi  
ma + tsu  
te  
to  
ka + ka + SERU—make (someone) write  
yo + ma + SERU—make (someone) read

For ichidan, or non-conjugating verb, the causative is:

STEM OF ICHIDAN VERB + SASERU
----------------------------------

tabe + SASERU—make (someone) eat  
mi + SASERU—make (someone) see

Let us now consider a situation where passive is combined with the causative—a situation where the subject is made to do something.

1. I am made to wait.

2. The students are made to see

First, form the causative according to the rule given above:

1. mataseru

2. misaseru

Now, make the passive of these non-conjugating verbs, the rule being stem of non-conjugating verb + rareru.

1. matase + rareru—I am made to wait.

2. misase + rareru—I am made to see.

Study the causative + passive form of the following:

1. sase + rareru—I am made to do. (The first base of suru is sa. The causative is sa + seru. When the passive is added to this it becomes sase + rareru.)

2. tatase + rareru—I am made to stand.

3. arukase + rareru—I am made to walk.

4. kisase + rareru—I am made to wear.

Consider the following:

<u>If</u>	<u>you</u>	<u>do not</u>	<u>want</u>	<u>to be made</u>	<u>to wait...</u>
<u>cond.</u>	<u>pass.</u>	<u>negative</u>	<u>desid.</u>	<u>causative</u>	

This is translated as follows:

matsu

matase (causative)

mataserare (caus. + passive)

mataseraretai (caus. + pass. + desiderative)

mataseraretakunai (caus. + pass. + desid. + negative)

mataseraretakunakereba (caus. + pass. + desid. +  
neg. + conditional)

This example amply illustrates the agglutinative nature of Japanese verbs.

### Fluency Drill

Tabezu ni itta.

Tabezu ni gakkoo e itta.

Chooshoku o tabezu ni gakkoo e itta.

Chooshoku o tabezu ni gakkoo e aruite itta.

Mainichi chooshoku o tabezu ni gakkoo e aruite iku.

Osoi kara chooshoku o tabezu ni gakkoo e isoide ikinasai.

Osoi nara nani mo tabezu ni gakkoo e basu de isoide ikinasai.

(I) went without eating.

(I) went to school without eating.

(I) went to school without eating breakfast.

(I) walked to school without eating breakfast.

Everyday (I) walk to school without eating breakfast.

Because it's late, hurry to school without eating breakfast.

If it's late, hurry to school by bus without eating anything.

### Substitution Drill

*(First Base Verb + ZU NI)*

KAWAZU NI	} + GAKKOO E IKU
(kawanai de)	
MOTAZU NI	
(motanai de)	
MIZU NI	
(minai de)	
SEZU NI	
(abinai de)	

### Exercises

Translate the following, using polite and informal endings:

1. I went to school Kao o arawazu ni  
without washing gakkoo e itta.  
my face. (arawanai de)
2. I went to school Chooshoku o  
without eating tabezu ni gakkoo  
breakfast. e itta. (tabenai de)
3. I went to school Bentoo o motazu  
without taking my ni gakkoo e itta.  
lunch. (motanai de)
4. I went in without O-kane o  
paying any money. harawazu ni  
hairimashita.  
(harawanai de)
5. I went in without Kippu o kawazu  
buying a ticket. ni hairimashita.
6. I went in without Namae o kakazu  
writing my name. ni hairimashita.
7. I worked without Yasumazu ni  
resting (yasumu). hatarakimashita.
8. I worked without Nani-mo iwazu ni  
saying anything. hatarakimashita.
9. I worked without Nezu ni  
sleeping. hatarakimashita.
10. I worked without Tatazu ni  
standing. hatarakimashita.
11. Mr. Tanaka speaks Tanaka-san wa  
English and Eigo o hanasu shi  
furthermore he can taipu mo uteru.  
type.



12. Mr. Tanaka does Tanaka-san wa  
not speak English, Eigo o hanasanai  
and furthermore, he shi taipu mo  
cannot type. utenai.
13. Today the wind is Kyoo wa kaze ga  
blowing (fuku), fuite iru shi samui  
and furthermore, it desu.  
is cold.
14. Today the weather Kyoo wa tenki ga  
is good, and ii shi atataakai  
furthermore, it is desu.  
warm.
15. This room is Kono heya wa  
inexpensive, and yasui shi shizuka  
furthermore, it is desu.  
quiet (shizuka).
16. This room is Kono heya wa  
expensive, and takai shi  
furthermore, it is yakamashii desu.  
noisy (yakamashii).
17. He is the eldest Ano kata wa  
son, and choonan da shi  
furthermore, his ototoo wa kyonen  
brother died last nakunarimashita.  
year.
18. I am alone, and Watakushi wa  
furthermore, I don't hitori da shi  
have a car. jidoosha mo  
arimasen.
19. He has a big house, Ano kata ni wa  
and furthermore, he ookii ie ga aru shi

- has a house in Nihon ni mo ie ga  
Japan too. arimasu.
20. The dog ate the Inu wa niku o  
meat (up). tabete  
shimaimashita.
21. I drank the Kusuri o nonde  
medicine (all up). shimaimashita.
22. The magazines are Zasshi wa  
completely sold urikirete  
out. shimaimashita.
23. I have completely Sorera no hon o  
read all those yonde  
books. shimaimashita.
24. I loaded all the Torakku ni  
baggage on the nimotsu o tsunde  
truck. shimaimashita.
- Give the (a) familiar for men, (b) familiar for women, (c)  
polite, and (d) formal forms of the following sentences:
25. Where is your (a) Kimi no uchi doko  
home? da.  
(b) Anata no uchi  
doko.  
(c) Anata no uchi wa  
doko desu ka.  
(d) Anata no o-uchi  
wa doko de  
gozaimasu ka.
26. My home is in (a) Ore no uchi  
Tokyo. Tookyoo da.  
(b) Watashi no uchi  
Tookyoo yo.

- (c) Watakushi no uchi  
wa Tookyoo desu.
- (d) Watakushi no uchi  
wa Tookyoo de  
gozaimasu.
27. What is this? (a) Kore nan dai.  
(b) Kore nani.  
(c) Kore wa nan desu  
ka.  
(d) Kore wa nan de  
gozaimasu ka.
28. This is a sumie(a) Kore sumie da.  
painting.  
(b) Kore sumie yo.  
(c) Kore wa sumie  
desu.  
(d) Kore wa sumie de  
gozaimasu.
29. Is this book(a) Kono hon  
difficult? muzukashii kai.  
(b) Kono hon  
muzukashii.  
(c) Kono hon wa  
muzukashii desu  
ka.  
(d) Kono hon wa  
muzukashuu  
gozaimasu ka.
30. Yes, this book is(a) Un, kono hon  
difficult. muzukashii (yo).

- (b) Ee, kono hon wa muzukashii wa.
- (c) Hai, kono hon wa muzukashii desu.
- (d) Hai, kono hon wa muzukashuu gozaimasu.
31. Yes, this book was (a) difficult. Un, kono hon wa muzukashikatta (yo).
- (b) Un, kono hon wa muzukashikatta wa.
- (c) Hai, kono hon wa muzukashikatta desu.
- (d) Hai, kono hon wa muzukashuu gozaimashita.
32. Was he a teacher? (a) Kare sensei datta kai.
- (b) Ano kata wa sensei datta no.
- (c) Ano kata wa sensei deshita ka.
- (d) Ano kata wa sensei de gozaimashita ka.
33. No, he was not a (a) teacher. Iya, sensei ja nakatta.

- (b) lie, sensei ja nakatta wa.
- (c) lie, sensei dewa arimasen deshi-ta.
- (d) lie, sensei dewa gozaimasen deshita.
34. Does he speak Japanese at home? (a) Kare ie de Nihongo (o) hanasu kai.
- (b) Ano kata wa ie de Nihongo (o) hanasu no.
- (c) Ano kata wa ie de Nihongo o hanashimasu ka.
- (d) Ano o-kata wa ie de Nihongo o o-hanashi ni narimasu ka.
35. No, he does not speak Japanese at home. (a) Iya, ie de Nihongo (o) hanasanai.
- (b) lie, ie de Nihongo (o) hanasanai wa.
- (c) lie, ie de Nihongo o hanashi-masen.
- (d) lie, ie de Nihongo o o-hanashi ni narimasen.
36. He did not speak Japanese at home. (a) Kare ie de Nihongo (o)

- hanasanakatta  
(yo).
- (b) Ano kata (wa) ie  
de (wa) Nihongo  
(o) hanasanakatta  
wa.
- (c) Ano kata wa ie de  
(wa) Nihongo o  
hanashimasen  
deshita.
- (d) Ano kata wa ie de  
(wa) Nihongo o  
o-hanashi ni  
narimasen deshita.
37. Where is Mr. Tanaka?  
Tanaka?
- (a) Tanaka wa doko  
da (kai).
- (b) Tanaka-san wa  
doko.
- (c) Tanaka-san wa  
doko ni imasu ka.
- (d) Tanaka-sama wa  
doko ni  
irasshaimasu ka.
38. Mr. Tanaka is in the classroom.  
Tanaka
- (a) (wa)  
kyooshitsu ni iru  
yo.
- (b) Tanaka-san (wa)  
kyooshitsu ni iru  
wa (yo).

- (c) Tanaka-san wa kyooshitsu ni imasu.
- (d) Tanaka-sama wa kyooshitsu ni irasshaimasu.
39. Are you coming(a) right away ? Sugu kuru no ka (kai).
- (b) Sugu kuru?
- (c) Sugu kimasu ka.
- (d) Sugu irasshaimasu ka (oide ni narimasu ka).
40. Yes, I'll go right(a) away. Un, sugu iku (yo).
- (b) Ee, sugu iku wa (yo).
- (c) Hai, sugu ikimasu.
- (d) Hai, sugu mairimasu.
41. What are you doing(a) now? Ima nani shite iru n' da(i).
- (b) Ima nani shite iru no.
- (c) Ima nani o shite imasu ka.
- (d) Ima nani o nasatte irasshaimasu ka.
42. I am studying. (a) Benkyoo shite iru n' da.

- (b) Benkyoo shite iru  
no yo.
- (c) Benkyoo shite  
imasu.
- (d) Benkyoo shite  
(itashite) orimasu.
43. Isn't that your (a) Are kimi no  
school? gakkoo ja nai  
ka(i).
- (b) Are anata no  
gakkoo ja nai (no).
- (c) Are wa anata no  
gakkoo dewa  
arimasen ka.
- (d) Are wa anata no  
gakkoo dewa  
gozaimasen ka.
44. No, it isn't. (a) Iya, soo ja nai  
(yo).
- (b) lie, soo ja nai wa  
(yo).
- (c) lie, soo dewa  
arimasen.
- (d) lie, soo dewa  
gozaimasen.

Use the abrupt ending for the following sentences:

45. I made (him) sell the car. Watakushi wa jidoosha o  
a. uraseta.



- b. He was made to sell the Ano hito wa jidoosha o  
car. uraserareta.
46. The teacher made the Sensei wa gakusei ni jibiki o  
a. students buy dictionaries. kawa-seta.  
The students were made Gakusei wa sensei ni jibiki o  
b. to buy dictionaries by the kawase-rareta.  
teacher.
47. The police made the boy Junsu wa otoko no ko ni  
a. push the car. jidoosha o osaseta.  
The boy was made to Otoko no ko wa junsu ni  
b. push the car by the jidoosha o osaserareta.  
police.
48. My father made me walk Chichi wa watakushi o gakkoo  
a. to school. made arukaseta.  
I was made to walk to Watakushi wa gakkoo made  
b. school. arukase-rareta.
49. The principal made the Koochoo-sensei wa itazura na  
a. bad boy remain after otoko no ko o kurasu no ato  
class. nokosasetta.  
The bad boy was made to Itazura na otoko no ko wa  
b. remain after class by his kurasu no ato koochoo-sensei  
principal. ni nokosaserareta.

Note: In sentences 46a, 47a, ni indicates the indirect object.  
In 46b, 47b, 49b, ni shows the agent doing the action.

You are talking to your friend, Mr. Tanaka. First, ask the questions in the polite form, followed by the informal form of questioning.

YOUR QUESTION

MR. TANAKA's ANSWER

1. What he did during the ~~Helped~~ his father who is a summer vacation. ~~butcher.~~
2. Whether he had time to ~~Not too much,~~ but studied in study for the entrance ~~the evening after the shop~~ examination. ~~closed at 7:00 p.m.~~
3. If he finished his ~~Finished~~ half, very difficult, mathematics problems. ~~and thoroughly confused.~~
4. When does he plan to ~~April 20th,~~ in Tokyo. ~~take the entrance~~ examination.
5. Whether it was hot where ~~Was~~ tremendously hot, so he was ~~during the~~ Tokyo is better. summer.
6. When he came back to ~~Wednesday of last week.~~ Tokyo.
7. Why he hasn't called you ~~Had business at school.~~ sooner.
8. You haven't been to ~~Same as usual.~~ school for a long time, so you want to know how things are at school.
9. Whether he would like to ~~There is a movie at Shochiku~~ go see a movie or ~~which he would like to see very~~ something. ~~much.~~
10. Where you can meet him. ~~12:30 in front of the theater.~~
11. Find out whether he ~~There is a Chinese restaurant~~ would like to eat before ~~near the theater,~~ so he wants to going to see a movie. ~~eat there first.~~
12. What time he has to go ~~There is not anything to do~~ home tonight. ~~tonight,~~ and since tomorrow is a

holiday, if he gets home by  
10:00 it will be all right.

13. Since he treated you It is not necessary—he just  
before, you would like to received some spending money  
treat him. (hozukai) so he feels rich.
14. You want to know how His father is not using the car,  
he will get there. so probably he will come in a  
car.

# APPENDIX I

## VERB BASES AND SUFFIXES

Following are the various suffixes attached to different bases to obtain the meaning indicated here: the chart on page 410 summarized the following.

### I. YODAN VERBS (c.v.) (ARUKU)

#### A. ARUKA +

Add the following endings to the first base:

- |                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Plain Negative<br>(pres./fut.) | 1. <i>nai</i> (doesn't ____, won't ____).<br><i>Arukanaï</i> (I won't walk).  |
| Negative Concessive            | 2. <i>nakute mo ii desu</i> (even if I don't ____,<br>it's all right; I don't have to ____;<br>it doesn't matter if I don't ____).<br><i>Arukanaakute mo ii desu</i> (I don't have to<br>walk). |
| "must" form                    | 3. <i>nakereba narimasen</i> (I must ____; I have<br>to ____).<br><i>Arukanahereba narimasen</i> (I must walk).   |
| "without" form                 | 4. <i>azu ni, nai de</i> (without ____).<br><i>Arukazu ni</i> (without walking).  |
| Causative                      | 5. <i>seru</i> (made to ____) (see page 407)  |
| Passive                        | 6. <i>reru</i>  |
|                                | 7. <i>nakereba</i> (if ____ not ____).<br><i>Arukanahereba karada ni warui desu</i> (If I<br>don't walk, it is bad for my health).  |

# B. ARUKI +

Attach the following endings to the second base:

Polite Positive (pres./fut.)	1. <i>masu</i> (walk; will walk). <i>Arukimasu</i> (I will walk).
Polite Negative (pres./fut.)	2. <i>masen</i> (don't walk; will not walk). <i>Arukimasen</i> (I do not walk).
Polite Positive Probable	3. <i>mashou</i> (probably will ____; let's ____). <i>Arukimashou</i> (let's walk).
Noun Form	4. Second base often stands alone as a <i>noun</i> , example: <i>odori</i> , <i>asobi</i> .
Desiderative	5. <i>tai</i> (want to ____; will want to ____) <i>Arukитай</i> (I want to walk). <i>taku wa arimasen</i> (doesn't want to ____; won't want to ____). <i>Arukитай wa arimasen</i> (I don't want to walk).
Plain Imperative	6. <i>nasai</i> (Walk!). <i>Arukinasai</i> . "te" verb + <i>wa ikenasen</i> . <i>Arukite wa ikenasen</i> (Don't walk).
Simultaneous Action	7. <i>ni</i> (with IKU, KURU, KAERU to express purpose; "in order to," "for"). <i>Kai ni iku</i> (go to buy). 8. <i>nagara*</i> (while ____; during ____). <i>Arukinagara aisukurūmu o taberu</i> (Eat ice cream while walking). 9. <i>nihai</i> (hard to ____; difficult to ____). <i>Kono kutsu wa arukinihai desu</i> (These shoes are hard to walk in). 10. <i>yasai</i> (easy to ____). <i>Kono pen wa kakiyasai desu</i> (This pen is easy to write with).

\* *Nagara* is used to express two actions taking place simultaneously and conducted by the same person. *Watakushi wa itae-mo rajio o hikinagara benkyoo shimasu. Hou o yominagara aruku.*

# Compound Verb

11. It is used with another verb to form compound verb.  
*aruki-mamuru* (walk around)  
*tobi-noru* (jump on board)

## C. ARUKU +

The following endings are added to the third base:

### Purpose

1. *no ni* (expresses purpose—"in order to," "for," in constructions not ending in IKU, KURU, KARRU)  
*Aruku no ni kono kutsu o tsukaimasu.*  
(I use these shoes for walking).

### Potential

2. *koto ga dekiru* (can, able to).  
*Aruku koto ga dekiru* (I am able to walk).

### "about to"

3. *tokoro (desu)*—(about to).  
*Aruku tokoro desu* (I am about to walk).

### Comparative

4. *hoo ga ii desu* (had better, is better).  
*Aruku hoo ga ii desu* (it is better to walk).

### Reasonable Expectation

5. *hasu (desu)*—(ought to, should).  
*Aruku hasu desu* (I should walk).  
Kinoo *aruku hasu deshita* (He was supposed to walk yesterday).

### "time for"

6. *hima ga aru* (free time).  
*Kyoo aruku hima ga arimasu* (I have time to walk today).

### Secondhand Information

7. *mo desu* (I hear, I understand).  
Ano akamboo wa moo *aruku mo desu.*  
(The baby already walks, I hear).

### Intention

8. *tsumori (desu)*—(I intend to).  
*Aruku tsumori desu* (I intend to walk).  
*Aruku tsumori desu arimasen* (I don't intend to walk).

### Before

9. *mae* (before I walk).  
*Aruku mae ni sukoshi yasumimasu.*  
(I will rest awhile before walking).
10. *tochuu* (on the way . . .).  
*Kaeru tochuu . . .* (on the way home . . .).

D. **ARUKE +**

Add the following endings to the fourth base:

Present Positive Conditional	1. <i>ba</i> (if . . .) Gakkoo made arukaba tsukaremasu. (If I walk to school, I will be tired).
Potential	2. <i>masu</i> (can, able to). Arukemasu (I can walk).
Imperative	3. This base can be used as abrupt imperative. Aruke (Walk!).

E. **ARUKOO +**

The following endings are added to the fifth base:

"tried to"	1. <i>to suru</i> (about to, tried to). Arukoo <i>to shita</i> ga dame deshita. (I tried to walk, but it was impossible).
"let's"	2. This base can be used alone to mean, "Let's walk!"—Arukoo.

II. ICHIDAN VERB (n.c.v.) (TABERU)

Since there are no bases for *ichidan* verbs (n.c.v.), use the stem in attaching all endings, except for the third base, where the root form of the verb is used (*taberu koto ga dekiru*, *taberu hazu desu*, etc.)

For the fifth base, replace *ru* with *yoo*, viz., *tabeyoo*, *mijyoo*, etc.

**Passive**

Where the subject is the recipient of the action, the following construction is used:

# I. YODAN VERBS (c.v.) (UTSU)

**UTA**

(first base) + RERU = *utareru*

Doroboo wa junsu ni pisutoru de ashi o  
*utaremashta.*

(The robber was shot in the leg by the  
police with a pistol.)

# II. ICHIDAN VERBS (n.c.v.) (MIRU)

**MI**

(stem) + RARERU = *mirareru*

Otoko no ko wa uchi e hairu no o koo-  
choo ni *miraremashta.*

(The boy was seen entering the house by  
the principal.)

## Causative

This is the form used when you "cause" or "have" another person do some-  
thing, viz., "Please *have* the maid bring a glass of water," or "The teacher  
*made* the student go home."

The rule for forming this expression is

FIRST BASE (of YODAN VERBS—c.v.) + SERU

or

STEM (of ICHIDAN VERBS—n.c.v.) + SASERU

# I. YODAN VERBS (c.v.) (ARUKU)

**ARUKA**

(first base) + SERU = *arukaseru*

a. Isha wa anata o *arukaseru.*

(The doctor will *make* you walk.)

b. Sensei wa gakusei o *kacraseta.*

(The teacher *made* the student go home.)



## II. ICHIDAN VERBS (n.c.v.) (TABERU)

TABE
------

(stem) + SASERU = *tabesaseru*

*Isha wa kudamono o tabesaseru.*

(The doctor will *make* you eat fruit.)

### Causative Passive

A construction where both causative and passive are used is not uncommon. For example, "I was made to wait," or "We were forced to see some slides," "I was made to walk," etc.

#### I. YODAN VERBS (c.v.) (MATSU)

A. First, form the causative: MATA + SERU.

Note that this is now an *ichidan* verb—n.c.v.

("eru" ending).

B. Now form a passive of this n.c.v. by adding

*RARERU* to the stem: MATASE + RARERU.

*Mataserareru no wa kirai desu.*

(I do not like to be made to wait.)

#### II. ICHIDAN VERBS (n.c.v.) (MIRU)

A. MI + SASERU—causative

B. MISASE + RARERU—causative + passive

*Omoshirokunai suraido o misaserareta.*

(We were forced to see [some] uninteresting slides.)

**Note:** You can add the desiderative (*tai*), negative (*nai*), or conditional (*ba*) suffixes to these *ichidan* verbs (n.c.v.) endings and get the following complicated, but commonly used, constructions.

A. mi + se + tai—(I) want (you) to see.

B. mi + se + rare + tai—(I) want to be forced to see.

C. mi + se + rare + taku + nai—(I) don't want to be forced to see.

D. mi + se + rare + taku + nakereba—If (you) don't want to be forced to see. . . .

- E. Now, see if you can translate:
- If you don't want to be made to wait . . .
  - If you want to be elected . . .
  - I don't want to be sent . . .
  - I like to be forced to study . . .
  - The children were made to go home . . .
  - My child was made to wear a kimono . . .
  - I was made to write . . .
  - I don't like to be made to do . . .
  - I was made to drink . . .

**Examples:**

- If you don't want to be made to wait . . . ,  
(cond.) (neg.) (desid.) (passive) (causative)
- This sentence contains the conditional, negative, desiderative, and causative.
1. causative of *matsu* = *mata* + *suru* (cause to wait)
  2. passive of *mataseru* = *matase* + *rereru* (to be made to wait)
  3. desiderative of *mataserareru* = *mataserare* + *tai* (want to be made to wait)
  4. negative of *mataseraretai* = *mataserareta* + *ku* + *nai* (do not want to be made to wait)
  5. conditional of *mataseraretaku* + *nai* = *mataseraretaku* + *na* + *kereba* (if you do not want to be forced to wait)
- The verb we want is *mataseraretakunakereba*.

**Note:** *Miseru* and *misaseru* are often confused in usage.

*Miseru*, a transitive verb, simply means "to show something" or "to let a person see."

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| i. Tanaka-san wa rippa na bonsai o <i>misete</i> kuremashita. | Mr. Tanaka showed me a splendid bonsai.                 |
| ii. Iminkan ni ryoken o <i>mise-nakereba</i> narimasen.       | You must show your passport to the immigration officer. |

On the other hand, *misaseru* has the implication of force or compulsion, compelling someone to see.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| i. Kore wa gakusei ni <i>misasetai</i> eiga desu.     | This is a movie which I would like to have my students see.          |
| ii. Gakusei wa mitakunakatta ga <i>misaserareta</i> . | The students <i>did not</i> want to see it, but they were forced to. |

# FIVE BASES AND SUFFIXES

FIVE BASES		CONJUGATION	SUFFIXES
1st base	misen NEGATIVE	ka-KA	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. nai</li> <li>2. nakute mo ii</li> <li>3. nakereba narimashen</li> <li>4. zu ni, nai de</li> <li>5. eru</li> <li>6. reru</li> <li>7. nakereba</li> </ol>
2nd base	renyoo CONTINUATIVE	ka-KI	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. masu, masen, masboo</li> <li>2. tai</li> <li>3. nassi</li> <li>4. ni (iku, kuru, kaeru)</li> <li>5. nagara</li> <li>6. nikui</li> <li>7. yasui</li> </ol>
3rd base	1) shuushi CONCLUSIVE	ka-KU	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. no ni</li> <li>2. hoto ga dekiru</li> <li>3. tokoro</li> <li>4. hoo ga ii (desu)</li> <li>5. hazu</li> <li>6. hima ga aru</li> <li>7. soo desu</li> <li>8. tsumori</li> <li>9. mae</li> <li>10. tochiuu</li> </ol>
	2) rentai MODIFIER	ka-KU	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. hoto ga dekiru</li> <li>2. tokoro</li> <li>3. hoo ga ii desu</li> <li>4. hima ga aru</li> <li>5. mae</li> <li>6. tochiuu</li> </ol>
4th base	kaiei CONDITIONAL	ka-KE	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. ba</li> <li>2. ru, masu</li> <li>3. imperative</li> </ol>
5th base	VOLITIONAL	ka-KOO	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. to suru</li> <li>2. "let's"</li> <li>3. to omou</li> </ol>

## APPENDIX II

### POSTPOSITIONS

Following is the summary of the more common usage of postpositions emphasized in this book and also other not too common usages. Remember that postpositions are used mainly with substantives (noun or noun equivalent) and indicate the function and the relation of the substantives within the sentence.

The numbers below indicate the pages.

WA— (a) indicates the subject (p. 27)

Ano kata wa sensei desu.

NO— (a) shows possessive (p. 38)

Watakushi no hantekchi . . .

(b) used in place of a noun in the sense of "one" (p. 155)

Ookii no wa watakushi no desu (large one).

(c) forms a noun modifier (p. 38)

Tomodachi kara no tegami . . .

(d) NO used for *ni aru* in relative clause (p. 279)

Tsukue no ue no (ni aru) hon wa . . .

(e) NO used for *ni iru* in relative clause (p. 279)

Tookyoo no (ni iru) ani wa . . .

(f) This can be used as *de aru* in relative clauses.

Hisho no (de aru) Tanaka-san wa . . .

(Miss Tanaka who is a secretary . . .)

(g) subject of a relative clause

Kodomo no kaita e . . . (picture which the child drew . . .)

(h) used as a nominalizer (to make a noun) (p. 334)

Noboru no ga muzukashii desu (difficult to climb).

Toru no o mimashita.

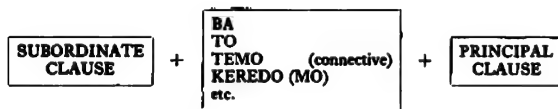
O— (a) shows the object of a verb (p. 52)

Jidoosha o uru.

- (b) indicates the action occurring in space (p. 291)  
*Hashi o wataru* (cross the bridge).
  - (c) points to where the action occurs—"from"  
*Gakkoo o deru* (leave the school).
- NI—
- (a) shows location "where" (p. 62)  
*Gakkoo ni atsumaru* (gather at the school).
  - (b) after a specific time (p. 124)  
*Shichi-ji ni shuppatsu suru* (depart at 7 o'clock).
  - (c) place of arrival  
*Kyotoo ni tsuku.*
  - (d) shows the result of an action—"naru" (p. 244)  
*Gakusha ni naru* (to become a scholar).
  - (e) specifies the indirect object  
*Tomodachi ni hon o okuru* (send a book to a friend).
  - (f) indicates the purpose of an act (p. 176)  
*Sensei o yobi ni iku* (go to call the teacher).
  - (g) used to show the doer, or the originator of an act in the passive form (p. 271)  
*Inu ni kumareru.* (to be bitten by a dog).
- E—
- (a) shows direction (p. 116)  
*Nihon e iku.*
  - (b) indicates point of arrival  
*Koko e kinasai.*
- DE—
- (a) shows the instrument—"by means of" (p. 117)  
*Tetsu de tsukuru* (make with steel).
  - (b) place of action (p. 155)  
*Toshokan de benkyoo o suru* (study at the library).
  - (c) indicates the reason, or the cause  
*Byouki de yasumu* (stay away due to illness).
  - (d) used in comparison (p. 172)  
*Nihon de ichiban ookii* (largest in Japan).

## APPENDIX III CONNECTIVES

Following are the commonly used connectives which come at the end of the subordinate clause, and combine it with the principal clause. \* indicates usage not mentioned in this book.



Note that this is the opposite of English. In English, "when," "if," "because," "while," etc., are used at the beginning of the clause.

BA— used with the fourth base

1. shows conditional, "if" (p. 329).  
Yomeba waku. (If you read, you will understand.)
- 2.\* inevitable results arising from a certain situation.  
Haru ga kureba atatakai. (When spring comes, it will be warm.)
- 3.\* used to list several facts.  
Kisha mo araba densha mo aru. (There are trains and streetcars, too.)

TO— used with the third base (abrupt form)

1. as a conditional "if" (p. 228, p. 329).  
Yomu to waku. (If you read, you will understand.)
2. inevitable result (same as #2 of BA).  
Kaze ga fuku to samui. (When the wind blows, it is cold.)
3. has the meaning of "when," "on the occasion" (p. 228, p. 329).  
Tokyo e iku to Kabuki o miru.  
(When I go to Tokyo, I will see Kabuki.)

- used to indicate the relation of one action to another, or one action preceding another.  
 Dekakeyoo to suru *to* denwa ga natta.  
 (When I was about to leave, there was a telephone call.)  
 Eki o deru *to* takushii ni notta.  
 (When I came out of the station, I took a taxi.)

**TEMO (DEMO)**—attach *MO* to “*te*” form of the verb

- \* used to express ideas contrary to expectation.  
 Mitemo wakaranai. (Even if you see it, you will not understand.)

**KEREDO (KEREDOMO)**—used with the third base

- \* contrary to expectation usage.  
 Atama ga itai *keredo* (mo) iku.  
 (I have a headache, but I’ll go.)
- \* to show contrast of two ideas.  
 Kare wa asobu *keredo* benkyoo mo suru.  
 (He plays, but he studies, too.)

**GA**— used with the third base

- same usage as #1 and #2 of **KEREDO**.  
 Kaze wa fuku *ga* samukunai.  
 (The wind blows, but it is not cold.)

**NONI**—used with the third base

- \* same usage as No. 1 of **KEREDO** and **GA**, used to put in contrast two opposing ideas to express unexpected, displeased feeling.  
 Ame ga futte iru *noni* yama e iku.  
 (Even though it is raining, I will go to the mountains.)

**NODE**—used with the third base

- shows cause and the reason (p. 136).  
 Atama ga itai *node* gakkoo o yasumu.  
 (Since I have a headache, I will not go to school.)

**KARA**—used with the third base.

- same usage as **NODE** (p. 135).  
 Atama ga itai *kara* gakkoo o yasumu.  
 (Since I have a headache, I will not go to school.)

**SHI**— used with the third base

- has the meaning of “furthermore” when listing several features (p. 390).  
 Jidoosha mo unten suru *shi* ryoori mo suru.  
 (He drives a car; in addition, he cooks.)

**NAGARA**—used with the second base

- two actions taking place simultaneously (p. 404).  
 Shokujii o *shinagara* shimbun o yomu.  
 (He reads a newspaper while eating.)

**TARI (DARI)**—“*ri*” added to abrupt past

- shows alternate action (p. 275).  
 Benkyoo *shitari* *sonotari* suru.  
 (Sometimes I study, other times I play, etc.)

# VOCABULARY

The following vocabularies are found in the text. Words *followed* by an asterisk do not appear in the text, but have been selected because of their frequent use. Words *preceded* with an asterisk can be used as Chinese verbs by the addition of *suru*. (For example, *benkyoo* is a noun meaning "study." By adding *suru* to it, *benkyoo suru* now means "to study.")

## A

AA—Oh!  
 ABUNAI—dangerous  
 ABURA\*—oil  
 ACHIRA KOCHIRA\*—here and there  
 AIDA—between  
 AINIKU\*—unfortunately  
 AIRON\*—iron  
 \*AISATSU—greetings  
 AJI—taste  
 AKAI—red  
 AKABOO—red cap  
 AKACHAN—baby (affectionate term)  
 AKAMBOO—baby  
 AKI—autumn  
 AMAI—sweet  
 AMARI—very  
 AME—rain  
 AMERICA GASSHUUKOKU—U.S.A.  
 AMERICAJIN—American  
 ANATA—you (singular)  
 ANATAGATA—you (plural)

ANE—elder sister  
 ANI—elder brother  
 ANNA—that kind of  
 ANNAIJO—information place  
 ANO—that (over there)  
 ANO KATA—that person (polite)  
 \*ANSHIN—peace of mind  
 ARASHI\*—storm  
 ARE—that (over there)  
 ARIGATOO—thank you  
 ARU—certain  
 ARU HI—one day  
 ARU TOKI—once upon a time  
 ARU TOKORO NI—at a certain place  
 ASA—morning  
 ASAGOHAN\*—breakfast  
 ASATTE—day after tomorrow  
 ASE\*—perspiration  
 ASHI—leg, legs, foot, feet  
 ASHITA—tomorrow  
 ASOKO—over there  
 ASU—tomorrow  
 ATAMA—head  
 ATARASHII—new  
 ATATAKAI—warm  
 ATENA—(forwarding) address  
 ATO—after



ATSUI—hot  
ATSUI—thick

B

BAKA—fool  
BAKA NA—foolish  
BAKARI—only  
BAN—evening, night  
BANANA—banana  
BANGOO—number  
BASU—bus  
BATAA—butter  
BEIKOKU—America  
BENGOSHI—attorney  
BENJO\*—toilet  
\*BENKYOO—study  
BENRI—convenience  
BENTOO—box lunch  
BIIRU—beer  
\*BIMBOO—poor  
BIMBOONIN—poor person  
BIN—occasion  
BIN\*—bottle  
BOOEKI—trade  
BOOI-SAN—waiter  
BOKU—I (used by men only)  
BOOSHI—hat  
BOOTO NORI—boat ride  
BUDOO—grapes  
BUMPOO\*—grammar  
BUNSHOO—sentence  
BUTANIKU—pork  
BYOO—second  
BYOONIN—hospital  
\*BYOOKI—illness  
BYOONIN\*—sick person

C

CHA—green tea  
CHAIRO—brown  
CHAWAN—rice bowl  
CHICHI—father (intimate term)  
CHIHOO—district  
CHIISAI—small

CHIISA-SUGIRU—too small  
CHIKAGORO—nowadays  
CHIKAI—near  
CHIKAKU—nearby  
CHIKATETSU—subway  
CHIPPUP—tip  
CHIRI—geography  
CHIZU—map  
CHODOO—exactly  
CHOOJO—eldest daughter  
CHOONAN—eldest son  
CHOOSHOKU—breakfast  
CHOTTO—a moment  
CHOTTO NO AIDA—short space  
of time  
CHUUGAKKOO—junior high  
school  
CHUUGOKU—Communist China  
CHUUKA RYOORI—Chinese food  
\*CHUUMON—order  
CHUUSHINCHI—center  
CHUUSHOKU—lunch

D

DAIGAKU—university  
DAIGAKUIN—graduate school  
DAIJI—importance, great thing  
DAIJOBU\*—all right  
DAIKIRAI—dislike greatly  
DAISUKI—like very much  
DAITOKAI—large metropolis  
DAITOORYOO—President (of a  
country)  
DAKE—only  
DAME—no good  
DAN-DAN—step by step  
DARE—who?  
DE—by, with, in, at  
DE—ia, and  
DEMO—even  
DEMPOO—telegram  
DENSHA—street car  
\*DENWA—telephone  
DEPAATO—department store  
DEWA—then, in that case

DEWA—between (in comparison)  
 -DO—classifier for number of  
 “times”  
 DOA—door  
 DOCHIRA—which  
 DOO ITASHIMASHITE—Don’t  
 mention it.  
 DOKO—where  
 DONNA—what kind of  
 DONO—which  
 DORE—which  
 DOREI—slave  
 DORU—dollar  
 DOOSHITE—why, how  
 DOOSHITEMO—by all means  
 DOTCHI—which  
 DOYOBI—Saturday  
 DOOZO—please

# E

E—picture  
 E—postposition showing direction  
 EE—yes  
 EHAGAKI\*—picture-postcard  
 EIGA—movie  
 EIGAKAN—movie theater  
 EIGO—English  
 EIKOKU—England  
 EIWA\*—English-Japanese  
 EKI—station  
 EMPITSU—pencil  
 \*ENRYO—hesitation  
 EREBETAA—elevator

# F

FOOKU—fork  
 FUBEN—inconvenience  
 FUDE—writing brush  
 FUJISAN—Mt. Fuji  
 FUN—minute  
 FUNE—boat  
 FURO—bath  
 FUROBA—bathroom  
 FURUI—old

FUTARI DE—together (two per-  
 sons)  
 FUTATSU—two (items)  
 FUUTOO—envelope  
 FUTOI\*—thick  
 FUTSUU—ordinary  
 FUYU—winter

# G

GA—but  
 GA—postposition used in the nomi-  
 native case  
 GAIKOKU—foreign country  
 GAIKOKU BOOEKI—foreign  
 trade  
 GAIKOKUJIN—foreigner  
 GAKKI—school term  
 GAKKOO—school  
 \*GAKUMON—studies  
 GAKUSEI—student  
 GAKUSHA—scholar  
 GEKIJOO—theater  
 GENRYOHOIN—raw material  
 GETA—wooden clogs  
 GETSUYOBI—Monday  
 \*GIMBURA—a stroll along Giza  
 GINKOO—bank  
 GINZA—name of a famous street in  
 Tokyo  
 GO—five  
 -GO—suffix “language”  
 \*GO-CHISOO—good things to eat  
 GOGATSU—May  
 GOGO—p.m.  
 GOHAN—cooked rice, meal (in  
 general)  
 GOMEN—pardon (me)  
 GORO—about  
 GOZEN—a.m.  
 GUN—county  
 GUNJIN—soldier  
 GURAI—about  
 GYUUNIKU\*—beef  
 GYUUNYUU—milk

## H

HA\*—teeth  
 HABA\*—width  
 HACHI—eight  
 HACHIGATSU—August  
 HAGAKI—post card  
 HAHAI—mother  
 HAI—yes  
 \*HAIKINGU—hiking  
 HAJIME—beginning, first  
 HAJIMEMASHITE—I am happy  
 to meet you (for the first time).  
 HAKARI—scale  
 HAKKIRI—plainly  
 HAKO—box  
 HAKURAIHIN—imported goods  
 HAMBUN—one-half  
 HANAMI—flower-viewing  
 \*HANASHI—story  
 HANKECHI—handkerchief  
 \*HANTAI—opposition  
 HARU—spring  
 HASAMI—scissors  
 HASHI—chopsticks  
 HASHI—bridge  
 HAYAI—fast, early  
 HAYAKU—quickly  
 HEIYA—plain  
 \*HENJI—answer  
 HETA—unskillful  
 HEYA—room  
 HEYADAI—room rent  
 HI—day  
 HIDARI—left side  
 HIDOI—severe  
 HIGASHI—east  
 HIJOO NI—very  
 -HIKI—classifier for animals  
 HIKOOJOO—airport  
 HIKOOKI—airplane  
 HIKOYUUBIN—airmail  
 HIKUI—low  
 HIMA—leisure time

HIRU—noon  
 HIRUGOHAN—lunch  
 HISASHIBURI—after a long time  
 HITO—person  
 HITOBITO—people (plural)  
 HITORI—one person  
 HITOTSU—one (thing)  
 HITSUYOO—necessity  
 HOO—direction, side  
 HOOCHOO—kitchen knife  
 HOMBAKO\*—bookcase  
 HON—book  
 -HON—classifier for counting long  
 slender objects  
 HONSHUU—main island of Japan  
 HONYA—bookstore  
 HOORITSU—law  
 HOSHI\*—star  
 HOSHII—desirable  
 HOTERU—hotel  
 HOTONDO—almost all, hardly  
 HYAKKATEN—department store  
 HYAKU—hundred  
 \*HYAKUSHOO—farmer

## I

ICHI—one  
 ICHIBAN—No. 1, most  
 ICHIDO—once  
 ICHIGATSU—January  
 ICHIGO\*—strawberry  
 IE—house  
 II—good  
 IIE—no  
 IKAGA—how  
 IKKA—family household  
 IKURA—how much  
 IKUTSU—how many  
 IMA—now  
 IMI—meaning  
 IMOOTO—younger sister  
 INAKA—(rural) country  
 INDO—India  
 INKI\*—ink

INU—dog  
 IPPAI—full, one cupful  
 IPPON—one (long, slender object)  
 IRIGUCHI—entrance  
 IRO—color  
 IRO-IRO—various  
 ISHA—doctor  
 ISOGASHI—busy  
 ISSATSU—one volume  
 ISSHO NI—together  
 ISSHOKEMMEI NI—with all  
     one's might  
 ISSHUUKAN—one week  
 ISU—chair  
 ITAI\*—sore, painful  
 ITOKO—cousin  
 ITSU—when  
 ITSU GORO—about when  
 ITSU-MO—always  
 ITSUTSU—five

# J

JAMA—hindrance, obstacle  
 JI—letter  
 -JI—time of the day  
 JIBIKI—dictionary  
 JIBUN—oneself  
 JIDAI—period, era  
 JIDOOSHA—automobile  
 JIKAN—hours  
 JIKANHYO—time table  
 JINKO—population  
 JINSHU—race (human)  
 JITENSHA—bicycle  
 JOBU\*—healthy, strong  
 JOCHUU—waitress, maid  
 JUU—ten  
 JUU—throughout  
 JUUGATSU—October  
 JUUCHIGATSU—November  
 JUMBI—preparation  
 JUUNIGATSU—December  
 JUNSA—policeman  
 JUUSHO—address

# K

KA—or  
 KA—used to make an interrogative  
     sentence  
 KABAN—bag  
 KABE—wall  
 KABIN—vase  
 KABUKI—classical Japanese drama  
 KADO—corner  
 KAGAMI—mirror  
 KAIKAN—steps  
 \*KAIHOO—emancipation  
 \*KAIMONO—shopping  
 KAIATSU GUCHI—ticket-gate  
 KAISHA—firm, company  
 KAIWA\*—conversation  
 KAKARI—charge, responsibility  
 KAKITOME—registered mail  
 KAMI—hair (on the head)  
 KAMI—paper  
 KANAI—(one's own) wife  
 KANARI—fairly  
 KANASHII—sad  
 (O)KANE—money  
 KANEMOCHI—rich man  
 KANGAE—idea  
 KANJI—Chinese written symbols  
 \*KANJOO—check or bill (for a meal,  
     etc.)  
 KANKOKU—South Korea  
 KAO—face  
 KARA—from  
 KARA—since, because  
 KARADA\*—body  
 KARAI—hot, peppery  
 KAREE RAISU—curry rice  
 KASHIKOMARIMASHITA—cer-  
     tainly  
 KATA—person (polite)  
 KATAI\*—hard  
 KATAMICHI—one way  
 KAWA—river  
 KAWAKAMI—up-stream

KAWASE—money order  
 KAYOOBI—Tuesday  
 KAZOKU\*—family  
 KEIKAN—police  
 KEIZAI—economics  
 KEIZAITEKI—economical  
 \*KEMBUTSU—sightseeing  
 KEMBUTSUNIN—sightseer  
 KERAI—servant, follower  
 KEREDOMO—but, however  
 KESHIKI—scenery  
 KESSHITE—never  
 KI\*—tree, wood  
 KIBIDANGO—kind of dumpling  
 \*KIBOO—hope, desire  
 KIBUN—mood, feeling  
 KIIROI—yellow  
 KJJI—pheasant  
 KIMI—you (used by men only)  
 KIMOCI—feeling  
 KINOO—yesterday  
 KINYOOBI—Friday  
 KIPPU—ticket  
 KIREI—clean  
 KIRO—kilogram  
 KISEN—steamship  
 KISHA—train  
 KISOKU\*—rule  
 KISSATEN—tea house  
 KITA—north  
 KITTE—postage stamps  
 KOCHA—black tea  
 KOCHOO—school principal  
 KODOMO—child  
 KOEN—park  
 KOOFUKU—happiness  
 KOOGAI—suburb  
 KOOGYOO—manufacturing industry  
 KOOHII—coffee  
 KOJOO—factory  
 KOKO—here, this place  
 KOKONOTSU—nine  
 KOKUBAN—blackboard  
 KOKUMIN—people of a country  
 KOMBAN—tonight

KOMBAN WA—good evening  
 KONDATEHYOO—menu  
 KONO—this  
 KONO AIDA\*—the other day  
 KONO ATARI—around here  
 KONOORO—nowadays  
 KORE—this  
 \*KOOSAN—surrender  
 KOSHI—waist  
 KOOSHUU—general public  
 KOTOBAB—word  
 KOOTOOGAKKOO—senior high school  
 KOTOSHI—this year  
 KOZUKAI—pocket money  
 KOZUTSUMI—package  
 KU (KYUU)—nine  
 KUCHI—mouth  
 KUDAMONO—fruit  
 KUGATSU—September  
 KUNI—country  
 KURAI\*—dark  
 KURAI—about  
 KURASU—class  
 KUROI—black  
 KURUMA—vehicle, car  
 KUSURI—medicine  
 KUTSU\*—shoes  
 KYOO—today  
 KYOODAI—brothers and sisters  
 KYOOJU—college professor  
 KYOOKAI\*—church  
 KYOOKASHO—reader, primer, textbook  
 KYOKUIN—postal clerk  
 KYONEN—last year  
 KYOOSHI—teacher  
 KYOOSHITSU—classroom  
 KYUUKOO—express train  
 KYUURYOO\*—salary

# M

MACHI—town  
 MACHIAISHITSU—waiting room  
 MADA—still, yet

MADE—up to, until  
 MADO—window  
 MAE—front, before, past  
 -MAI—classifier in counting flat objects  
 MAI—prefix meaning “every . . .”  
 MAINICHI—everyday  
 MAN—ten thousand  
 MANNAKA—center  
 MANNENHITSU—fountain pen  
 MANSUU—Manchuria  
 MASSUGU—straight  
 MATA—again  
 ME—eye(s)  
 MEISHO—famous place  
 MEKATA—weight  
 MICHI—road  
 MIGI—right side  
 MIJIKAI—short  
 MIKAN—orange  
 MIMI—ear  
 MINAMI—south  
 MINASAN—everybody  
 MINATO—harbor  
 MINNA—all, everything  
 MIRUKU—milk  
 MISE—shop  
 MIYAGE—gift, souvenir  
 MIYAKO—(archaic) capital  
 MIZU—water  
 MIZUKUSAI—taste which lacks sufficient seasoning  
 MIZUPPOI—watery taste  
 MIZUUMI—lake  
 MO—also, too  
 MOO—already, more  
 MODAN—modern  
 MOO ICHIDO—once more  
 MOKUYOBI—Thursday  
 MOMO—peach  
 MON—gate  
 MONO—person, fellow  
 MONO—thing  
 MOSHI MOSHI—hello, oh say, if you please!  
 MOO SUKOSHI—a little more

MOTTO—more  
 MUKASHI—long time ago  
 MURA—village  
 MUSHIATSUI—sultry  
 MUSUKO (SAN)—son  
 MUSUME (SAN)—daughter  
 MUTTSU—six  
 MUZUKASHII—difficult  
 MYOUBAN—tomorrow night  
 MYOJI—surname

## N

NAGAI—long  
 NAI—is not (abrupt form)  
 NAIFU—knife  
 NAKA—in, inside  
 NAKA NAKA—quite, very  
 NAME—name  
 NAN (nani)—what  
 NANATSU—seven  
 NANI-KA—something  
 NAN-NIN—how many persons  
 NARA—if  
 NATSU—summer  
 NATSUYASUMI—summer vacation  
 NAZE—why  
 NE—aren't it?  
 NEDAN—price  
 NEKO—cat  
 NEN—year  
 NI—indicating location  
 NI—two  
 NICHI—days of the month  
 NICHIOOBI—Sunday  
 NIGAI—bitter  
 NIGATSU—February  
 NIHON—Japan  
 NIHONFUU—Japanese style  
 NIHONGO—Japanese language  
 NIHON-ICHI—No. 1 in Japan  
 NIHONJIN—Japanese (people)  
 NIHONKAI—Japan Sea  
 NIHONSEI—Japanese-made  
 NIHONSHOKU—Japanese food

NIKU—meat  
 -NIN—classifier to count people  
 NIOI—smell  
 NI-SATSU—two volumes  
 NISHI—west  
 NI-TOO—second-class  
 NI TOTTE—for  
 NO—of (possessive)  
 NODE—since, because  
 NODO\*—throat  
 NOOGYOO—agriculture  
 NOMBIRI—relaxed  
 NOOTO (BUKKU)—notebook  
 NURUI—lukewarm  
 \*NYUUGAKU—school entrance  
 NYUUGAKU SHIKEN—entrance  
     examination

# O

O—tail  
 OBA—sunt  
 OBAASAN—grandmother, old  
     woman  
 ODORI—dance  
 \*OOFUKU—round trip  
 OFUKURO—mother (used by men  
     only)  
 OHAYOO GOZAIMASU—good  
     morning  
 OISHII—delicious  
 OJI—uncle  
 OJIISAN—grandfather, old man  
 OJOOSAN\*—young lady  
 OKAASAN—mother  
 OKASHI\*—candy  
 OOKII—large, big  
 OOKINA—large, big  
 OKUSAN—(someone else's) wife  
 OMEDETOO—congratulations  
 OMOI\*—heavy  
 OMOSHIROI—funny, interesting  
 OMOTE—surface, face, front  
 ONAJI—same  
 ONAKA—stomach  
 ONESAN—elder sister

ONGAKU—music  
 ONGAKUKAI—concert  
 ONI—ogre  
 ONIISAN—elder brother  
 ONNA—female, girl  
 ONNA NO KO—girl  
 ONSEN—hot spring  
 OOBAA—overcoat  
 ORE—I (used by men only)  
 OSOI—slow, late  
 O-TAKU—(your) residence  
 O-TEARAI—toilet  
 OTOBAI—motorcycle  
 OTOKO—male, man  
 OTOKO NO KO—boy  
 OTONA—adult  
 OTOOSAN—father  
 OTOOTO—younger brother  
 OYASUMINASAI—good night  
 (O) YU\*—hot water  
 OYAJI—father (used by men only)  
 OOZEI—many (people)

# P

PAN—bread  
 PANYA—baker  
 PEEJI—page  
 PEN—pen  
 PIANO—piano  
 POKETTO—pocket  
 POSUTO—mail box  
 -PUN—minute

# R

-RA—plural suffix (human beings)  
 RAISHUU—next week  
 REKISHI—history  
 REKISHITEKI—historical  
 RESSHA—train  
 RINGO—apple  
 RIPPA—magnificent  
 ROKU—six  
 ROKUGATSU—June  
 ROKUNIN—six persons

RONDON—London  
 RUSU—absence  
 RUSUCHUU—during the absence  
 RYOOHOO—both  
 RYOKAN—Japanese inn  
 \*RYOKOO—trip  
 \*RYOORI—cooking  
 RYOORININ—cook  
 RYOORIYA—restaurant  
 RYOOSHIN—both parents  
 RYOOTE—both hands  
 RYUUGAKUSEI—foreign student

8

SABISHII—lonesome  
 -SAI—classifier to count age  
 SAIFU—purse  
 SAKABA—bar  
 SAKANA—fish  
 SAKA—Japanese rice wine  
 SAKI—ahead, point  
 SAKUNEN—last year  
 SAKURA—cherry blossoms  
 SAMBANME—third  
 \*SAMPO—stroll  
 SAMUI—cold  
 SAN—three  
 SAN—Mr., Mrs., Miss  
 SANGATSU—March  
 SARARI-MAN—salaried man  
 SARU—monkey  
 SASSOKU—immediately  
 SATOO—sugar  
 -SATSU—classifier for books  
 \*SEIBATSU—extermination, conquest  
 SEIJI—politics  
 SEIJIGAKU—political science  
 SEIJIKA—politician  
 SEIJITEKI—political  
 SEINEN—young men  
 SEISANHIN—manufactured goods  
 SEITO—student  
 SEIYOO—west  
 SEIYOO-FUU—western-style  
 SEKAI—world

SEMMENJO—washroom  
 SEN—thousand  
 SENGEN—proclamation  
 SENGO—postwar  
 \*SENKYO—election  
 SENSEI—teacher  
 \*SENSOO—war  
 \*SENTAKU (MONO)—washing  
 (clothes)  
 SENTAKUYA—laundry  
 SHASHOO—conductor  
 SHI—four  
 SHI—city  
 SHIBAI—play (act)  
 SHICHI—seven  
 SHICHIGATSU—July  
 SHIGATSU—April  
 SHIGOTO—work  
 SHIKA—only  
 SHIKASHI—however, but  
 SHIKATA GA NAI—It can't be  
 helped  
 \*SHIKEN—examination  
 SHIMA—land  
 SHIMBUN—newspaper  
 SHIMIN—citizen  
 \*SHIMPAI—worry  
 SHINAMONO—merchandise  
 SHINDAI—bed  
 SHINDAI-KEN—sleeper ticket  
 SHINDAI-SHA—pulkman car  
 SHINRUI—relative  
 SHIO—salt  
 SHIOKARAI—salty  
 SHIROI—white  
 SHITA—down  
 \*SHITAKU—preparation  
 \*SHITSUMON—question  
 SHIZUKA—quiet  
 \*SHOUBAI—business  
 SHOOGAKKOO—grade school  
 SHOOGATSU—New Year's Day  
 SHOOGO—noon  
 SHOOGYOO—commerce  
 \*SHOOKAI—introduction  
 SHOKUDOO—dining room



SHOKUDOOSHA—dining car  
 \*SHOKUJI—meal  
 SHOONIN—merchant  
 SHUU—state  
 (GO)SHUJIN—(your) husband, boss  
 SHUUKAN—week  
 \*SHUKUDAI—homework  
 \*SHUPPATSU—departure  
 SHUPPATSU JIKAN—time of departure  
 SOO—"so" as in, "that is so"  
 SOBA—noodle  
 SOBO—grandmother  
 SOFU—grandfather  
 SOKO—there  
 SOKO DE—therefore  
 SOKUTATSU—special delivery  
 SONNA—that kind of  
 SONO—that  
 SORE—that  
 SORE DEWA—in that case  
 SOREKARA—and then  
 SOSHITE—and  
 SUU—prefix for a few, several  
 SUGI—after  
 SUGOI—horrible  
 SUGU—immediately  
 SUI—sour  
 SUIKA—watermelon  
 SUIYOBI—Wednesday  
 SUKI—like  
 SUKII—ski  
 SUKIYAKI—name of Japanese dish  
 SUMIE—brush painting  
 SUMIMASEN—I'm sorry  
 SUTEKI—wonderful, marvelous  
 SUUPAA MAAKETTO—super-market  
 SUPPAI—sour  
 (O)SUSHI—name of Japanese dish  
 SUUGAKU—mathematics  
 SUZUSHII—cool

# T

TABAKO—tobacco

TABEMONO—things to eat  
 TABITABI—often  
 TACHI—plural suffix (for people)  
 TADAIMA—I am back (greeting)  
 TAIHEIYOO—Pacific Ocean  
 TAIHEIYOO SENSOO—Pacific War, World War II  
 TAIHEN—very  
 \*TAIKUTSU—weary, boredom  
 TAISEIYOO—Atlantic Ocean  
 TAISETSU—important  
 TAISHOO—leader, head, general  
 TAISOO—very  
 TAITEI—usually  
 TAIWAN—Formosa  
 TAKAI—high  
 TAKA-SUGIRU—too expensive  
 TAKIGI—firewood  
 TAKUSAN—considerably  
 TAKUSHII—taxi  
 TAMA NI—occasionally  
 TANJOBI—birthday  
 TANOSHII—pleasant, delightful  
 TASSHA—well, in good health  
 TATEMONO—building  
 TE—hand  
 TEATE—treatment  
 TEBUKURO—gloves  
 TEGAMI—letter  
 TEISHAJOO—railroad station  
 TEKI—enemy  
 TEKKYOO—bridge  
 TENIMOTSU—hand baggage  
 TENIMOTSU TORIATSUKAI—SHO—hand baggage department  
 TENIN—store clerk  
 TENKI—weather  
 TEMPURA—popular Japanese food  
 TENUGUI—towel  
 TEREBI—T.V.  
 TESAGE KABAN—suitcase  
 TO—door  
 TO—and  
 TO—when  
 TOO—ten  
 TOOBUN—for a while

\*TOOCHAKU—arrival  
 TOOCHAKU JIKAN—time of arrival  
 TOCHUU\*—on the way  
 TOOFU—soybean cake  
 TOOI—far  
 TO IU—called  
 TOKAI—city, metropolis  
 TOKEI—watch, clock  
 TOKI—time  
 TOKIDOKI—sometimes  
 TOKKYUU—special express train  
 TOKORO—place  
 TOMODACHI—friend  
 TONARI—neighbor  
 TONNERU—tunnel  
 TORANKU—trunk  
 TORI—bird  
 TOORI\*—street  
 TOSHI—year  
 TOSHIYORI—old, aged (person)  
 TOTEMO—very  
 TOOTOO—finally  
 TSUGI—next  
 TSUITE—concerning  
 TSUKAIKATA—how to use  
 TSUKI—moon  
 TSUKI—month  
 TSUKUE—desk  
 TSUMA—(one's own) wife  
 TSUMETAI—cold  
 TSUMORI—intention  
 TSUNA—rope  
 (OTSURI)—change  
 TSUYOI—strong

# U

UCHI—home  
 UE—top, above  
 UMA—horse  
 UMI—ocean  
 URA—back  
 URAYAMASHII—envious  
 URESHII—happy  
 USHI—cow  
 YUUSHOKU—supper

# Z

ZA—denote a theater

USHIRO—rear, back  
 USUI—thin

# W

WA—postposition used in nominative case  
 WAKAI\*—young  
 WARUI—bad  
 WASHOKU—Japanese food  
 WATAKUSHI—I

# Y

-YA—suffix for shops  
 YAA—oh!  
 YA—and  
 YACHIN—house rent  
 YADOCHOO—hotel register  
 YAKAMASHII—noisy  
 \*YAKUSOKU—promise  
 YAMA—mountain  
 \*YAMA NOBORI—mountain climbing  
 YASAI—vegetable  
 YASUI—inexpensive, cheap  
 YASUMI—holiday  
 YATTSU—eight  
 YOI—nice, good  
 YOOJI—business  
 YOKU ASA—following morning  
 YON—four  
 YOO NA—like (followed by a noun)  
 YOO NI—like (followed by a verb)  
 YORI—more than  
 YOOROPPA—Europe  
 YOOSHOKU—Western food  
 YOOSU—condition  
 YOTTSU—four  
 YUBI\*—finger  
 YUUBE\*—last night  
 YUUBIN—mail  
 YUUBINBAKO—mail box  
 YUUBINKYOKU—post-office  
 YUKI—snow  
 YUUMEI—famous  
 ZASHIKI—Japanese style room  
 ZASSHI—magazine  
 ZEHI—by all means  
 ZU—diagram  
 ZUIBUN—extremely, very

# VOCABULARY-VERBS

Words *followed* by an asterisk do not appear in the text. Words *preceded* by an asterisk can be used as nouns. For example, *kaeru* means "to return (home)." The 2nd base of *kaeru* is the noun form *kaeri*, which has the meaning of "return, return trip." Similarly, for *ichidas* verbs, the stem is the noun form: *hajimeru* (v.), "to begin"; *hajime*, (n.) "beginning."

## A

AGARU—humble term of *iku*, go  
AGARU—honorific term of *taberu*,  
eat

AGARU (v.i.)—go up  
AGERU (v.t.)—give, raise  
AI SURU—love  
AKERU—(v.i.) open  
AKU—(v.t.) open  
ARAU—wash  
ARU—there is  
ARUTTE KAERU—walk back  
(home)  
ARUKU—walk  
\*ASOBU—play  
ATSURAERU—make to order  
AU—meet  
AZUKERU—place (something) in  
someone's care

## C

\*CHIGAU—differ

## D

DASU (v.t.)—put out, produce, send

DEKAKERU—leave for  
DEKIRU—able to do  
DERU (v.i.)—leave, depart  
DESU—is

## E

ERABU—select, elect, choose

## F

FUKU\*—wipe  
FUKU\*—blow  
FURU—(rain) fall

## G

GAKKARI SURU—be disappointed

## H

HAJIMARU (v.i.)—begin  
\*HAJIMERU (v.t.)—begin  
HAIRU—enter  
HAKU\*—wear (on feet)  
\*HANASU—talk, speak  
HARAU—pay

HARERU—become clear (weather)  
 HASHIRU—run  
 \*HATARAKU—work  
 HIKKAKU—scratch  
 HIKU—pull  
 HIKU—run over  
 HIROU—pick up, find  
 HOMERU—praise

I

IKU—go  
 IRASSHARU—go, come, be  
 IRRERU—put in  
 IRU—need  
 IRU—there is  
 ISOGU\*—hurry  
 ITADAKU—receive (humble)  
 IU—say, tell

K

KABURU—wear (on one's head)  
 \*KAERU—return, go back, go home  
 KAESU\*—return (something)  
 KAGU\*—smell  
 KAKARU—take (time)  
 KAKARU—cost  
 KAKERU—hang  
 KAKERU—sit (on a chair)  
 KAKU—write  
 KAMI-TSUKU—bite  
 \*KANGAERU—think  
 KARIRU—borrow  
 \*KASU—lend  
 \*KATSU—win  
 KAU—buy  
 KAZOERU—count  
 KIKU—listen, ask, hear  
 KIRAI DESU—dislike  
 KIRU—cut  
 KIRU—wear  
 KOMARU—to be troubled  
 KOMU—be crowded  
 KOROSU—kill

KOSHIKAKERU—sit  
 KOTAERU—answer  
 KOWARERU (v.i.)—break  
 KOWASU (v.t.)—break  
 KUDASAI—give (me)  
 KUDASARU—give (me)  
 KUMORU—become cloudy  
 \*KURASU—live  
 KURU—come

M

MAGARU—turn  
 MAIRU—come (humble form)  
 \*MAKERU—lose  
 MA NI AU—be on time  
 MATSU—wait  
 MAWARU (v.i.)—turn  
 MAWASU (v.t.)—turn  
 MESHIAGARU—eat  
 MIERU—can see  
 MIRU—see, look  
 MISERU—show  
 MOCHI-KOMU—take in  
 MORAU—receive  
 MOTSU—hold  
 MUKAERU—meet, call

N

\*NAGARERU (v.i.)—flow  
 NAGASU (v.t.)—flow  
 NAI—there is not  
 NAKU—cry  
 NAKUNARU—pass away, lose, die  
 NA O TSUKERU—give a name  
 NARAU—learn  
 NARITATSU—be composed of  
 NARU—ring  
 NARU—become  
 NAORU (v.i.)—become better, fix  
 NAOSU (v.t.)—fix  
 NERU—sleep  
 NIRU—resemble  
 \*NOBORU—climb

NOMU—drink  
 NORERU—able to ride  
 \*NORI-KAERU—transfer (bus, train)  
 NORU—ride, get on, board  
 NUGU—undress  
 NUSUMU—steal

O

\*ODOROKU—be surprised  
 OERU (v. t.)—finish  
 OGORU—treat  
 OKIRU (v.i.)—get up  
 \*OKORU—start, break out  
 OKORU—get angry  
 OKOSU (v.t.)—awaken, cause to happen  
 OKU\*—put, place  
 OKURERU—be late  
 OKURU—send  
 ORIRU—get off  
 \*OSHIERU—teach  
 OSU—push  
 OWARU (v.i.)—end  
 \*OYOGU\*—swim

S

SASU—point  
 SASOU—invite  
 SEME-KOMU—attack and enter into  
 SEMERU—attack  
 SHIKARU—scold  
 SHIMARU (v.i.)—close  
 SHIMERU (v.t.)—close  
 SHINU—die  
 \*SHIRABERU—investigate  
 SHIRU—know  
 SODATERU—raise, bring up  
 SUGIRU—exceed  
 SUKI DESU—like  
 SUMASERU—complete, finish  
 SUMU\*—live  
 SURU—do

W

WAKARU—understand  
 WAKASU\*—boil  
 \*WARAU—laugh  
 WARERU (v.i.)—crack, break  
 WARU (v.t.)—crack, break  
 WASURERU—forget  
 WATARU—cross

Y

YAKUSU—translate

SUU—inhale, smoke

T

TABERU—eat  
 \*TANOMU—request  
 \*TATAKAU—wage a battle  
 TATAKU\*—hit, strike  
 TATSU—stand up  
 TATSU—depart  
 TAZUNERU—visit, ask  
 TEKI SURU—be appropriate  
 \*TETSUDAU—help  
 TOBU—fly  
 TOMARU (v.i.)—stop  
 TOMERU (v.t.)—stop  
 TOORU—go through  
 \*TORIATSUKAU—handle  
 TORU—take  
 \*TSUKARERU—be tired, get tired  
 TSUKAU—use  
 TSUKERU—attach, put  
 TSUKERU—turn on (a light)  
 TSUKU—reach, arrive  
 TSUKURU—make  
 TSUMU—load  
 TSURERU—take, bring  
 \*TSUTOMERU—work  
 TSUTSUKU—peck  
 \*TSUTSUMU—wrap  
 TSUZUKERU (v.t.)—continue  
 \*TSUZUKU (v.i.)—last, extend

U

UGOKASU (v.t.)—move  
 UGOKU (v.i.)—move  
 \*UMARERU (v.i.)—be born  
 UMU (v.t.)—give birth to  
 URIKIRERU—be sold out  
 URU—sell  
 UTSU—shoot, strike  
 UTSURU (v.i.)—move  
 UTSUSU (v.t.)—move

YAMERU\* (v.t.)—stop (something)  
 YAMU\* (v.i.)—stop  
 YARU—give  
 \*YASUMU—rest  
 YATOU—hire  
 YOBU\*—call  
 YOMU—read  
 \*YOROKOBU—be pleased, happy  
 YORU—drop by  
 YUKU—go  
 \*YURUSU—forgive

# INDEX

## A

Abbreviations, 14  
 About to . . . , 310  
 Abrupt ending, 388  
 Abrupt form, 174-175, 384-385  
 Abrupt negative, 309  
 Abrupt past (of verb), 174-175  
 Abrupt present (of verb), 50  
 Accent, 20  
 Active voice, 270-271  
 Adjective (adverbial form of), 82  
 Adjective (negative of), 82  
 Adjective (conditional of), 332-333  
 Adjective (past tense of), 226-227, 333  
 Adjective (quasi), 38  
 Adjective (true), 27-28  
 Affectionate term, 259  
 Agent of action, 271-273  
*ageru* (give), 227-228, 311  
 Alternate action, 275, 415  
*amari* (too), 201  
*ano* (that), 27  
*are* (that), 26-27  
*aru* (*arimasu*) (there is), 61-62, 80  
 . . . *ato de* (after), 225

## B

. . . *ba* (conditional), 329-330, 413  
 . . . *ba ii naa* (it would be nice . . . ), 391

## C

Causative, 403, 407-408

Chinese verb, 133-134, 137-139  
 Classifier, 69-70, 117  
 Comparison, 94-96, 405  
 Compound sentence, 246  
 Compound verb, 204, 405  
 Concluding particles, 385-387  
 Conditional, 329-333, 413-414  
 Conjugating verb, 113-114  
 Conjunction, 156-157  
 Connective, 224, 246  
 Consecutive action, 275  
 Consonant, 18-19  
 Continuative base, 204

## D

*da* (is), 390  
*dake* (only), 203-204  
*de* (p.p., conjunction "and"), 246  
*de* (place of action), 156  
*de* (p.p., by means of), 116  
*de* (p.p., comparative), 172  
*de* (p.p., for), 117  
*de gosaimasu*, 359  
*deshoo*, 178-179  
 Desiderative, 113-115, 404  
*desu* (is), 28  
*desu* (negative of), 28-29, 62  
 Direct object, 52  
*dooso* (please), 356  
 Double consonant, 18-19

## E

*e* (p.p., toward), 116, 156  
 Exchange of favors, 228, 311-313

## F

Familiar forms, 384-392  
 Family relations (vocabulary on), 259  
 Fifth base, 310  
 Frequency, 146

## G

*ga* (but), 159, 414  
*ga* (p.p.), 52-53, 63-67, 115  
*ga gozaimasu* (there is . . .), 359  
 . . . *garu* (to feel), 300  
*goro* (about), 124  
*gozaimasu* (is), 359  
*gurai* (about), 124

## H

Have, 80, 194-195  
*hasu* (should), 405  
*hasu* (time), 195  
 Hepburn system, 21  
 Honorific, 353-360  
 Honorific adjective, 358-359  
 Humble forms, 353-355  
 Honorific forms of nouns, 357

## I

*ichidan* (most), 95-96  
*ichidan* verb, 112-114, 406-408  
*ikemasen* (must not), 225-226  
 Imperative, 115, 406  
 Intention, 135, 406  
 Interrogative sentence, 30  
 Intonation, 20  
 Intransitive verb, 110, 294-295  
*irassharu* (go, come), 354, 358  
 Irregular verb, 51, 111, 134-135, 153  
*iru* (to need), 221  
*itadaku* (receive), 312-313

## K

*ka* (interrogative), 30  
 . . . *ka* (used with *nani*, etc.), 224, 368  
 . . . *ka* . . . *ka* . . . (or), 137, 179  
 . . . *kamo shirimasen*, 292  
*kan* (period), 139-140  
*kara* (after), 222-223  
*kara* (because), 135-136, 222, 414  
*kara* (from), 136, 223  
 . . . *kashira*, 360  
 . . . *hatta* (past) 227, 232  
*kono* (this), 27  
*kore* (this), 26-27  
 . . . *koto ga aru*, 176  
 . . . *koto ga dekiru* (can), 175-176  
 . . . *koto ni suru* (to decide), 228-229  
 . . . *kudasani* (please give me), 50, 115  
*kudasaru* (give me), 312-313  
*kuruu* (give me), 312-313  
*kuru* (come), 179

## M

. . . *mashoo*, 177, 404  
 . . . *mazu*, 114  
*masu* (call, wear, etc.), 358  
*miemasu* (can see), 81  
*mo* (also), 202-203  
 . . . *mo* (used with *nani*, etc.), 224, 366-367  
 . . . *mo* . . . *mo*, 96-97  
*morau* (receive), 311-313  
*motu* (have), 194-195  
*motte imasu* (have), 80  
 "Must" form, 202, 253, 403  
 "Must not" form, 225-226

## N

*na*, 195-196  
*sagaru* (simultaneous action), 404, 415

... *nai*, 292, 309, 403  
 ... *nai de* (without), 309, 403  
 ... *nahatta*, 309  
*nahereba* (if... not), 403  
 ... *nahereba narimasen* (must), 202, 253, 403  
*nani-ka* (something), 224  
*nani-mo* (nothing), 224  
*nara*, 200, 332-333  
 ... *nasai*, 114, 115  
*ne* (isn't it?), 56, 386  
 Negative conditional, 334  
 Negative imperative, 225-226  
*ni* (p.p., agent), 271-273  
*ni* (in order to), 176-177  
*ni* (p.p., location), 62-63, 156  
*ni* (p.p., specific time), 71, 124  
*ni* (has), 80  
 ... *ni naru* (become), 244-245  
 ... *nihui* (hard to...), 404  
*nimo*, 80  
*no* (concluding particles), 387  
*no* (nominalizer), 334, 411  
*no* (for *de aru*), 411  
*no* (for *ni iku*), 411  
*no* (one), 155, 411  
*no* (possessive), 38-39, 411  
*no* (quasi adj.), 38, 411  
*nodede* (because), 136, 414  
 Nominalizer, 155  
 Non-conjugating verb, 112  
 ... *no ni* (in order to), 247  
 ... *no ni* (although) 248, 414  
*no o*, 334-335  
 Noun, 26-28  
 ... *no yoo desu* (like), 247  
 ... *no yoo na* (like), 247  
 ... *no yoo ni* (like), 247  
*no wa*, 334-335  
 Numerals, 44-45, 80-81  
 Numeral classifiers, 69-72

## O

*o* (p.p., indicating space), 255, 291

*o* (p.p., object), 52, 115, 134  
 Only, 83, 202-204

## P

Passive voice, 270-273, 357, 403, 406-408  
 Past experience, 179  
 Pitch accent, 20  
 Polite form, 174-175  
 Polite imperative, 114, 115  
 Polite request, 50, 115, 356  
 Postpositions, 52-53  
 Potential form, 405, 406  
 Potential form (the short form), 274, 406  
 Principal clause, 136, 200  
 Probable future, 177-178  
 Progressive form, 50-51  
 Pronunciation, 17-20

## Q

Quasi adjectives, 38

## R

... *ruka* (conditional), 333  
 Relative clause, 196-199  
 Request, 50, 115

## S

*sa*, 386  
 School system, 260  
 ... *shi* (furthermore), 390-391, 414  
*shika* (only) 83, 203  
 Simultaneous action, 404  
 ... *somo* (that), 27  
*sore desu* (I hear), 223, 405  
*sore* (that), 27  
*soshite* (and), 156-157, 224



Sound combinations, 19-20  
 State of being, 253, 293-294  
 Subject, omission of, 27, 39  
 Subjunctive, 331  
 Subordinate clause, 136, 200, 246  
 ... *sugiru* (too), 157-158  
 Superlative degree, 95-96  
 Superpolite form, 174, 353-360, 389-390  
*suru* (to do), 134-135  
*nu* (several), 104  
 Syllable, 17-18

## T

... *tai* (want), 113-115  
 ... *taku naru* (feel like) 245  
 ... *tara* (conditional), 330-331  
 ... *tari* ... *tari*, 275, 415  
 "te" (connective), 224  
*tehi*, 248  
 ... *te kudasai* (please), 115  
 ... *te miru* ( ... and see), 234  
 ... *temo* (even if), 414  
 ... *te mo ii desu* (may), 299  
 Tense, 153  
 "te" verb, 50-51, 80, 112-113, 115, 224-225  
 Time units, 71-73, 103  
 Time, 123-126  
*to* (and), 64, 157  
*to* (comparative), 94-95  
*to* (conditional), 329, 413  
*to* (quotation), 153-154  
*to* (with), 319  
 ... *toki ni* (when), 246  
 Transitive verb, 52, 293-295  
 Tried to, 310-311  
 True adjective, 27-28

*tsumori* (intend to), 135, 405

## V

Verb (conjugation), 111-114  
 Verb (double vowel ending), 310  
 Verb (exceptions), 112  
 Verb (*ichidan*), 111-112  
 Verb (irregular), 111  
 Verb ("te" form), 50-51  
 Verb (tense), 153  
 Verb (*yodan*), 111-114, 153  
 Voiced, 21, 22

## W

*wa*, 27, 63-64  
 Word order, 23-30, 63, 389

## Y

*ya* (conjunction), 225  
*yaru* (to give), 227, 311, 313  
 ... *yasui* (easy to ...), 404  
*yo*, 385-386  
*yodan* verb, 111-114, 153  
*yoku* (following), 269  
 ... *yoo desu* (like), 246-247  
 ... *yoo na* (like), 246-247  
 ... *yoo ni* (like), 246-247  
*yori* (than), 95, 96

## Z

*zo* (concluding particle), 387  
*zo* (concluding particle), 387  
 ... *zu ni* (without), 391, 403